Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277

Alexander Birbrair *Editor*

Tumor Microenvironment

Molecular Players – Part B

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology

Volume 1277

Series Editors

Wim E. Crusio, Institut de Neurosciences Cognitives et Intégratives d'Aquitaine, CNRS and University of Bordeaux UMR 5287, Pessac Cedex, France
Haidong Dong, Departments of Urology and Immunology, Mayo Clinic, Rochester, MN, USA
Heinfried H. Radeke, Institute of Pharmacology & Toxicology, Clinic of the Goethe University Frankfurt Main, Frankfurt am Main, Hessen, Germany
Nima Rezaei, Research Center for Immunodeficiencies, Children's Medical Center, Tehran University of Medical Sciences, Tehran, Iran
Junjie Xiao, Cardiac Regeneration and Ageing Lab, Institute of Cardiovascular Sciences, School of Life Science, Shanghai University, Shanghai, China

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology provides a platform for scientific contributions in the main disciplines of the biomedicine and the life sciences. This series publishes thematic volumes on contemporary research in the areas of microbiology, immunology, neurosciences, biochemistry, biomedical engineering, genetics, physiology, and cancer research. Covering emerging topics and techniques in basic and clinical science, it brings together clinicians and researchers from various fields.

Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology has been publishing exceptional works in the field for over 40 years, and is indexed in SCOPUS, Medline (PubMed), Journal Citation Reports/Science Edition, Science Citation Index Expanded (SciSearch, Web of Science), EMBASE, BIOSIS, Reaxys, EMBiology, the Chemical Abstracts Service (CAS), and Pathway Studio.

2018 Impact Factor: 2.126.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/5584

Alexander Birbrair
Editor

Tumor Microenvironment

Molecular Players – Part B

Editor
Alexander Birbrair
Department of Pathology
Federal University of Minas Gerais
Belo Horizonte, MG, Brazil

Department of Radiology
Columbia University Medical Center
New York, NY, USA

ISSN 0065-2598 ISSN 2214-8019 (electronic)
Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology
ISBN 978-3-030-50223-2 ISBN 978-3-030-50224-9 (eBook)
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
The publisher, the authors, and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, expressed or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

This Springer imprint is published by the registered company Springer Nature Switzerland AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

This book is dedicated to my mother, Marina Sobolevsky, of blessed memory, who passed away during the creation of this volume. Professor of Mathematics at the State University of Ceará (UECE), she was loved by her colleagues and students, whom she inspired by her unique manner of teaching. All success in my career and personal life I owe to her.

My beloved mom Marina Sobolevsky of blessed memory (July 28, 1959–June 3, 2020)

Preface

This book's initial title was "Tumor Microenvironment." However, due to the current great interest in this topic, we were able to assemble more chapters than would fit in one book, covering tumor microenvironment biology from different perspectives. Therefore, the book was subdivided into several volumes.

This book *Tumor Microenvironment: Molecular Players – Part B* presents contributions by expert researchers and clinicians in the multidisciplinary areas of medical and biological research. The chapters provide timely detailed overviews of recent advances in the field. This book describes the major contributions of different key molecular players within the tumor microenvironment during cancer development. Further insights into the mechanisms will have important implications for our understanding of cancer initiation, development, and progression. The authors focus on the modern methodologies and the leading-edge concepts in the field of cancer biology. In recent years, remarkable progress has been made in the identification and characterization of different components of the tumor microenvironment in several organs using state-of-art techniques. These advantages facilitated identification of key targets and definition of the molecular basis of cancer progression within different tissues. Thus, the present book is an attempt to describe the most recent developments in the area of tumor biology, which is one of the emergent hot topics in the field of molecular and cellular biology today. Here, we present a selected collection of detailed chapters on what we know so far about different molecular players within the tumor microenvironment in various tissues. Ten chapters written by experts in the field summarize the present knowledge about distinct characteristics of the tumor microenvironment during cancer development.

Jörg H. Leupold and colleagues from the University of Heidelberg discuss MicroRNAs in the tumor microenvironment. Laura P. Stabile and colleagues from the University of Pittsburgh update us on the impact of estrogen in the tumor microenvironment. Peter A van Dam and colleagues from the University of Antwerp describe the non-bone related role of RANK/RANKL signaling in cancer. Hyo-Jin Yoon and Young-Joon Surh from Seoul National University summarize current knowledge on modulation of cancer cell growth and progression by Caveolin-1 in the tumor microenvironment. Kishore B. Challagundla and colleagues from the University of Nebraska Medical Center address the importance of exosomes, as novel players of therapy resistance in neuroblastoma. Ying-Ting Zhu and colleagues from Tissue

Tech, Inc. compile our understanding of COX-2 signaling in the tumor microenvironment. Yutaka Kawakami and colleagues from Keio University School of Medicine focus on the renin–angiotensin system in the tumor microenvironment. Juan Antonio Marchal and colleagues from the University of Granada give an overview of stem cell secreted factors in the tumor microenvironment. Sophie Sibéril and colleagues from Sorbonne University present the tight interplay between therapeutic monoclonal antibodies and the tumor microenvironment in cancer therapy. Finally, Himanshu Arora and colleagues from the University of Miami talk about nitric oxide within the tumor microenvironment.

It is hoped that the articles published in this book will become a source of reference and inspiration for future research ideas. I would like to express my deep gratitude to my wife Veranika Ushakova and Mr. Murugesan Tamilsevan from Springer, who helped at every step of the execution of this project.

Belo Horizonte, MG, Brazil — Alexander Birbrair

Contents

1 MicroRNAs in the Tumor Microenvironment 1
Nitin Patil, Heike Allgayer, and Jörg H. Leupold

2 The Impact of Estrogen in the Tumor Microenvironment 33
Ashwin Somasundaram, Natalie J. Rothenberger, and Laura P. Stabile

3 The Non-Bone-Related Role of RANK/RANKL Signaling in Cancer. 53
Peter A. van Dam, Yannick Verhoeven, and Xuan B. Trinh

4 Modulation of Cancer Cell Growth and Progression by Caveolin-1 in the Tumor Microenvironment. 63
Hyo-Jin Yoon and Young-Joon Surh

5 Exosomes: Novel Players of Therapy Resistance in Neuroblastoma 75
Heather Richard, Arya Pokhrel, Srinivas Chava, Anup Pathania, Santharam S. Katta, and Kishore B. Challagundla

6 COX-2 Signaling in the Tumor Microenvironment 87
Yuan Zhang, Sean Tighe, and Ying-Ting Zhu

7 Renin–Angiotensin System in the Tumor Microenvironment. . . 105
Kenta Nakamura, Ryuhei Okuyama, and Yutaka Kawakami

8 Stem Cell-Secreted Factors in the Tumor Microenvironment . . 115
Gema Jiménez, Julia López de Andrés, and Juan Antonio Marchal

9 Tight Interplay Between Therapeutic Monoclonal Antibodies and the Tumour Microenvironment in Cancer Therapy 127
Quentin Riller, Aditi Varthaman, and Sophie Sibéril

10 Tumor Microenvironment and Nitric Oxide: Concepts and Mechanisms 143
Anastasia Vedenko, Kush Panara, Gabriella Goldstein, Ranjith Ramasamy, and Himanshu Arora

Index 159

Contributors

Heike Allgayer Department of Experimental Surgery– Cancer Metastasis, Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Centre for Biomedicine and Medical Technology Mannheim (CBTM), Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Julia López de Andrés Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine Institute (IBIMER), Centre for Biomedical Research (CIBM), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria ibs.GRANADA, University Hospitals of Granada-University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Excellence Research Unit "Modeling Nature" (MNat), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Himanshu Arora, Ph.D Department of Urology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

The Interdisciplinary Stem Cell Institute, University of Miami, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Kishore B. Challagundla Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology & The Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

The Children's Health Research Institute, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Srinivas Chava Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology & The Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Peter A. van Dam Multidisciplinary Oncologic Centre Antwerp (MOCA), Antwerp University Hospital, Edegem, Belgium

Center for Oncological Research (CORE), University of Antwerp, Wilrijk, Belgium

Gabriella Goldstein College of Health Professions and Sciences, University of Central Florida, Orlando, FL, USA

Gema Jiménez Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine Institute (IBIMER), Centre for Biomedical Research (CIBM), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria ibs.GRANADA, University Hospitals of Granada-University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Excellence Research Unit "Modeling Nature" (MNat), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Santharam S. Katta REVA University, Rukmini Knowledge Park Kattigenahalli, Yelahanka, Bangalore, Karnataka, India

Yutaka Kawakami Division of Cellular Signaling, Institute for Advanced Medical Research, Keio University School of Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Jörg H. Leupold Department of Experimental Surgery– Cancer Metastasis, Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Centre for Biomedicine and Medical Technology Mannheim (CBTM), Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Juan Antonio Marchal Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine Institute (IBIMER), Centre for Biomedical Research (CIBM), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria ibs.GRANADA, University Hospitals of Granada-University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Excellence Research Unit "Modeling Nature" (MNat), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Department of Human Anatomy and Embryology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Kenta Nakamura Department of Dermatology, Shinshu University School of Medicine, Nagano, Japan

Ryuhei Okuyama Department of Dermatology, Shinshu University School of Medicine, Nagano, Japan

Kush Panara The Interdisciplinary Stem Cell Institute, University of Miami, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Anup Pathania Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology & The Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Nitin Patil Department of Experimental Surgery– Cancer Metastasis, Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Centre for Biomedicine and Medical Technology Mannheim (CBTM), Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Arya Pokhrel High School Alliance Health Sciences Enrichment Program, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Ranjith Ramasamy, M.D The Interdisciplinary Stem Cell Institute, University of Miami, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA

Heather Richard High School Alliance Health Sciences Enrichment Program, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

Quentin Riller Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, INSERM UMRS1138, Sorbonne Université, Université de Paris, Paris, France

Natalie J. Rothenberger Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Geisinger Commonwealth School of Medicine, Scranton, PA, USA

Sophie Sibéril Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, INSERM UMRS1138, Sorbonne Université, Université de Paris, Paris, France

Ashwin Somasundaram Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Department of Immunology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

UPMC Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Laura P. Stabile UPMC Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Department of Pharmacology & Chemical Biology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Young-Joon Surh Tumor Microenvironment Global Core Research Center, College of Pharmacy, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Department of Molecular Medicine and Biopharmaceutical Sciences, Graduate School of Convergence Science and Technology, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Sean Tighe Research and Development Department, Tissue Tech, Inc., Miami, FL, USA

Xuan B. Trinh Multidisciplinary Oncologic Centre Antwerp (MOCA), Antwerp University Hospital, Edegem, Belgium

Center for Oncological Research (CORE), University of Antwerp, Wilrijk, Belgium

Aditi Varthaman Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, INSERM UMRS1138, Sorbonne Université, Université de Paris, Paris, France

Anastasia Vedenko Department of Urology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

Yannick Verhoeven Multidisciplinary Oncologic Centre Antwerp (MOCA), Antwerp University Hospital, Edegem, Belgium

Center for Oncological Research (CORE), University of Antwerp, Wilrijk, Belgium

Hyo-Jin Yoon Tumor Microenvironment Global Core Research Center, College of Pharmacy, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Yuan Zhang Research and Development Department, Tissue Tech, Inc., Miami, FL, USA

Ying-Ting Zhu Research and Development Department, Tissue Tech, Inc., Miami, FL, USA

1 MicroRNAs in the Tumor Microenvironment

Nitin Patil, Heike Allgayer, and Jörg H. Leupold

Abstract

The tumor microenvironment (TME) is decisive for the eradication or survival of any tumor mass. Moreover, it plays a pivotal role for metastasis and for providing the metastatic niche. The TME offers special physiological conditions and is composed of, for example, surrounding blood vessels, the extracellular matrix (ECM), diverse signaling molecules, exosomes and several cell types including, but not being limited to, infiltrated immune cells, cancer-associated endothelial cells (CAEs), and cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs). These cells can additionally and significantly contribute to tumor and metastasis progression, especially also by acting via their own deregulated micro (mi) RNA expression or activity. Thus, miRNAs are essential players in the crosstalk between cancer cells and the TME. MiRNAs are small non-coding (nc) RNAs that typically inhibit translation and stability of messenger (m) RNAs, thus being able to regulate several cell functions including proliferation, migration, differentiation, survival, invasion, and several steps of the metastatic cascade. The dynamic interplay between miRNAs in different cell types or organelles such as exosomes, ECM macromolecules, and the TME plays critical roles in many aspects of cancer development. This chapter aims to give an overview on the multiple contributions of miRNAs as players within the TME, to summarize the role of miRNAs in the crosstalk between different cell populations found within the TME, and to illustrate how they act on tumorigenesis and the behavior of cells in the TME context. Lastly, the potential clinical utility of miRNAs for cancer therapy is discussed.

Keywords

miRNAs · Tumor microenvironment · Metastasis · CAF · TAM · TIDC · T-reg · Hypoxia · CD4^{+} · CD8^{+} · NK · Cancer · Immune checkpoint · Exosomes · ECM

N. Patil · H. Allgayer · J. H. Leupold (✉)
Department of Experimental Surgery – Cancer Metastasis, Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany

Centre for Biomedicine and Medical Technology Mannheim (CBTM), Medical Faculty Mannheim, Ruprecht Karls University of Heidelberg, Mannheim, Germany
e-mail: joerg.leupold@medma.uni-heidelberg.de

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_1

1.1 Introduction

In the early nineties of the last century, Victor Ambros and his colleagues discovered the first miRNA in *C. elegans*, essential for the embryonic development of this organism [1]. Their discovery led to the surprising conclusion that the expression of a gene, *lin-14*, was not regulated by a protein, but through a short RNA, which appeared to bind within the 3′- untranslated region (UTR) of *lin-14* mRNA, suggesting a new posttranscriptional regulation via antisense RNA-RNA interaction. In a few years, thousands of miRNAs were described and it became clear that this novel translational control mediated by ribonucleic acids has impacted virtually every biological process and changed our thinking about gene regulation [2].

Generally, miRNAs belong to the family of endogenously expressed ncRNA molecules and are defined by their length of approximately 18–25 nucleotides. They are evolutionarily conserved and nearly 3000 functionally diverse miRNAs have been identified until now [3]. Most of miRNA genes are located within the human genome in intragenic regions, UTRs, and repeat regions of the genome [4]. Here, they are often found as clusters from where they are transcribed as discrete polycistronic transcripts, or they share the promoter of host genes and get spliced from their mRNA transcripts during biogenesis [5]. MiRNA genes are first transcribed into the primary miRNA (pri-miRNA) by RNA polymerase II (Pol II). Thereafter, these typically 1-kb-long primary transcripts, containing the actual miRNA sequence, undergo diverse nuclear processing steps of maturation with the participation of the proteins Drosha and DiGeorge critical region 8 (DGCR8). The resulting miRNA precursor (pre) miRNA is exported into the cytoplasm with the help of Exportin 5, together with the guanosine-5′-triphosphate ras-related GTP-binding nuclear protein (RAN). After release, the pre-miRNA is cleaved by the ribonuclease (RNase) III enzyme Dicer, leading to the mature miRNA duplex. Finally, this duplex is loaded onto an Argonaut (ARGO) protein to form the effector complex called RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC) where it binds seed sequences within 3´-UTRs of specific mRNAs to mediate their degradation, destabilization, or translational inhibition [6]. Interestingly, latest research in this field showed that the expression of certain circular (circ) RNAs plays an important role in the regulation of miRNA, by acting as miRNAs sponges through abundant binding sites for microRNAs to modulate the activity on their target genes, representing a new layer of gene control by ncRNAs [7].

Based on the complexity of the above-described pathway and numerous auxiliary regulatory factors found up to date to be involved in successful miRNA biogenesis, a tight regulation is needed at multiple levels to prevent aberrant miRNA gene transcription in the cells. This is even more important given the notion that more than 60% of human protein-coding genes contain at least one conserved miRNA seed sequence, and that any deregulation of miRNAs is most likely associated with human disease, particularly cancer [8]. In consequence, miRNAs can exert tumor suppressive or oncogenic functions and affect, directly or indirectly, tumor progression and metastasis because the misdirected transcription of miRNAs, or mutations within the seed sequences, leads to aberrantly expressed proteins [9].

During the last decades, cancer research was mainly focused at malignant cells to understand the process and driving forces, which transform a normal cell a cancer cell and to cancer cells with metastatic capacity. However, to understand the whole process of how cells get transformed and can survive or metastasize into different tissues and organs, it is necessary to realize that cancer cells are not the only players necessary to manifest the disease. Since many years, pioneered by Isaac Witz and others [10], it became very clear that tumors strongly depend on external signals from their microenvironment, leading to the concept of the TME as one of the essential factors to promote disease progression, local resistance, immune-escape, and metastasis of tumor cells [11].

Generally, the TME is defined as the environment around a tumor within the tissue in which cancer cells are embedded. Together with other cells such as stroma and endothelial cells, ECM, infiltrating cells such as macrophages and lympho-

cytes, soluble products, namely growth factors, cytokines and antibodies, proteases, as well as other types of enzymes it resembles a network between a variety of cells with non-cellular components [12]. Interestingly, non-neoplastic cells can account for more than 50% of the total tumor mass and produce and release cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, matrix remodeling enzymes, vesicles, and other soluble factors into the tumor mass, often supporting tumor growth [13]. Moreover, during tumor development, remodeling of this tissue occurs through the modification of the physical scaffold and structural framework provided by the extracellular matrix (ECM). This complex network of collagen and fibronectin fibrils associated with glycoproteins, proteoglycans, and polysaccharides, also provides biochemical signals by hosting growth factors and chemokines modulating tumor cell growth, migration, and metastasis [14].

Due to their responsibility to form the ECM, specifically CAFs are found in the TME and play a pivotal tumor-promoting role [15]. Besides other stromal cell types like pericytes, vascular endothelial cells and cancer-associated adipocytes are present [16]. Together with the ECM, these stromal cell types and adipocytes are able to support tumor growth by providing paracrine and juxtacrine signaling molecules like hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), the chemokines C-C motif ligand (CCL) 5 and CCL2, and the inflammatory factors interleukin (IL)-6, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α, which further promote the proliferation and invasion of tumor cells and the formation of neovascularization [17, 18]. Additionally, the TME is characterized by the presence of diverse tumor-infiltrating immune cells as a consequence of inflammation, including tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), regulatory Thymus (T)-cells (Treg), dendritic cells (DC), as well as effector immune cells such as T-lymphocytes and natural killer (NK) cells [19]. Unfortunately, the TME can provide an immunosuppressive environment, which blocks antitumor immunity to a large extent. Typically, NK- and T-cell cytotoxic activities are suppressed, T-cell proliferation is inhibited, and expression of major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules is downregulated, thereby precluding long-standing protective immunity and allowing tumor cells to escape attacks from the immune system [20]. On the sub-cellular level, extracellular vesicles, predominantly exosomes, are critical vehicles within the TME for intercellular communication [21]. These vesicles traffic between the different cell types found in the TME and specifically cancer-associated exosomes containing miRNAs can promote tumor survival and growth. Thus, they contribute to establishing tumorigenic niches, for example, by inducing angiogenesis, remodeling of the ECM, and impairing the function of immune cells [22]. Finally, due to the rapid growth and abnormal structure of the TME, most cells in a solid tumor mass suffer from exposure to hypoxia conditions. The generated hypoxic signaling, a discovery recently awarded with the Nobel Prize in Physiology or Medicine 2019, is mainly mediated by hypoxia-inducible transcription factors (HIFs), which in turn induce expression changes of genes involved in angiogenesis, growth, and cell survival [12].

Taken together, cellular and sub-cellular components of the TME are recognized to play a pivotal role to regulate and support cancer development and metastasis. The discovery that miRNA dysregulation substantially impacts TME-associated processes sheds new light on understanding cancer proliferation, angiogenesis, and metastasis through interactions between malignant cells, stromal cells, immune cells, and non-cellular components in the TME. Therefore, this chapter aims to summarize the versatile effects of miRNAs on the complex interplay between the different components of the TME and to offer a momentary overview of this rapidly moving field. Finally, the therapeutic potential of miRNAs to overcome the limitations of checkpoint blockage is discussed as an example of how pre-clinical knowledge on TME-based interactions can be transferred to potentially improve future immune therapies.

1.2 Hypoxia as Modulator for miRNA Expression in the TME

Solid cancers and their TME are commonly characterized by hypoxic conditions because excessive cancer cell proliferation, but also growth of the complete tumor mass above a critical size, results in deprivation of oxygen due to insufficient blood supply from abnormal tumor microvasculature. Especially in the center of metastatic lesions, hypoxic central areas can often be visualized in computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans. As a result of this condition, a specific hypoxia signaling is induced at the cellular level to restore oxygenation and to minimize the negative effects of the hypoxic environment [23–25]. This adaptive response connected to changes in tissue oxygenation is mediated by a heterodimeric protein that consists of two proteins, hypoxia-induced factor (HIF)-1α and HIF-1β, which together constitute HIF-1. The HIF-1β subunit is constitutively expressed, whereas the HIF-1α subunit expression is tightly regulated, depending on the oxygen status in the cell [24–26]. Once induced, the two subunits dimerize and bind to *cis*-acting hypoxia response elements at promoters that contain HIF-1 binding sites. Following this process, numerous miRNA genes are induced in response to hypoxic stress and HIF stabilization in the TME [27]. A diagrammatic representation of how hypoxia modulates miRNA expression in the TME is shown in Fig. 1.1.

The first study providing the functional link between hypoxia and miRNA expression came from Kulshreshtha et al. [28]. In this groundbreaking work, the authors aimed to characterize molecular mechanisms responsible for the hypoxic survival of neoplastic cells and, in a panel of human cancer cell lines, found a specific hypoxia-regulated miRNA profile of 23 mature miRNAs. Since the vast majority of these hypoxia-regulated miRNAs (hypoxymiRNAs) were also found overexpressed in diverse types of tumor, these findings strengthen the theory that hypoxia displays a key trigger for miRNA alterations in cancer [28]. Subsequently, multiple studies not only confirmed these signatures but also described more miRNAs found to be upregulated under hypoxic conditions in various solid cancer entities like lung, liver, bladder, gastric, pancreatic, or cervical tumors [29–34].

Among them, one of the best-studied hypoxymiRNAs is miRNA-210, and various groups have demonstrated that miRNA-210 overexpression is induced by HIF-1 and acts on a number of targets regulating carcinogenesis, angiogenesis, cell proliferation, and apoptosis [35, 36]. Additionally, miRNA-210 directly targets the myelocytoma (Myc)/Myc-associated factor X (Max) transcriptional network, which is essential in many cancer pathways and mediates the adaptation of cancer cells to hypoxic conditions by favoring growth and survival through increasing Myc activity [37]. Hypoxia-induced miRNA-210 can also increase proliferation and migration via targeting iron-sulfur cluster scaffold homolog 2 (ISCU2) and protein tyrosine phosphatase non-receptor types (PTPN) 1 and 2 [38, 39]. Moreover, miRNA-210 has been reported to promote migration and invasion capability of hepatocellular carcinoma by directly targeting vacuole membrane protein 1 (VMP1) [40]. Besides miRNA-210, very similar abundant expression under the regulation of HIF-1 was quickly demonstrated for miRNA-21 [33]. Most obviously, miRNA-21 overexpression induces tumor angiogenesis under this condition, through targeting PTEN, leading to the activation of serine/threonine protein kinase B, also known as AKT, and extracellular-signal-regulated kinase (ERK) 1/2 signaling pathways, thereby enhancing vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) expression and also HIF-1α [41]. In this context, it was also demonstrated that miRNA-21 expression is increased in exosomes derived from hypoxia-induced cells and can promote chemoresistance to normoxic cells [42].

Beside these most abundant hypoximiRNAs, diverse studies during the last years have confirmed the signature found by Kulshreshtha et al. and additionally identified more miRNAs and their potential targets in the hypoxia context. For example, for pancreatic cancer, it was shown that clinicopathological characteristics and prognosis

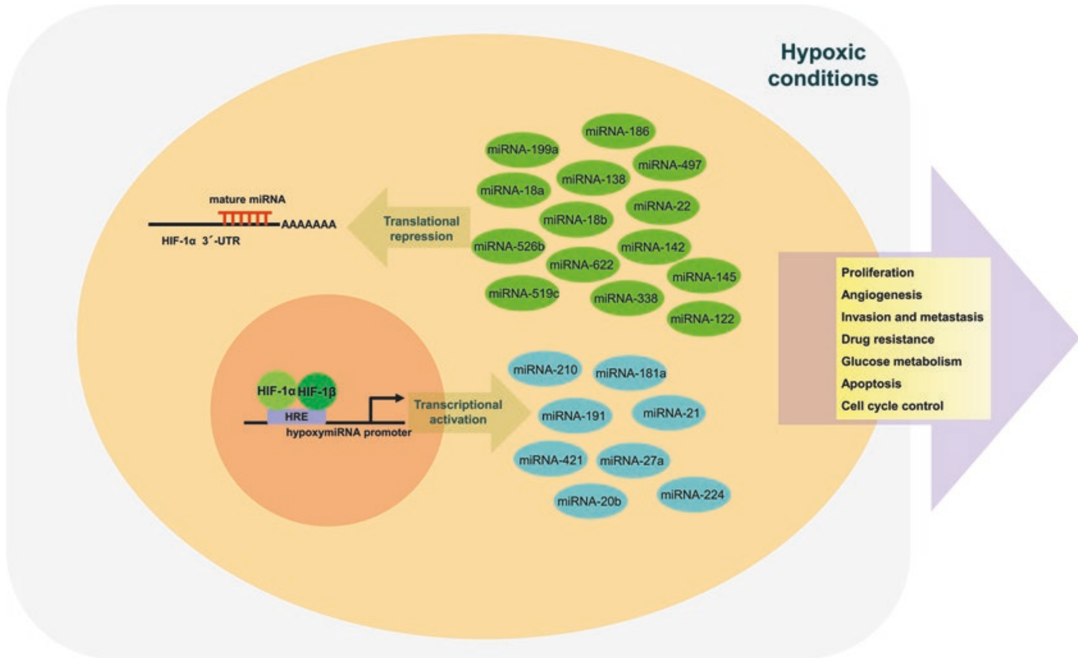


Fig. 1.1 Hypoxia as a modulator for miRNA expression in the TME. Hypoxic conditions lead to increased dimerization of HIF-1α with HIF-1β and binding to HRE elements within the promoter region of hypoxia-inducible miRNA genes. In turn, HIF-1 α mRNA translation is controlled by diverse miRNAs. This complex regulatory network between miRNAs/HIF-1α plays a critical role in tumorigenicity by targeting pathways controlling cell proliferation, the cell cycle, metabolism, angiogenesis, drug resistance, or invasion, migration, and metastasis

are closely associated with the expression of miRNA-191, whose expression is regulated by HIF-1 [43]. Additionally, it soon became obvious that HIF-1-induced miRNA-191 expression is significantly inducing angiogenesis, proliferation, migration, and metastasis in breast cancer, non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC), and transformed human bronchial epithelial cells (HBE) [29, 44, 45]. In this context, miRNA-191 was shown to be a critical regulator of transforming growth factor (TGF)-β signaling and promotes cell migration by inducing TGF-β2 expression under hypoxia. This can happen either by direct binding or indirectly by regulating levels of a RNA-binding protein, human antigen R (HuR). Moreover, the levels of several TGF-β pathway genes, like VEGF-A, SMAD (an acronym from the fusion of *Caenorhabditis elegans Sma* genes and the *Drosophila Mad*, Mothers against decapentaplegic) family member 3 (SMAD3), connective tissue growth factor (CTGF), and bone morphogenetic protein (BMP) 4, were found to be higher in miRNA-191 overexpressing cells, and anti-miRNA-191 treatment given to breast tumor spheroids led to drastic reduction in spheroid tumor volume [44]. Similarly, another study had identified the transcription factor nuclear factor 1A (NFIA) as a direct target of miRNA-191 under chronic hypoxic conditions, being responsible for promoting proliferation and migration [29]. Other examples of aberrant miRNAs expression explained by HIF-1 induction are miRNA-224, miRNA 421, and miRNA-27a. For example, miRNA-224 expression depends on HIF-1 in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) cells and tissue, which is related to migration and proliferation [46]. Additionally, diverse groups demonstrated that miRNA-224 and miRNA-421 promote gastric cancer cell growth, migration and invasion, and identified a Ras association domain tumor suppressor protein (RASSF) 8, epithelial (E)-Cadherin and caspase-3 as direct targets under hypoxic conditions [30, 47]. The first hint that miRNAs in the miRNA23a/27a/24 cluster play a

pivotal role in hypoxia came from a study on the angiogenic factor with G-patch and FHA domain (AGGF) 1 in high-grade urothelial carcinoma. Here, Xu et al. were able to prove that the hypoxia-induced decrease of AGGF1 is directly connected to a HIF-1-mediated induction of miRNA-27a expression [48]. Subsequently, two independent groups investigated pathways responsible for drug resistance in gastric cancer and concluded that HIF-1 induces chemoresistance, besides miRNA-181a and miRNA-20b, via miRNA-27a through targeting multidrug resistance genes [49, 50]. Later, another group found that all three miRNAs in the miRNA23a/27a/24 cluster are the most abundantly upregulated cluster miRNAs in colorectal cancer and that they collectively regulate the glucose metabolic network through regulating various metabolic pathways and targeting multiple tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA)-related genes [51].

In this context, it became soon obvious that the crosstalk between miRNAs and HIF-1α is not only characterized by transcriptional upregulation of specific miRNAs. In addition, TME-related miRNAs can also modulate the activity of HIF-1α, finally exerting not only pro- but also anti-tumor effects on tumor cells [52]. One of the first studies on translational repression and HIF-1α came from Weiwei et al. [53]. Here, the authors investigated the co-expression of miRNA-199 and HIF-1α in prostate cancer and demonstrated a negative correlation between these two molecules based on the direct binding of miRNA-199 within the 3′-UTR of HIF-1α. This finding was further supported by multiple studies investigating the role of the miRNA-199 family in this regard. For example, it was shown that enforced expression of miR-199a-5p led to down-modulated expression of HIF-1α as well as of other pro-angiogenic factors such as VEGF-A, IL-8, and fibroblast growth factor (FGF) 2 in hypoxic multiple myeloma (MM) cells in vitro [54]. Furthermore, these data were also supported by Yang et al. [55] in melanoma cell lines, whereby overexpression of miRNA-199a-5p suppressed cell proliferation and arrested the cell cycle in the G1 phase. Moreover, in vivo overexpression of miRNA-199a-5p significantly inhibited xenograft growth and downregulated the expression of HIF-1α. Increased levels of miRNA-138 can significantly inhibit the expression of HIF-1α in renal cell carcinoma, increase apoptosis, and reduce the migratory potential of these cancer cells [56]. Besides, miRNA-138 suppresses cell invasion and metastasis in ovarian cancer and malignant melanoma cells by targeting HIF-1α together with SRY-related high mobility group box 4 (SOX4) [57, 58]. Two members of the miRNA-18 family have also been found to play a crucial role in the TME by suppressing HIF-1α expression. Several groups showed that miRNA-18a regulates apoptosis and invasion of gastric cancer via HIF-1 suppression, increased radio-sensitivity for lung cancer cells, and reduced metastasis of breast cancer [59–61]. Similarly, miRNA-18b inhibits the growth of MM cells in vitro and in vivo by directly targeting the 3´-UTR of HIF-1α [62]. It is worth noticing that besides these miRNAs, HIF-1α was also confirmed as a common target gene for multiple other miRNAs during the last years. Investigations on colon cancer revealed miRNA-526a and miRNA-22 to inhibit key steps in cancer development by targeting HIF-1α [63, 64]. Similar effects were observed in breast and lung cancer for miRNA-497, miRNA-622, and miRNA-519c [65–67]. In line with the context, other groups identified HIF-1α as a target of miRNA-142, miRNA-186, miRNA-122, miRNA 145, or miRNA-338 in pancreatic and gastric cancers as well as hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) and nasopharyngeal carcinoma (NPC) [68–72].

Finally, the hypoxic conditions do not only affect HIF-1 induction and upregulation of miRNA expression, but can also be one driving force to mediate the repression of miRNA biogenesis proteins, like Drosha, Dicer, exportin (XPO) 5, DGCR8, TCR gamma alternate reading frame (TARP) 2, or AGO [73, 74]. An observation that hypoxia represses miRNA biogenesis by affecting the expression of specific proteins involved in this process came from studies of Bandara et al., where it was shown that cancer cells lead to a significant reduction of Dicer, Drosha, TARBP2, and DCGR8 expression [75]. Moreover, other studies demonstrated that Drosha and Dicer are independent pre-

dictors of cancer patient outcome and cancer progression, and that the loss of these molecules in the cells directly impacts tumor development and patient survival [76–78]. Additionally, a comprehensive study using reverse transcription quantitative polymerase chain reaction (RT-QPCR) had investigated 19 genes specifically involved in miRNA biogenesis in several hundred colorectal cancer tissues and concluded that, besides Drosha, a clear correlation of TARBP2, XPO5, trinucleotide repeat containing adaptor (TNRC) 6A, and DEAD-box helicase (DDX) 17 with survival and prognosis of these patients was observed [79]. Possible mechanisms to regulate the expression of these molecules were found by other studies, including hypoxia-induced epigenetic regulators or hypoxia-mediated binding of specific transcription factors to change the promoter activity of these genes [80–82]. Additionally, a study has shown that epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) suppresses the maturation of specific tumor-suppressor-like miRNAs in response to hypoxic stress through phosphorylation of AGO2. The association between EGFR and AGO2 is enhanced by hypoxia, leading to elevated AGO2 phosphorylation, which in turn reduces the binding of Dicer to AGO2 and inhibits miRNA processing from precursor miRNAs to mature miRNAs [83]. Alternatively, miRNA biogenesis proteins are by themselves targeted by the translational control through diverse hypoxia-induced miRNAs. In line with this concept, a study has shown that miRNA-630, which is upregulated under hypoxic conditions, targets and downregulates Drosha and Dicer [84]. Other studies identified miRNA-107 and miRNA-122 as direct translational regulators of Dicer, thereby promoting metastasis and neovascularization [85, 86].

1.3 Exosomal miRNAs, Dysregulated miRNAs, and CAFs

Among all the stromal cells present in the TME, CAFs are one of the most abundant and critical components of the tumor mesenchyme, which not only provide physical support for tumor cells but also play a key role in promoting and retarding tumorigenesis [87]. Normally, the primary role of activated fibroblasts is to remodel and regenerate tissues in a highly regulated manner. In consequence, these normal fibroblasts only transiently acquire activity; otherwise, pathological conditions such as tissue fibrosis and chronical inflammation can arise [88]. During tumor development, this indispensable ability can be hijacked, leading to chronic tissue repair by the generation of distinct, misregulated, tumor-promoting fibroblasts, termed CAFs [89]. After transformation, CAFs have been shown to exert multiple effects on cancer progression, including the regulation of cancer growth, angiogenesis, metastasis, metabolism changes, or remodeling of the tumor microenvironment [90]. During this process, CAFs and cancer cells typically regulate each other by secreting exosomes containing a variety of bioactive molecules, including miRNAs, DNAs, RNAs, and proteins. Not surprisingly, a growing number of publications during the past years have shed light on this specific interaction between exosomal miRNAs, miRNA dysregulation, CAF formation, and activation in the TME [87]. Another crucial aspect of CAF-related miRNAs in the TME is their support in the development of tumor cell drug resistance. Anti-cancer drugs, regardless of their administration route, must diffuse from the bloodstream to individual tumor cells. Generally, the efficacy of these drugs to reach the cancer cells depends on the vascular density of the tumors and the cellular uptake and efflux [91]. However, also the development of chemotherapeutic resistance in tumor cells can be traced to CAF-derived exosomes through a variety of dysregulated miRNAs [92].

One study, investigating whether miRNAs are involved in the reprogramming of normal fibroblasts in breast cancer, identified a signature of miRNA-155, miRNA-31, and miRNA-214, being responsible for the transformation from normal cells to CAFs [93]. Further analysis by this group revealed chemokines as the most highly regulated genes during this process and identified CCL5 as a direct target for the most significantly downregulated miRNA-214. Similar data were found for pancreatic cancer, where Pang et al.

showed that these cancer cells reprogram normal adjacent fibroblasts into CAFs by means of secreted exosomes containing miRNA-155, with the conclusion that the tumor protein p53-inducible nuclear protein (TP53INP) 1 is a target of miRNA-155 in fibroblasts and that a down-regulation of TP53INP1 protein could contribute to the fibroblasts' activation [94]. Further investigations by other groups found miRNA-21 to induce CAF formation via SMAD7. Specifically, miRNA-21 binds to the 3′-UTR of SMAD7 mRNA and inhibits its translation. Normally, SMAD 7 is bound to SMAD 2 and 3, which competitively bind to TGFBR1, and prevents their activation upon TGF-β1 stimulation. Therefore, an overexpression of miRNA-21 or the depletion of SMAD 7 can be critical regulators during the induction of CAF formation [95]. Another study showed that exposure of primary normal human fibroblasts to TGF-β1 resulted in the acquisition of a CAF-like phenotype. This was associated with increased expression of miRNA-145, a miRNA predicted in silico to target multiple components of the TGF-β signaling pathway. Vice versa, overexpression of miRNA-145 blocked TGF-β1-induced myofibroblastic differentiation and reverted CAF toward a normal fibroblast phenotype. Thus, miRNA-145 is a key regulator of the CAF phenotype, acting in a negative feedback loop to reverse acquisition of myofibroblastic traits. This is a key feature of CAFs being associated with poor disease outcome [96]. In prostate cancer, hypoxia-induced miRNA-210 was able to increase the senescence-associated features of normal fibroblasts and converted them into CAF-like cells, able to promote cancer cell EMT, to support angiogenesis, and to recruit endothelial precursor cells and monocytes/macrophages [97]. Another study investigating the impact of cisplatin treatment in esophageal cancer found miRNA-27a/b to contribute to resistance to chemotherapy through miRNA-27a/b-induced transformation of normal fibroblasts into CAFs [98]. Similarly, miRNA-21 as an important activator of CAFs was found to regulate matrix metalloprotease (MMP)-3, MMP-9, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), and CCL-6 secretion by these cells, which in turn increased not only the migratory and invasive abilities of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma cells (PDAC), but also their drug resistance against gemcitabine [99]. Finally, investigations on gastric cancer revealed that the loss of miRNA-141 induced normal fibroblast to obtain a CAF-like phenotype via an upregulation of signal transducer and activator of transcription (STAT) 4, a direct target of miRNA-141 [100].

The importance of exosomal miRNA transfer from CAFs to cancer cells for tumor growth became obvious by a study investigating the communicative paths between HCC and CAFs [101]. These authors found a significant reduction of miRNA-320 amounts in CAF-derived exosomes. Normally, this miRNA exerts anti-tumor effects by targeting PBX homeobox (PBX) 3 to suppress cancer cell proliferation, migration, and metastasis by suppressing the activation of the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway, which can induce EMT and upregulate cyclin-dependent kinase 2 (CDK2) and MMP2 expression [101]. In breast cancer cells, three miRNAs (miRNAs -21, -378e, and -143) were increased in exosomes from CAFs as compared with normal fibroblasts, thereby promoting the stemness and EMT phenotype of breast cancer cells via exosomal transfer [102]. Another example is miRNA-148b, which seems to be decreased in CAF-derived exosomes of endometrial cancer. This is an important observation because in vitro and in vivo studies revealed that miRNA-148b normally functions as a tumor suppressor by directly binding to its downstream target gene DNA methyl transferase (DNMT) 1 to suppress EMT and metastasis [103]. Therefore, it was suggested that CAF-mediated endometrial cancer progression is partially related to the loss of miRNA-148b in the exosomes of CAFs [104]. Wang et al. found that miRNA-1228 is increased in CAFs and their secreted exosomes. While investigating osteosarcoma cells, this study demonstrated that CAF-derived exosomal miRNA-1228 is able to promote osteosarcoma invasion and migration by targeting suppressor of cancer cell invasion (SCAI) in the recipient cells [105]. Finally, it was shown that CAF-derived exosomal miRNAs-34a-5p and -3188 play an important

role for proliferation and metastasis in oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC) and head and neck cancer (HNC) [106, 107]. Both miRNAs were found to be significantly reduced in CAFs and their exosomes, leading to increased cancer progression. MiRNA-34a-5p leads to an increased expression of its direct target AXL receptor tyrosine kinase (AXL) and the activation of the AKT/glycogen synthase kinase 3 (GSK)-3β/β-catenin signaling pathway, which can induce EMT to promote cancer cells metastasis [106]. MiRNA-3188 can regulate the proliferation and apoptosis of HNC cells by directly targeting B-cell lymphoma 2 (BCL2) in vitro and in vivo [107]. Exosomal transfer was also shown from tumor cells to fibroblasts. One example is the exosome-mediated delivery of miRNA-9 to normal breast fibroblasts. Tumor-secreted miRNA-9 can be transferred via exosomes to recipient normal fibroblasts and this uptake results in enhanced cell motility. Moreover, this miRNA is also secreted by fibroblasts and in turn able to alter tumor cell behavior by modulating the expression of its direct target E-cadherin [108].

Finally, emerging evidence has suggested that deregulated miRNAs play a crucial role in changing the metabolism in CAFs and their surrounding cancer cells. A first study investigating the role of miRNA-186 during CAF formation came to the conclusion that, besides its implication in cell cycle progression, the downregulation of this miRNA led to an increased expression of its direct target glucose transporter (Glut) 1, which is responsible for glucose uptake and lactate production in cells [109]. Another study claiming that CAFs provide metabolites for tumor growth and undergo metabolic reprogramming to support glycolysis came from Zhang et al. [110]. By investigating the TGF-ß1 or PDGF-induced switch of these cells from oxidative phosphorylation to aerobic glycolysis, they identified miRNA-424 as being responsible for the downregulation of isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH) 3α. Thus, the downregulation of IDH3α results in hypoxia-inducible factor prolyl hydroxylase (PHD) 2 inhibition and HIF-1α protein stabilization, which in turn promotes glycolysis by increasing the uptake of glucose [110]. Representative miRNAs involved in the transformation and activation of CAFs, known to be key regulators of cancer cells, are demonstrated in Fig. 1.2.

1.4 Role of miRNAs on Pericyte Function in the TME

Vascularization is a key process in the pathophysiology of cancer and strongly mediated by various components of the TME. Vasculature development and maintenance are based on nontransformed cell, essentially endothelial cells and pericytes. Both cell types represent the major cellular components of tumor blood vessels within the TME, and angiogenesis during tumor development is inseparably connected to the function of these cells. Pericytes are specialized mesenchymal cells present at intervals along the wall of capillaries in juxtaposition to endothelial cells, where they share and co-produce a basement membrane with them [111–113]. This close proximity enables pericytes to directly stimulate endothelial cell proliferation by the secretion of growth factors and to modulate the surrounding ECM to guide endothelial cell migration [114, 115]. In consequence, several soluble mediators and surface receptors are found to facilitate remodeling through this endothelial–pericyte interaction. Among them, TGF-β, platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF-B), platelet-derived growth factor receptor (PDGFR)-β, angiopoietin 1, angiopoietin 2, angiopoietin receptor-2, and VEGF are the best-studied factors [111]. Moreover, pericellular proteases, for example, membrane-type (MT-) MMPs, serine proteases, cysteine cathepsins, and membrane-bound aminopeptidases, play an important role to support neovascularization by activating or modifying angiogenetic growth factors, and by degrading the endothelial and interstitial matrix [116]. Additionally, cancer stem cells derived from solid tumors can give rise to vascular endothelial cells and were found to function as pericyte progenitors activated through EMT-promoting transcription factors like Twist, Snail, and Zinc finger E-box-binding homeobox (Zeb), activating Wnt,

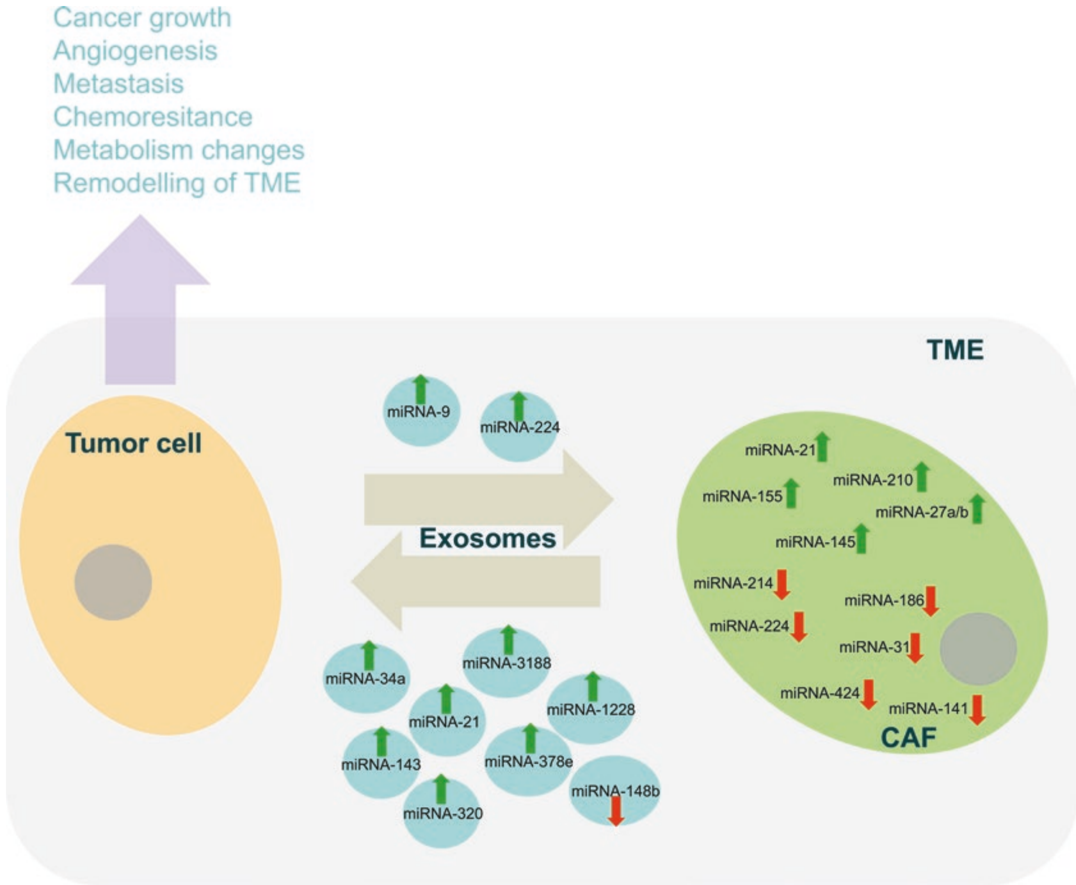


Fig. 1.2 MiRNAs involved in the transformation and activation of CAFs. Tumor-promoting CAFs and miRNAs are key regulators of cancer cells through the regulation of cancer-promoting events, transformation of normal fibroblast into CAFs, and a direct crosstalk through exosomal transfer

NOTCH, TGF-β and nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) pathways, or hypoxia [112, 117].

First reports of a pericyte-specific expression of miRNAs came from a study by Larson et al. [118]. Here, the authors identified miRNA-145 as being selectively expressed in microvessel pericytes, and validated the E26 transformation-specific (ETS) transcription factor Friend leukemia virus integration 1 (Fli1) as a direct target for this miRNA. Moreover, the expression was correlated with increased migration of microvascular cells in response to growth factors [118]. Interesting results for a potential role of miRNAs expressed by pericytes in the TME under hypoxia came from experiments on cultured primary central nervous system pericytes. After exposure to hypoxic stress, several miRNAs such as miRNA-322, miRNA-345, miRNA-345-5p, miRNA-145, miRNA-150, miRNA-140, miRNA-126, miRNA-376-3p, and miRNA-222 were induced by this treatment, suggesting a similar expression pattern of TME-associated pericytes under this condition [119]. Among those investigated miRNAs, miRNA-345-5p showed the most prominent increased expression, leading to the possible regulation of cell cycle progression through targeting cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitor 1 (CKI1) or the downregulation of an anti-apoptotic protein target BcL12-associated athanogene 3 (BAG3), a protein involved in the suppression of cancer cell proliferation and invasiveness in vitro [120, 121]. Similarly, pericyte expression of Let-7d in response to low oxygen conditions was observed during cell differentia-

tion, leading to angiogenesis [122]. In a more comprehensive approach, a systematic study investigated the effect of hypoxia on the expression of pericyte-derived miRNAs and identified miRNA-532-5p to be one of the most differentially modulated among 379 investigated miRNAs. Further investigations revealed the leucine zipper transcription BTB domain and CNC homolog 1 (BACH1) as a direct target, leading to transcriptional regulation of angiopoietin-1 promoter activity and protein expression, as well as enhanced microvascular maturation [123].

Emerging lines of evidence for extracellular vesicle-mediated miRNA exchange between endothelial cells and pericytes came from a study revealing that inflammatory signals are exchanged between these cell populations, leading to increased VEGF-B expression at both the transcriptional and protein levels [124]. Combined investigations on differentially expressed mRNA profiles between samples from glioblastoma microvasculature and glioblastoma tumor cells and corresponding miRNA analysis identified various miRNAs targeting PDGFRB and EGFR during microvascular proliferation [125]. Specifically, miRNA-193b-3p, miRNA-518b, miRNA-520f-3p, and miRNA-506-5p targeting PDGFRB were downregulated in microvascular proliferation, whereas increased expression of miRNA-133b, miRNA-30b-3p, miRNA-145-5p, and miRNA-146a-5p targeting EGFR was observed [125].

1.5 MiRNAs as Modulators Between Infiltrated Immune Cells and Tumor Cells

1.5.1 Cluster of Differentiation (CD)4^{+}, CD8^{+}, and T-reg

As mentioned initially, different types of infiltrated immune cells are pivotal components of the heterogeneous cell population constituting the TME. Depending on the tumor type, these types of cells can be found in variable proportions and represent different phenotypes with either pro- or anti-inflammatory properties [9]. Among them, regulatory T-regs are known to be a subset of immunosuppressive infiltrated lymphocytes involved in the immune escape. Together with TAMs, they produce a favorable environment for cancer cells. On the other hand, T-helper cells (Th), together with CD8+ T cells, NK and DCs, are crucial for tumor suppression [126]. Th cells can be further phenotypically characterized into Th1, Th2, and other Th subpopulations based on distinct profiles of cytokines, transcription factor, and homing receptor expression [127]. Among them, Th1 cells are the main CD4^{+} T-cell population involved in the response against tumors. In contrast to them, T-regs avoid autoimmune reactions and stop the effector response against exogenous antigens if required [127].

First hints for miRNAs and their biogenesis as regulators in the regulation of T-cell functions came from Dicer-deficient CD4^{+} T cells. Here, the authors conclusively demonstrate that Dicer regulates diverse aspects of T-cell biology, including basic cellular processes such as proliferation and survival, as well as cell lineage decisions and cytokine production during Th differentiation [128]. Another study found that the loss of Drosha is responsible for spontaneous T-cell activation, inflammatory disease, and premature lethality. Moreover, both Drosha and Dicer were shown to be critical for the induction of forkhead box P3 (FOXP3) and related functions of the T-reg lineage, since the transcription factor FOXP3 is essential for the differentiation and function of regulatory T-regs. Additionally, the transcription factor GATA-3 is induced in T-reg cells under inflammatory conditions and stabilizes FOXP3 to avoid the differentiation of T-reg cells into inflammatory-like T cells [129]. Another study found that the GATA-binding protein (GATA) 3-inducible miRNA-125a-5p can reverse the suppressive effect of T-regs by targeting IL-6R and STAT3, as direct inducers of Foxp3 [130]. Similarly, Yang et al. found that T-reg cell activation after IL-6 stimulation is additionally controlled by miRNA-17 through its direct target eosinophilia (Eos), a pivotal co-regulator of FOXP3 [131].

Other reports indicated that expression of miRNA-155 and miRNA-146 is induced by pro-inflammatory stimuli such as IL-1, TNF-α, and Toll-like receptors (TLRs) [132]. Moreover, interferon-γ receptor α-chain (IFN- γ Rα) was discovered as a second miRNA-155 target in T cells, suggesting that miRNA-155 contributes to Th1 differentiation in CD4+ T cells by inhibiting IFN- γ signaling [133]. Similarly, it was shown that besides miRNA-155, also miRNA-147, miRNA-146a, and miRNA-132 can be activated by paclitaxel treatment, leading to the expression of the Th1-specific cytokines IFN- γ and IL-12 [134]. Interestingly, another study conclusively demonstrated that miRNA-146a, as one of the miRNAs prevalently expressed in T-reg cells, is critical for their suppressor function due to augmented expression and activation of STAT1, a direct target of this miRNA [135]. Moreover, it became obvious that the TME induces a down-regulation of miRNA-17-92 cluster expressing T cells, thereby preferentially diminishing the persistence of tumor-infiltrated Th1 cells [136]. Further investigations revealed that miRNA-17 and miRNA-19b are the key players controlling Th1 responses by targeting PTEN as well as cAMP-responsive element binding protein (CREB) 1, and that the loss of the miRNA-17-92 cluster in $CD4^+$ T cells results in tumor evasion [137]. Using miRNA arrays, another group found that overexpression of miRNA-568 can inhibit the activation and function of both CD4+ T cells and T-reg cells by targeting nuclear factor of activated T cells (NFAT) 5, and that this prohibition of T-reg-cell differentiation can inhibit the suppressive effect of these cells on effector cells [138].

The observation that tumor-derived exosomal miRNAs modulate T-cell function came from investigations on NPC. For example, NPC cell-derived exosomes impaired T-cell function by inhibiting T-cell proliferation, Th1 differentiation, and by promoting T-reg induction in vitro. Moreover, those exosomes increased the proinflammatory cytokines IL-1β, IL-6, and IL-10, but decreased IFNγ, IL-2, and IL-17 release from $CD4^+$ cells. Further investigations identified miRNA-24-3p, miRNA-891a, miRNA-106a-5p, miRNA-20a-5p, and miRNA-1908 in the exosomes, which were found responsible for a down-regulation of the MARK1 signaling pathway to alter cell proliferation and differentiation [139]. Later, more detailed mechanistic studies revealed FGF11 as a direct target of miRNA-24-3p, this being involved in tumor pathogenesis of NPC by mediating T-cell suppression [140]. Another miRNA mediating immunosuppression in the TME is miRNA-124, which it typically absent in all forms of gliomas. MiRNA-124 targets the STAT3 pathway and reverses the existing glioma cancer stem cell-mediated immunosuppression of T-cell proliferation and induction of Foxp3 expressing T-regs. Moreover, under normal conditions, this mRNA induces effector cell response through upregulation of interleukin 2, IFN-γ, and TNF-α [141].

T-regs in the TME are also found to be recipients for miRNA-214, delivered by cancer cell-secreted exosomes. Such induced T-reg cells are characterized by a reduced expression of PTEN as a direct target of miRNA-214, and secrete higher levels of IL-10 to promote tumor growth [142]. Tumor cells with decreased expression of miRNA-141 have been found in the specific tumor microenvironment that facilitates NSCLC progression. This lack of expression leads to an increased production of CXCL1 and the activation of CXCR2, which in turn recruits T-regs to infiltrate this TME. Since CXCR2 has been demonstrated to be a potent pro-tumorigenic chemokine receptor that directs recruitment of tumor-promoting leukocytes into tissues, the immune escape of tumor cells is supported under these conditions [143]. Finally, it was shown that the downregulation of miRNA-545 promotes T-reg infiltration into the TME of lung cancer, by targeting the chemokine CCL-22 responsible for facilitated T-reg migration and proliferation in lung cancer [144].

MiRNAs can also interfere with the development of cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs) from activated CD8+ T cells to target the antitumor effect of these cells in the TME. Under normal conditions, these cells are characterized by the upregulation of lytic molecules, such as perforin or granzyme, to perform their response on cancer

cells [145]. Using a genome-wide approach to assess miRNA expression during CTL differentiation, Trifari and colleagues identified miRNA-139, miRNA-342, and miRNA-150 to be involved in this process. They showed that miRNA-139, and to a lesser extent miRNA-342, regulates perforin, whereas miRNA-150 regulates the expression of IL-2 receptor α chain (CD 25). Moreover, IL-2 receptor and inflammatory signals downregulate Dicer expression through a posttranscriptional mechanism, which potentially involves the miRNA lethal (let)-7a-1 [146]. Another study investigated the expression of miRNA-23a in tumor-infiltrating CTLs from lung cancer tissue. Here, the authors found that tumor-derived TGF-ß directly suppresses CTL immune function by elevating miRNA-23a expression, leading to downregulation of granzyme B [147]. Moreover, tumor-derived TGF-β was shown by Yu and colleagues to induce miRNA-491 expression, a negative regulator of CD8+ cells in the TME [148]. Representative illustrations of networks of miRNAs as modulators of tumor infiltrating immune cells, especially via exosomes, are shown in Fig. 1.3.

1.5.2 TAMs

Macrophages are another type of well-characterized tumor-infiltrating immune cells involved in the regulation of TME functions. These myeloid cells belong to the mononuclear phagocytic system (MPS) together with monocytes and DCs. Macrophages ingest and digest degraded dead cells, debris, or foreign material, and are known to be multifunctional antigen-presenting cells. Depending on the ability of such a stimulus to induce inflammatory responses or to antagonize inflammatory responses, macrophages are defined as macrophage type 1 (M1) or M2 polarized cells [149]. Interestingly, tumors are abundantly populated by macrophages. Remarkably, those macrophages during cancer-initiating conditions are indeed immune-activated, while this status is reversed during establishment of the tumor, where they can become even pro-tumoral [150]. Over time, it became obvious, that a specific subpopulation of macrophages carries a pivotal role within the TME. They are part of the host antitumor response and called TAMs, but several studies have shown that many of these TAMs do not protect against the malignant tissue, but rather promote tumor initiation, progression, and metastasis [151]. One reason is the release of inflammatory cytokines leading to a chronic inflammatory environment which is permissive for tumor initiation and progression. Moreover, TAMs can switch from an immune-active state to an immune-suppressive phenotype over time and can polarize into both, M1 and M2, phenotypes depending on the stage of carcinogenesis. Therefore, one of the hallmarks of malignancy is the polarization of TAMs from a pro-immune (M1-like) phenotype to an immune-suppressive (M2-like) phenotype [152]. To make things worse, TAMs critically contribute to the remodeling of the TME through the expression of various proteases and are recruited by hypoxic conditions (see also Sect. 1.2) to induce the angiogenic switch and vascularization of the growing tumor [153].

An initial report that TAM-derived miRNAs can be players in the regulation of cancer invasiveness came from Yang et al. [154]. In the exosomes of Il-4-activated macrophages, the authors identified miRNA-223 as being able to increase invasion of breast cancer cells. In parallel, another study aimed to investigate the role of miRNA-501-3p containing exosomes derived from TAMs in the progression of PDAC. While assessing the function of M2-like TAM recruitment in PDAC tissues, this work found that exosomal-transferred miRNA-501 via TGF-β signaling was associated with promotion of metastasis by targeting TGFBR3 [155]. Moreover, Zhong and Yi found that miRNA-720 downregulated in TAMs from breast carcinomas and M2-polarized macrophages and suggested this miRNA to modulate their function by targeting GATA3, a transcriptional factor that plays an important role in M2 macrophage polarization [156]. Furthermore, miRNA-19a-3p is capable of downregulating the M2 phenotype in M2 macrophages and has an important role in the upregulation of Fra-1

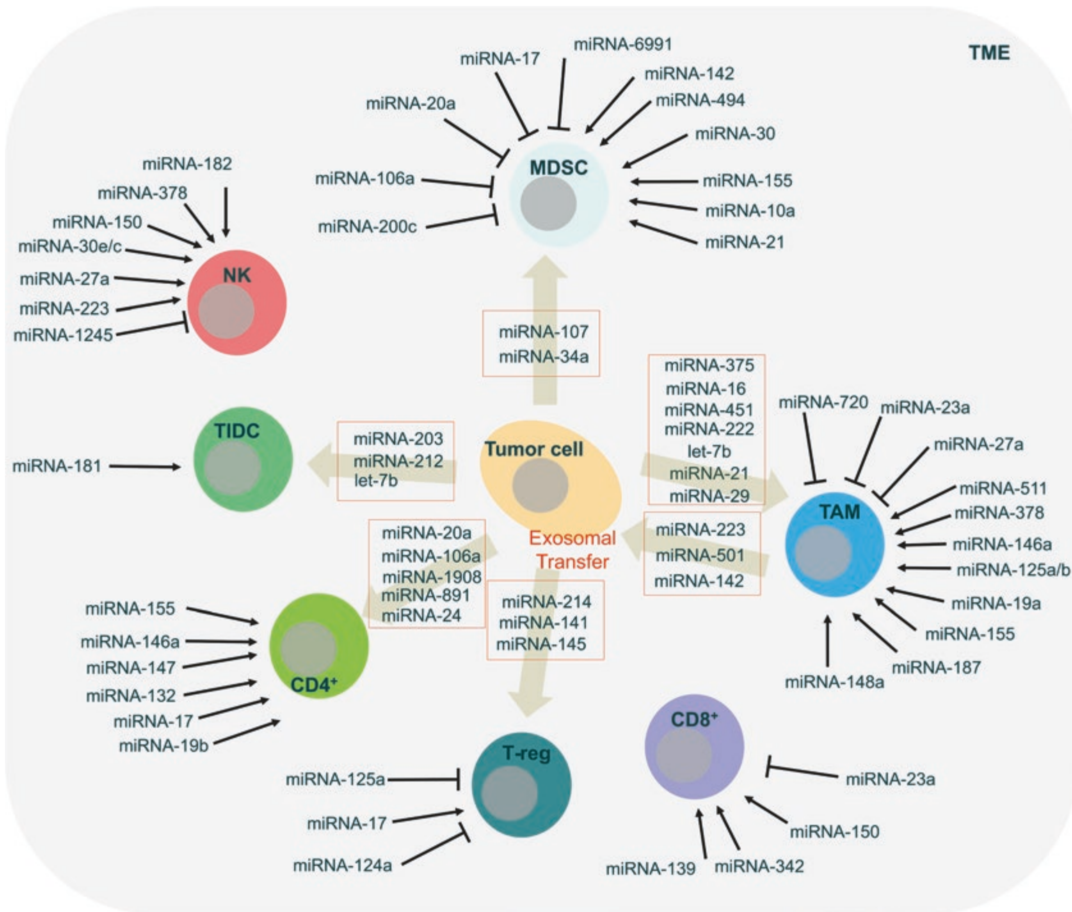


Fig. 1.3 MiRNAs as modulators of tumor-infiltrating immune cells in the TME. MiRNAs expressed in different types of tumor-infiltrated immune and cancer cells regulate immune responses, leading to tumor progression or repression. This network is based, at least in part, on the communication of cancer cells with other tumor-infiltrated cells present in the TME. Among other mechanisms, this can happen via the secretion and transfer of exosomal miRNAs (black arrows indicate an enhancing effect; black arrows with bars indicate an inhibitory effect)

expression and induction of M2 macrophage polarization [157].

Similarly, various miRNA are known to modulate macrophage activation and function within the TME, and a vast majority of them is upregulated via TLR ligands. Examples are miRNA-155, miRNA-125a/b, miRNA-146, miRNA-21 and let-7b, miRNA-187, miRNA-378-3p, and miRNA-511-3p, among others [30, 158–162]. Specifically, Merline and colleagues found that the extracellular matrix proteoglycan decorin controls inflammation and tumor growth through programmed cell death 4 (PDCD4) and miRNA-21 [160]. Decorin not only acts as an exogenous ligand of TLR 2 and 4 to stimulate the production of pro-inflammatory molecules but also prevents the translational repression of PDCD 4 by decreasing the activity of TGF-β1 and the abundance of oncogenic miRNA-21, a translational inhibitor of PDCD4 [163]. Finally, increased PDCD4 leads to a decreased release of the anti-inflammatory cytokine IL-10, rendering the cytokine profile of theses TAMs more pro-inflammatory [160]. Other studies have shown that miRNA-155 regulates inflammatory cytokine production in TAMs via targeting

CCAAT enhancer binding protein (C/EBP)-β, is a critical translational regulator of macrophage programming and activation, and promotes M1 polarization [159, 161, 164]. Another example is the intronic miRNA-511-3p, encoded by the human *mannose receptor C-type (MRC) 1* gene. Activation of this gene during the polarization of pro-tumoral TAM triggers a negative-feedback response initiated by miRNA-155 expression, with the consequence to attenuate this behavior and to inhibit tumor growth [162].

MiRNAs shown experimentally to transfer from macrophages to cancer cells are miRNA-223 and miRNA-142-3p [165, 166]. Zhu et al. observed that hypoxic epithelial ovarian cancer (EOC) cells triggered macrophage recruitment and induced macrophages into a TAM-like phenotype. Moreover, in the context of hypoxic TME, those macrophages contribute to the malignant phenotype of EOC, by secreting exosomal miRNA-223 to promote drug resistance via the PTEN/phosphatidylinositol-4, 5-bisphosphate 3-kinase (PI3K)/AKT pathway [165]. Interestingly, an earlier report from Aucher and colleagues showed that the transfer of miRNAs-223 and 142-3p by direct cell contact through gap junctions from macrophage to HCC cells inhibits proliferation and tumor growth, demonstrating the versatile effects of those miRNAs in cancer development [166]. Another report concluded that let-7b expression is responsible for the polarization of prostatic TAMs because downregulation of this miRNA in these cells led to expression changes of inflammatory cytokines, such as IL-12, IL23, IL10, and TNF-α [167].

On the other hand, an enormous amount of work was done to understand the impact of tumor-derived miRNAs in the communication between tumor cells and macrophages. In this context, it became obvious that the activation of macrophages, such as the influence of let-7b on the polarization of TAMs, can be triggered significantly by the tumor cell itself. Thus, it was shown that TLR4 signaling is able to trigger the release of microvesicles by HCC cells, which transfer miRNA let-7b to macrophages in the TME, resulting in the downregulation of IL-6 [168]. Similarly, the delivery of let-7b in a breast cancer mouse model was able to reactivate TAMs by acting as a TLR-7 agonist and suppressing IL-10 production and reversed the suppressive tumor microenvironment to inhibit tumor growth [169]. Furthermore, it was demonstrated that tumor-secreted miRNA-29 and miRNA-21 are able to trigger pro-metastatic and inflammatory responses in macrophages through TLR-8 signaling [170]. In line with these data, cancer-secreted miRNA-222-3p was able to induce polarization of macrophages into the M2 phenotype of TAMs. This was brought about by a direct targeting of suppressor of cytokine signaling (SOCS) 3, which in turn increased the expression and activation of STAT3 to facilitate cancer progression [171]. The immunosuppressive function of miRNA-451, together with miRNA-21, delivered in microvesicles from primary human glioblastoma (GBM) to macrophages was shown by a study from van der Vos and colleagues [172]. Here, the authors demonstrated that exposure of macrophages to these microvesicles decreased c-Myc, a transcription factor driving the expression of many genes connected to various biological processes, like proliferation or apoptosis [172]. Another example is miRNA-16, since investigations on epigallocatechin gallate (EGCG)-treated murine breast cancer cells revealed that they upregulate miRNA-16, which can be transferred to TAMs via exosomes to inhibit TAM infiltration and M2 polarization [173]. Apoptotic tumor cell-derived exosomal miRNA-375 uptake by macrophages via the TGF-β receptor in the TME of breast cancer was shown to be required for their infiltration. Here, miRNA-375 directly targets tensin (TNS) 3 and paxilin (PXN) to enhance the migration capacity of macrophages [174].

Moreover, multiple cytokines expressed in the TME, such as IL-4, IL-6, IFN-β, or CCL2, are known to modulate miRNA expression and activity of macrophages via paracrine signaling [175]. For example, an investigation on the function of the miRNA-23a/27a/24-2 cluster in breast cancer revealed that these miRNAs are positive regulators of pro-inflammatory responses induced by M1 stimulation in macrophages via IL-4, and a negative regulator of M2 polarization. Further

analysis showed that miRNA-23a is responsible for promoting M1 polarization by targeting zinc finger protein A20 (A20), a TNFAIP3 protein that negatively regulates NF-κB-dependent gene expression, which acts as an important negative regulator of immune responses. Additionally, miRNA-23a and miRNA-27a were identified to inhibit M2 polarization by targeting JAK1/STAT6 and IRF4/PPAR-gamma [176]. Another study identified miRNA-195-5p to be deregulated in primary tumors of colorectal cancer (CRC) patients. This miRNA, by targeting notch receptor (NOTCH) 2, is able to suppress GATA3-mediated IL-4 secretion in CRC cells, leading to the inhibition of M2-like TAM polarization [177]. Similarly, Huang and colleagues found that miRNA-146a is responsible to suppress the pro-inflammatory M1 macrophage switch. Additionally, this mRNA is able to promote M2 macrophage polarization through targeting NOTCH1 and to increase the expression of poly (ADP-ribose) polymerase (PARP) γ, which promotes M2 macrophage activation after IL-4 stimulation [178]. Another miRNA involved in TME-associated macrophage polarization is miRNA-148a. In prostate cancer, long non-coding (lnc) RNA colon cancer-associated transcript 1 (CCAT1) expression was found to promote IL-4-stimulated macrophages polarization to M2 and tumor invasion, which was accompanied by the upregulation of miRNA-148a and translational repression of protein kinase C (PKC) ζ [179]. For glioblastoma, TAMs with a phenotype resembling M2-macrophages were associated with tumor progression and the suppression of tumor-specific immunity [180]. In this regard, Taenaka and colleagues have discovered an aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR)-dependent transcriptional program to modulate TAM recruitment. Using tumor-conditioned media from glioblastoma cells on glioblastoma-infiltrating TAMs, they identified IFN-β and IL6 to be responsible for the induction of aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR) expression in these macrophages. These cytokines are known activators of STAT1 and STAT3 signaling, increasing AHR expression and migration of TAMs toward a CCL2 gradient in vitro. Moreover, decreased miRNA-29b was found to regulate AHR expression under these conditions [181]. In this context, another study evaluating the influence of IL-6 on the signaling between TAMs and CRC cells identified this cytokine to be required for TAM-induced EMT of CRC cells. TAMs enhance CRC cell migration, invasion, and metastasis by regulating the Janus kinase (JAK) 2/STAT3/miRNA-506-3p/FOXQ1 axis, which in turn leads to the production of CCL2 which promotes macrophage recruitment [182]. A representative illustration of the network of miRNAs as modulators of TAMs and tumor cells, especially via exosomes, is shown in Fig. 1.3.

1.5.3 MDSCs

MDSCs were first characterized in tumor-bearing mice or in patients with cancer and represent a heterogeneous population of cells that share their myeloid origin, immature state, and ability to potently suppress T-cell responses [183]. These bone marrow-derived cells are directly involved in the suppression of the immune system during cancer development, and became the objective of numerous studies to explain the potential link between inflammation and tumor progression in the TME [184]. The development of MDSCs is driven by a complex network of signals leading either to accumulation of immature myeloid cells or to their pathological activation [185]. These factors are either produced by tumor cells and promote the expansion of MDSCs through stimulation of myelopoiesis, while inhibiting their differentiation in mature myeloid cells, or by activated T cells and the tumor stroma leading to a direct activation of MDSCs. Common chemokines involved in the migration of MDSCs to tumors are CCL2, CCL5, CCL7, C-X-C motif chemokine (CXCL) 8, and CXCL12 [186, 187]. Factors that induce expansion and activation of these cells can include cytochrome c oxidase subunit (COX) 2, prostaglandins, supercoiling factor (SCF), macrophage-colony-stimulating factor (M-CSF), IL-6, IL-4, IL-13, TGF-γ, IFN-γ, or VEGF activating several signaling pathways in MDSCs that involve STATs and NF-κB [188].

A study aiming to investigate the molecular network regulating the accumulation and function of tumor-expanded MDSCs found that miRNA-494 is a key factor in regulating these processes by targeting PTEN and the activation of the AKT pathway. Moreover, TGF-β was identified to be the main tumor-derived factor responsible for the upregulation of miRNA-494 in MDSCs [189]. Rong et al. demonstrated that the secretion of prostaglandin (PG) E2 can stimulate an expansion of MDSCs by increasing the expression of miRNA-10a. Moreover, AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK) was identified as a downstream factor in response to miRNA-10 upregulation, and those activated MDSCs were able to inhibit $CD4^+$ T-cell activity [190]. Another group investigated the role of miRNA-6991-3p in the function of MDSCs and identified this miRNA as a suppressor during activation and expansion through translational repression of galectin (LGAL) S9, a β-galactoside-binding protein implicated in modulating cell–cell and cell–matrix interactions, leading to diminished STAT3 activation [191]. Similarly, Xu and colleagues found miRNA-30 expression to be elevated in bursa of Fabricius (B)-cell lymphoma-derived MDSCs and identified SOCS3 as a direct target. They further were able to show that miRNA-30 facilitates tumor growth by increasing differentiation and the immunosuppressive capacity of those cells [192]. Furthermore, it was found that miRNA-9 is able to promote the differentiation of MDSCs by targeting the myeloid differentiation protein runt-related transcription factor (RUNX) 1 [193]. A negative regulation on the differentiation and activity of TME-associated MDSCs was reported by Fontana et al., who investigated the miRNA-17-5p-92 cluster. They found that, during growth and differentiation of monocytic precursors, RUNX1 gets upregulated and activates the expression of the CSFR, this being due to the 3´-UTR of RUNX1 being a direct target for miRNAs 17-5p, 20a, and 106a [194]. As mentioned above, increased concentrations of chemokines in the local microenvironment may promote the infiltration of MDSCs into the tumors, and the infiltrated MDSCs themselves are an important source of these chemokines. In this context, miRNA-155 was identified as a regulator of CXCL1, CXCL2, and CXCL8 expression in MDSCs, contributing to the enhanced recruitment of other MDSCs into the TME by targeting HIF-1α as a potent inducer of these chemokine families [195].

A direct influence of tumor cells on the development of myeloid precursor cells into MDSCs was shown by a study investigating the interplay between Twist and miRNA-34a during this process. The authors found that tumor-derived IL-10 and TGF-β are responsible for the differentiation of MDSCs and conclusively demonstrated that reduced miRNA-34a expression in the tumor cells is responsible for this effect [196]. Conclusive data on gastric-cancer secreted exosomes which are able to deliver miRNA-107 to host MDSCs came from a study by Ren et al. [197]. In this work, they demonstrated that, after miRNA-107, the uptake of the expansion and activity of MDSCs are promoted by the miRNA targeting Dicer1 and PTEN. Moreover, miRNA-34 has been described to act as a critical negative regulator of MDSC expansion, this being brought about by the release of membrane-bound extracellular vesicles from tumor cells [198]. MiRNA-34a expression was also found to alter the expression of the N-Myc proto-oncogene, inhibiting MDSC apoptosis [199]. MiRNA also seems to be involved in the apoptosis of MDSCs. For example, purinergic receptor p2x, ligand-gated ion channel (p2rx) 7, T-cell-restricted intracellular antigen-1 (Tia1), and pleckstrin homology domain-containing protein, family F, member (plekhf) 1 were predicted as potential targets of miRNA-34a [200]. This is an interesting observation since it was shown that adenosine triphosphate (ATP) release into the TME by cancer cells or by infiltrating inflammatory cells in response to cell damage, hypoxia, mechanical stress, or stimulation by cytokines leads to the activation of P2X receptors [201]. Those extracellular ATP-gated ion channels trigger the inflammatory cascade and their downregulation leads to reduced immune and inflammatory responses of tumor-infiltrated immune cells [202]. Another example for the notion that the

specific conditions of the TME directly affect MDSCs came from a study which investigated the hypoxia-inducible expression of miRNA-10a and miRNA-21 [203]. Here, an upregulation of these miRNAs led to an increase of MDSC expansion and activation by targeting retinoic acid-related orphan receptor α (RORA) and PTEN. RORA differentially regulates inflammatory cytokine production in both innate and adaptive immune responses, for example, as a negative regulator of IFN-γ [204].

The important regulatory roles of miRNAs in tumor MDSCs becomes obvious also in several studies focusing on their direct effects on signaling pathways crucial for the regulation of these in TME-associated cells. In this context, it was found that miRNA-200c expressed in myeloid cells can regulate the suppressive function and differentiation of MDSCs by targeting PTEN and ZFPM2 zinc finger protein (FOG2), and that this miRNA expression can be upregulated by the tumor-associated factor granulocyte-macrophage (GM)-CSF [205]. After induction of miRNA-200c in TME-associated MDSCs, the downregulation of FOG2 and PTEN promotes the activation of PI3K/AKT and mediates the phosphorylation of STAT3. Another interesting observation is the downregulation of miRNA-142-3p in tumor-associated MDSCs during tumor-induced myelopoesis [206]. In order to define the molecular mechanisms, by which miRNA-142-3p controls this differentiation, the gene for the transmembrane chain common to all the receptors for the IL-6 cytokine family was identified as a direct target regulated by this miRNA. Beside this alteration of IL-6 signaling, miRNA-142-3p directly targets gp130 and modulates downstream STAT3 signaling mediated by C7/EBP-β [206]. Moreover, miRNA-155 and miRNA-21 have been demonstrated to have a synergistic effect on STAT3 activity and MDSC expansion by targeting Src homology 2-containing inositol-5′-phosphatase 1 (SHIP) 1 and PTEN [207]. A representative illustration of the network of miRNAs as modulators of MDSCs and tumor cells, inclusively via exosomes, is shown in Fig. 1.3.

1.6 Tumor-Infiltrating Dendritic Cells (TIDCs) and NK Cells

TIDCs are important components in the TME that orchestrate tumor immunosuppression and mediate cancer development. They express a broad range of TLRs and cytokines and process antigen material for presentation on the cell surface through MHC II to $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells [208]. Besides that, TIDCs can also interact with NK cells and B cells to bridge the innate and the adaptive immune system [209, 210]. NK cells comprise up to 15% of all circulating lymphocytes and are capable of infiltrating most cancer tissues following activation by cytokines. Similar to other tumor-infiltrating immune cells, they are susceptible for IL-12, IL-15, IL-2 or IFN-α, and β [211]. NK cells can rapidly respond to the presence of tumor cells and initiate an antitumor immune response by producing effector molecules, such as IFN-gamma, perforin and granzyme. These effector molecules synergize to mediate apoptosis of target cells through a mechanism where granzymes diffuse through perforin pores on the plasma membrane of the target cell [212]. Even though a significant correlation between high intratumoral levels of NK cells or DCs and increased patient survival has been shown in several types of cancer, the specific conditions of the TME and tumor-derived factors can activate different mechanisms to impair this anti-tumor immunity [213–215].

One characteristic of tumor-derived soluble factors in the TME is their role to disrupt DC differentiation and their ability to activate immune responses. These factors, like cytokines and growth factors, interfere with the regular function of DCs by activating several intracellular pathways, such as MAPK, JAK/STAT, and NF-κB signaling [216]. In this context, Liang and colleagues found that miRNA-22 inhibits the translation of p38 through binding to the 3´-UTR of its mRNA [217]. As one of the most important members of the MAPK family, protein 38 kinase (p38) signaling impacts on tumorigenesis by activating inflammation-associated cytokines, such as IL-6. In consequence, the authors have shown that miRNA-22 regulates the expression of IL-6

by targeting MAPK signaling via p38 [217]. MiRNA-155, which was shown to play multiple roles for tumor-infiltrating immune cells of the TME, can also regulate TIDCs by mediating the silencing of proto-oncogene c-Fos expression, leading to an increase of IFN-β and IL-12 cytokine production [218].

Data demonstrating that tumor-derived miRNAs can regulate the process of cross-presentation between DCs and effector T cells came from investigations about miRNA-203. In humans, miRNA-203 is frequently overexpressed in solid tumors and often found as cargo in tumor-derived exosomes [219]. Moreover, exosomal miRNA-203 acts as a regulator to control the expression of TLR4 and the production of cytokines such as TNF-α and IL-12, contributing to the dysfunction of DCs [219]. Similarly, it was shown that miRNA-212-3p, via exosomal transfer, is able to target regulatory factor X-associated protein (RFXAP), the key transcription factor for the MHC II gene expression in DCs [220]. An independent study to assess the effects of targeted delivery of let-7b to TIDCs came to the conclusion that this miRNA is able to restore TIDC immunological function, possibly by modulating the content of IL-10, IL-12p70, MMP-9, and VEGF within the TME [169].

A general role of miRNAs in the regulation of NK cell activation, survival, and function has been shown using conditional deletion of Dicer or DGCR8, since the induced ablation of the miRNA biogenesis pathway increased apoptosis of NK cells [221]. The link between microRNAs and NK cell development came from a study showing that miRNA-181 directly regulates the developmental process by regulating NOTCH signaling [222]. Next-generation sequencing of NK-cell transcriptomes revealed that miRNA-223 specifically targets the 3´-UTR of granzyme B [223]. Similarly, miRNA-27a-5p, miRNA-30e, miRNA-150, and miRNA-378 were found to regulate perforin and/or granzyme B to impair the antitumor potential of NK cells in the TME [224–226]. The most intensively investigated miRNA in NK cells within the TME is miRNA-155. This miRNA is required for the normal function of NK cells and expressed during activation of these cells [227]. Thus, it was shown that miRNA-155 plays a central role in NK cell IFN-γ production, by regulating the expression of SHIP1 as a regulator of the PIK3 pathway [225, 228–230]. Moreover, Donatelli and colleagues observed that TGF-ß treated NK cells exhibit reduced tumor cytolysis and abrogated perforein polarization at the interface between antigen-presenting cells and NK cells. Further investigations revealed that TGF-β-induced miRNA-183 expression leads to depleted DNAX-activating protein 12 (DAP12), which is critical for surface NK receptor stabilization and downstream signal transduction [231]. Also, tumor-derived macrovesicles are key mediators between cancer cells and NK cells in the TME. Moreover, this process can explain how hypoxic stress impairs the antitumor immune response by the transfer of suppressive signals to immune cells, because miRNA profiling revealed the presence of high levels of miRNA-23a in hypoxic tumor-derived macrovesicles. Finally, this miRNA has also been shown to directly targeting lysosomal-associated membrane protein (LAMP) 1 after uptake into NK cells [232].

Additionally, NK cells are characterized by several inhibitory and activating receptors. For example, NK group 2 member (NKG2) D is found on NK cells to trigger cytotoxicity against tumor cells, whereas NKG2A is expressed at the cell surface as a heterodimer with CD94. Binding to its cognate ligand inhibits NK-cell effector functions [233, 234]. A study focused on the potential interaction between miRNAs and the 3′-UTR of the *NKG2D* gene, coding for killer cell lectin-like receptor K (Klrk) 1, identified miRNA-1245 as a negative regulator of Klrk 1 in NK cells. Furthermore, it was found that miRNA-1245 expression was inducible by TGF-ß1 by post-transcriptional processing in NK cells. More interestingly, IL-15, which is a potent inducer of *NKG2D* expression, decreased the expression of mature miRNA-1245 significantly [235]. Another group characterized the impact of miRNA-182 on *NKG2A* and *NKG2D* to investigate the role of miRNAs in the activation and cytotoxic function of NK cells from HCC patients. They found a positive correlation between miRNA-182 and the

expression of both receptors. Since they also observed an increased production of perforin-1 and increased cytotoxicity, the impact of miRNA-182 on NK cells still remained unexplored [236]. In this context, Ma and colleagues found that miRNA-30c could promote the cytotoxicity of NK cells by upregulating the expression of NKG2D and Fas cell surface receptor (Fas) ligand, a member of the tumor necrosis factor family which is expressed on the membrane of activated NK cells, being involved in the apoptosis of target cells. Moreover, LAMP 1, a marker for NK cell cytotoxicity, was upregulated via miRNA-30a [237]. A representative illustration of the network of miRNAs as modulators of TIDCs, NK cells, and tumor cells, inclusive of possible exosomal transfer, is shown in Fig. 1.3.

1.7 Immune Checkpoint – A Therapeutic Approach Using miRNAs as Targets or Tools in the Future

Surgery, conventional chemotherapies, and radiation therapy are still cornerstones of today's cancer treatment. However, to achieve a significant further improvement for patients, personalized strategies preventing progression and metastasis are indispensable. As discussed above, the TME is critical in both the initiation and progression of tumor disease. An identification of therapeutic targets in the TME context could be useful to develop alternative approaches for treatment. However, the complex interplay of different TME-associated cells and their specific molecular and cellular mechanisms render it highly likely that manipulating one TME component will lead to ambiguous roles in the prevention of tumorigenesis, progression, and metastasis.

MiRNAs have gained rapid diagnostic and therapeutic value by providing unique expression profiles in metastasizing tumor cells, tumor-infiltrating and associated cells [73, 238]. The intervention of miRNAs at nearly all biological processes and cancer-related pathways observed within the TME promotes them as attractive potential biomarkers and therapeutic targets or agents [239]. Since miRNAs are proposed to act either as tumor-suppressors or as oncogenic miRNAs, some basic strategies for such therapeutic approaches were developed in the past, including miRNA mimics, anti-miRNA oligonucleotides, or miRNA sponges [240]. MiRNA mimic technologies are based on the gene-silencing effect of small ncRNAs acting like mature endogenous miRNAs. Antagonistic oligonucleotides, also referred to as antagomiRNAs or anti-miRNAs, affect miRNA-related pathways by binding and blocking oncogenic miRNAs. These synthetic small RNA molecules have a complementary sequence to the endogenously expressed mature miRNAs and inhibit their function by direct binding [241]. Analog to naturally expressed circRNAs, miRNA sponges are used to scavenge endogenous miRNA expression. These miRNA sponges are synthetic agonists that contain four to ten seed sequences as binding sites, separated by a few nucleotides each. These constructs act as baits by attracting endogenous miRNAs, preventing their interaction with their native targets [242]. To achieve their impact, either as therapeutic agents or as targets of therapeutic inhibition, different types of vehicles exist for their delivery to the targeted cells, including liposomes, polymers, nanoparticles, and viral approaches, besides others [243–245].

One of the most intensively investigated potential approaches to therapeutically influence the TME in the future is the strategy to include miRNAs implicated in the modulation of immune checkpoint molecules [246]. Activation or repression of T-cell functions is tightly controlled by a group of specific immune checkpoint molecules, and intensive investigations revealed the impact of these molecules as important regulators of a patient's immune response in different diseases, including cancer. Therefore, among the different types of cancer immunotherapies, immune checkpoint blockage using several specific antibodies soon became the "state of the art," and the early success in clinical trials led to the approval for patient treatment. However, still numerous cancer patients did not respond and remained uncured by these treatments, leading to the necessity to investigate supplemental or alternative

concepts. For example, ncRNA regulation of immune checkpoints has been studied in cancer for new therapeutic solutions [247].

Under normal physiological conditions, the prevention of autoimmunity is regulated by a balance between co-stimulatory and inhibitory signals or immune checkpoints. Consequently, the immune system can normally distinguish transformed cells from their normal counterparts by a diverse set of antigens. Interestingly, co-stimulatory and inhibitory receptors and ligands that regulate T-cell activation are not necessarily expressed in cancer cells compared to normal tissues. In contrast to that, inhibitory ligands and receptors that regulate T-cell effector functions in tissues are commonly overexpressed on tumor cells or TME-associated cells [248]. Most prominent immune checkpoint molecules are cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA 4), PD-1, and its ligand PD-L1 [249].

Among them, CTLA-4 was the first checkpoint molecule discovered on the surface of T cells. CTLA-4 prohibits early T-cell activation by counteracting CD28 to prevent TCR signal transduction by binding. PD-1 can be found on several immune cells, including DCs, monocytes, or T- and B cells, upon stimulation [250]. As a member of the B7-CD28 family, it can bind to its ligands PD-L1 and PD-L2, leading to downregulation of pro-inflammatory cytokines and anti-apoptotic signals, as well as reduced T-cell receptor signaling. Both ligands are expressed on antigen-presenting cells, like DCs. The mediation of such inhibitory signals through PD-1 is the cause for T-cell exhaustion, a condition in which T cells lose their effector function(s) and upregulate various inhibitory receptors. Furthermore, such T cells lose their ability to reach a state of naïve T cells termed hyporesponsiveness or quiescence, which is characterized by small cell size, low proliferative rate, and low basal metabolism [251]. PD-L1 itself is stimulated in the TME via inflammatory cell-secreted IFN-gamma, and interferes with immune tolerance in cancer by changing the proliferation of $CD8^{+}$ cytotoxic T cells, the inhibition of cytokine production, and proliferation of tumor infiltrating T cells. TIM3 is also expressed by different types of immune cells, including DCs, NK cells, T cells, and macrophages. It inhibits T helper responses simultaneously by blocking TIM3 and PD-1-enhanced antitumor immunity [247].

Majority of studies investigating the interaction of miRNAs with immune checkpoint molecules to evaluate their potential as novel immunotherapeutic agents have been done at PD-L1 expression in solid tumors. Chen et al. found that miRNA-200 plays a pivotal role in the immunosuppression and metastasis of NSCLC by targeting PD-L1 [252]. Using immunocompetent syngeneic mice, they were able to show that expression of PD-l on tumor cells is targeted by miRNA-200 under the participation of transcription factor ZEB1 and that decreased PD-L1 expression directly correlates with the amount of tumor-infiltrated CD8+ T cells. Therefore, they concluded that exogenous overexpression of miRNA-200 in tumor cells could decrease PD-L1 expression, which in turn supports intratumoral $CD8^{+}$ T-cell immune suppression in the TME of NSCLC [252]. Another potential therapeutic approach for NSCLC has been suggested by a study investigating the pivotal role of miRNA-197 in platinum-based chemotherapy resistance [253]. Using miRNA array technology, this miRNA was identified as being upregulated in a cohort study comparing primary NSCLC tissue with adjacent normal tissue. In a lung cancer xenograft mouse model, miRNA-197 was shown to inhibit cancer progression by targeting CKS1B. Since CKS1B is directly involved in the regulation of PD-L1 expression on tumor cells, exogenous overexpression of miRNA-197 could not only reverse the effect of platinum-based chemotherapy resistance but also support intratumoral immune suppression in the TME [253]. Moreover, PD-L1 could be regulated by the translational inhibition of Cbl proto-oncogene B (Cbl-b) and c-Cbl by miRNA-181 and miRNA-194 [254]. In consequence, STATT3/AKT/ERK signaling responsible for PD-L1 expression was inhibited though this axis. Since patients with a low PD-L1 expression showed a significantly better survival in this study, also these miRNAs can be considered as potential therapeutic agents for NSCLC co-treatment in the future [254].

Shaohua and colleagues were interested to antagonize the upregulation of PD-L1 expression in ovarian cancer and to induce cancer cell-specific T-cell activity [255]. They found that increased miRNA-424 expression is necessary in ovarian cancer cells to suppress its direct target PD-L1, thereby increasing cancer cell response to platinum-based chemotherapy. Furthermore, disruption of the PD-L1/PD-1 pathway through this axis led to the conclusion that this approach might also improve the therapeutic efficacy of chemoresistant tumors associated with PD-L1 overexpression [255]. Other examples of miRNAs that have been found to directly target the 3'UTR of PD-L1 in tumor cells of the TME are miRNAs-138-5p and miRNA-148a-3p in CRC, miRNA-17-5p in melanomas, miRNA-142-5p in pancreatic cancer, miRNA-940 in gastric cancer, miRNA-3609 in breast cancer, or miRNA-34 for malignant gliomas [256–262].

Despite its well-documented role for antibody-based immune checkpoint therapy, the detailed roles of miRNAs in the regulation PD-1 to influence the immune status are, compared to PD-L1, still poorly investigated. One study revealed that miRNA-374b is directly targeting the 3´-UTR of PD-1 in autologous cytokine-induced killer cells (CIK) [263]. These cells, also called T cells with NK phenotype, are activated and expanded peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) isolated from patients after priming with CD3 antibodies and a set of cytokines [264]. Using this approach, the authors demonstrated increased IFN-gamma secretion and enhanced adoptive immunotherapy efficacy for liver cancer as a direct consequence of PD-1 downregulation in these cells [263]. The potential role of miRNA-28 as a therapeutic target in cancer immunotherapy was evaluated by a study investigating the effect of miRNAs on PD-1 in melanomas and T-cell exhaustion [265]. Here, the authors conclusively demonstrated that miRNA-28 can convert the exhaustive phenotype of T cells by directly targeting the inhibitory receptor PD-1 on T cells. Moreover, this repression of PD-1 receptor expression recovered the ability of T cells to secrete cytokines, like IL-2 and TNF-α [265]. In this context, miRNA-149-3p was found to be responsible to inhibit CD8+ T-cell exhaustion in breast cancer. Interestingly, miRNA-149-3p alone does not target PD-1 exclusively, but also the other immune checkpoint receptors TIM-3 and BTLA. Similar to the aforementioned miRNA-28, downregulation of PD-1 promotes CD8+ T-cell-mediated immune response and reverses T-cell exhaustion by enhancing the level of T-cell cytokines associated with and mediating T-cell activation, enhancing T-cell proliferation, and reducing T-cell apoptosis and downregulating FOXP1 [266]. Using a syngeneic subcutaneous glioma mouse model, another group investigated the hypothesis that miRNA-138 could regulate T-regs and that administration in vivo could exert potent antitumor immune effects [267]. After demonstrating the direct targeting of the 3′- UTR of PD-1 by miRNA-138 in T-reg, CD4+, and CD8+ T cells, they concluded that the observed therapeutic effect on tumor growth is immune-mediated. This was supported by the observation that intravenous administration of miRNA-138 in a the syngeneic subcutaneous glioma mouse model demonstrated significant reduction of CTLA-4, PD-1 and FOXP3 on CD4+ T cells in the TME of this animals. This provides a rationale for the development of miRNA-138-based treatments, which target multiple mechanisms of tumor-mediated immune suppression, which is further supported by the knowledge that despite effective CTLA-4 blockade, PD-1 becomes upregulated as a compensatory mechanism [267].

The potential of miRNAs to regulate the immune checkpoint is not limited to their direct influence to mediate PD-1 and PD-L1 expression. So far, several miRNAs have been described that potentially regulate their expression via targeting molecules, involved in signaling pathways regulating their expression, which needs to be taken into account to illustrate the multilayer influence of miRNA regulation in checkpoint blockage [249].

One example is IFN-γ-induced pathway. This interferon is primarily produced by cells of the immune system and interacts as a key immunoregulatory protein with nearly every cell type within the TME by inducing inflammatory innate

response and subsequent immune response [268]. IFN-γ signaling is mediated via a cascade of tyrosine phosphorylation events after binding to IFN-gamma receptor (IFN-γR). This binding activates the canonical JAK/STAT signaling pathway, leading to an activation of receptor-associated JAK1 and JAK2 protein-tyrosine kinases, and subsequent tyrosine phosphorylation and activation of primarily STAT1. After translocation to the nucleus, STAT1 binds to conserved IFN-γ activation site (GAS) DNA elements and directly activates the transcription of interferon-stimulated genes (ISGs), such as chemokines or antigen-presenting molecules [269]. As expected, this signaling cascade is also targeted by translational regulation of key components and several miRNAs are found to be involved in this mechanism. For example, a study aimed to investigate the impact of miRNA-24 and miRNA-181 on IFN-gamma secretion and came to the conclusion that these two miRNAs negatively regulate the expression of this interferon by directly binding to target sites within its 3´-UTR [270]. Another miRNA targeting the interferon pathway was described by a study aiming to identify novel interaction regulatory networks based on the crosstalk between miRNAs and the JAK/STAT axis in melanoma [271]. Using a hematopoietic chimera model, this study found an increased expression of miRNA-146a in T cells of melanoma-bearing mice. Further investigations indicated that miRNA-146a is produced in the TME to prevent activation of the STAT1/IFN-γ axis. Furthermore, it became obvious that miRNA-146a plays a central role within the melanoma microenvironment, by affecting melanoma migration, proliferation, cell-cycle activity, and basal metabolic rate through the direct control of IFN γ expression. However, since it was demonstrated that reduced IFN γ expression leads to increased PD-L1 levels on the melanoma cells, this beneficial effect of an antagomiRNA-based treatment still needs to be supplemented with an immune checkpoint blockage using a specific anti-PD-L1 antibody [271]. These data are supplemented by the observation that STAT1 is a direct target of miRNA-15 and miRNA-223 [272].

1.8 Concluding Remarks

Cancer is a multistep systemic disease based on crucial interactions between tumor cells and the specific conditions within the TME. Tumor growth and dissemination strictly depend on an interactive crosstalk between cancer cells and the TME. This complex network is strongly regulated and influenced by the presence of miRNAs able to silence key mRNAs within this network. Thus, miRNAs exert a pivotal influence on the crosstalk between infiltrated immune cells, CAFs, and tumor cells during tumor progression but also support the unique niche for tumor cells to induce angiogenesis and secretion of additional factors to promote tumor cell invasion and metastasis. Thus, the identification of altered miRNA expression in tumor cells, but also infiltrated immune cells, CAFs, further stromal cells under conditions such as hypoxia can shed more light on this complex interplay. This could also potentially lead to overcome treatment failures due to immune-suppressive conditions of the TME, and suggest miRNA-based ideas to reverse therapeutic resistance of cancer cells. In the long term, this pre-clinical knowledge can help to increase the efficacy of even modern personalized therapeutic approaches, such as immune checkpoint inhibitors.

References

1. Lee RC, Feinbaum RL, Ambros V (1993) The C. elegans heterochronic gene lin-4 encodes small RNAs with antisense complementarity to lin-14. Cell 75(5):843–854
2. Kim VN, Nam JW (2006) Genomics of microRNA. Trends Genet 22(3):165–173
3. Kozomara A, Griffiths-Jones S (2011) miRBase: integrating microRNA annotation and deep-sequencing data. Nucleic Acids Res 39(Database issue):D152–D157
4. Sevignani C et al (2006) Mammalian microRNAs: a small world for fine-tuning gene expression. Mamm Genome 17(3):189–202
5. Tanzer A, Stadler PF (2006) Evolution of microRNAs. Methods Mol Biol 342:335–350
6. Desvignes T et al (2015) miRNA nomenclature: a view incorporating genetic origins, biosynthetic

pathways, and sequence variants. Trends Genet 31(11):613–626
7. Wang Y et al (2019) Exosomal circRNAs: biogenesis, effect and application in human diseases. Mol Cancer 18(1):116
8. Ha M, Kim VN (2014) Regulation of microRNA biogenesis. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 15(8):509–524
9. Yang N et al (2018) MicroRNAs: pleiotropic regulators in the tumor microenvironment. Front Immunol 9:2491
10. Witz IP (2006) Tumor-microenvironment interactions. In: Dalgleish AG, Haefner B (eds) The link between inflammation and cancer: wounds that do not heal. Springer US, Boston, pp 125–140
11. Hanahan D, Coussens LM (2012) Accessories to the crime: functions of cells recruited to the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell 21(3):309–322
12. Butturini E et al (2019) Tumor dormancy and interplay with hypoxic tumor microenvironment. Int J Mol Sci 20(17):4305
13. Balkwill FR, Capasso M, Hagemann T (2012) The tumor microenvironment at a glance. J Cell Sci 125(Pt 23):5591–5596
14. Poltavets V et al (2018) The role of the extracellular matrix and its molecular and cellular regulators in cancer cell plasticity. Front Oncol 8:431
15. Tripathi M, Billet S, Bhowmick NA (2012) Understanding the role of stromal fibroblasts in cancer progression. Cell Adhes Migr 6(3):231–235
16. Hui L, Chen Y (2015) Tumor microenvironment: Sanctuary of the devil. Cancer Lett 368(1):7–13
17. Wu Q et al (2019) Cancer-associated adipocytes: key players in breast cancer progression. J Hematol Oncol 12(1):95
18. Emon B et al (2018) Biophysics of tumor microenvironment and cancer metastasis - a mini review. Comput Struct Biotechnol J 16:279–287
19. Buoncervello M, Gabriele L, Toschi E (2019) The Janus Face of tumor microenvironment targeted by immunotherapy. Int J Mol Sci 20(17):4320
20. Omar HA et al (2019) Immunomodulatory MicroRNAs in cancer: targeting immune checkpoints and the tumor microenvironment. FEBS J 286(18):3540–3557
21. Bullock MD et al (2015) Exosomal non-coding RNAs: diagnostic, prognostic and therapeutic applications in cancer. Noncoding RNA 1(1):53–68
22. Yang C, Robbins PD (2011) The roles of tumor-derived exosomes in cancer pathogenesis. Clin Dev Immunol 2011:842849
23. Akanji MA, Rotimi D, Adeyemi OS (2019) Hypoxia-inducible factors as an alternative source of treatment strategy for cancer. Oxidative Med Cell Longev 2019:8547846
24. Maxwell PH et al (1999) The tumour suppressor protein VHL targets hypoxia-inducible factors for oxygen-dependent proteolysis. Nature 399(6733):271–275
25. Wykoff CC et al (2001) The HIF pathway: implications for patterns of gene expression in cancer. Novartis Found Symp 240:212–25; discussion 225-31
26. Semenza GL (2003) Targeting HIF-1 for cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 3(10):721–732
27. Gupta A et al (2018) Role of miRNAs in hypoxia-related disorders. J Biosci 43(4):739–749
28. Kulshreshtha R et al (2007) A microRNA signature of hypoxia. Mol Cell Biol 27(5):1859–1867
29. Zhao J et al (2017) A novel pathway in NSCLC cells: miR191, targeting NFIA, is induced by chronic hypoxia, and promotes cell proliferation and migration. Mol Med Rep 15(3):1319–1325
30. He C et al (2017) Hypoxia-inducible microRNA-224 promotes the cell growth, migration and invasion by directly targeting RASSF8 in gastric cancer. Mol Cancer 16(1):35
31. Song L et al (2016) MiR-21 modulates radiosensitivity of cervical cancer through inhibiting autophagy via the PTEN/Akt/HIF-1alpha feedback loop and the Akt-mTOR signaling pathway. Tumour Biol 37(9):12161–12168
32. Wang XJ et al (2016) MiR-183 modulates multi-drug resistance in hepatocellular cancer (HCC) cells via miR-183-IDH2/SOCS6-HIF-1alpha feedback loop. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 20(10):2020–2027
33. Mace TA et al (2013) Hypoxia induces the overexpression of microRNA-21 in pancreatic cancer cells. J Surg Res 184(2):855–860
34. Blick C et al (2015) Identification of a hypoxia-regulated miRNA signature in bladder cancer and a role for miR-145 in hypoxia-dependent apoptosis. Br J Cancer 113(4):634–644
35. Chan SY, Loscalzo J (2010) MicroRNA-210: a unique and pleiotropic hypoxamir. Cell Cycle 9(6):1072–1083
36. Bavelloni A et al (2017) MiRNA-210: a current overview. Anticancer Res 37(12):6511–6521
37. Zhang Z et al (2009) MicroRNA miR-210 modulates cellular response to hypoxia through the MYC antagonist MNT. Cell Cycle 8(17):2756–2768
38. Kim JH et al (2013) Reactive oxygen species-responsive miR-210 regulates proliferation and migration of adipose-derived stem cells via PTPN2. Cell Death Dis 4:e588
39. Li L et al (2014) Hypoxia-induced miR-210 in epithelial ovarian cancer enhances cancer cell viability via promoting proliferation and inhibiting apoptosis. Int J Oncol 44(6):2111–2120
40. Ying Q et al (2011) Hypoxia-inducible microRNA-210 augments the metastatic potential of tumor cells by targeting vacuole membrane protein 1 in hepatocellular carcinoma. Hepatology 54(6):2064–2075
41. Liu LZ et al (2011) MiR-21 induced angiogenesis through AKT and ERK activation and HIF-1alpha expression. PLoS One 6(4):e19139
42. Dong C et al (2019) Hypoxic non-small-cell lung cancer cell-derived exosomal miR-21 promotes resistance of normoxic cell to cisplatin. Onco Targets Ther 12:1947–1956

43. Song Z et al (2014) The clinical significance and regulation mechanism of hypoxia-inducible factor-1 and miR-191 expression in pancreatic cancer. Tumour Biol 35(11):11319–11328
44. Nagpal N et al (2015) HIF-inducible miR-191 promotes migration in breast cancer through complex regulation of TGFbeta-signaling in hypoxic microenvironment. Sci Rep 5:9650
45. Xu W et al (2016) HIF-2alpha, acting via miR-191, is involved in angiogenesis and metastasis of arsenite-transformed HBE cells. Toxicol Res (Camb) 5(1):66–78
46. Zhu G et al (2018) MicroRNA-224 promotes pancreatic cancer cell proliferation and migration by targeting the TXNIP-mediated HIF1alpha pathway. Cell Physiol Biochem 48(4):1735–1746
47. Ge X et al (2016) MicroRNA-421 regulated by HIF-1alpha promotes metastasis, inhibits apoptosis, and induces cisplatin resistance by targeting E-cadherin and caspase-3 in gastric cancer. Oncotarget 7(17):24466–24482
48. Xu Y et al (2014) Role of microRNA-27a in down-regulation of angiogenic factor AGGF1 under hypoxia associated with high-grade bladder urothelial carcinoma. Biochim Biophys Acta 1842(5):712–725
49. Danza K et al (2016) Role of miR-27a, miR-181a and miR-20b in gastric cancer hypoxia-induced chemoresistance. Cancer Biol Ther 17(4):400–406
50. Zhao Q et al (2015) HIF-1alpha induces multidrug resistance in gastric cancer cells by inducing MiR-27a. PLoS One 10(8):e0132746
51. Jin F et al (2019) HIF-1alpha-induced miR-23a approximately 27a approximately 24 cluster promotes colorectal cancer progression via reprogramming metabolism. Cancer Lett 440-441:211–222
52. Yang W et al (2019) Reciprocal regulations between miRNAs and HIF-1alpha in human cancers. Cell Mol Life Sci 76(3):453–471
53. Shang W et al (2013) MiR199b suppresses expression of hypoxia-inducible factor 1alpha (HIF-1alpha) in prostate cancer cells. Int J Mol Sci 14(4):8422–8436
54. Raimondi L et al (2014) Targeting of multiple myeloma-related angiogenesis by miR-199a-5p mimics: in vitro and in vivo anti-tumor activity. Oncotarget 5(10):3039–3054
55. Yang X et al (2016) MicroRNA-199a-5p inhibits tumor proliferation in melanoma by mediating HIF-1alpha. Mol Med Rep 13(6):5241–5247
56. Song T et al (2011) MiR-138 suppresses expression of hypoxia-inducible factor 1alpha (HIF-1alpha) in clear cell renal cell carcinoma 786-O cells. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 12(5):1307–1311
57. Chen Y et al (2016) MicroRNA-138 suppresses proliferation, invasion and glycolysis in malignant melanoma cells by targeting HIF-1alpha. Exp Ther Med 11(6):2513–2518
58. Yeh YM et al (2013) MicroRNA-138 suppresses ovarian cancer cell invasion and metastasis by targeting SOX4 and HIF-1alpha. Int J Cancer 133(4):867–878
59. Chen X et al (2018) Radiosensitizing effects of miR-18a-5p on lung cancer stem-like cells via downregulating both ATM and HIF-1alpha. Cancer Med 7(8):3834–3847
60. Krutilina R et al (2014) MicroRNA-18a inhibits hypoxia-inducible factor 1alpha activity and lung metastasis in basal breast cancers. Breast Cancer Res 16(4):R78
61. Zheng Y et al (2013) The role of miR-18a in gastric cancer angiogenesis. Hepato-Gastroenterology 60(127):1809–1813
62. Chen Y et al (2016) MicroRNA-18b inhibits the growth of malignant melanoma via inhibition of HIF-1alpha-mediated glycolysis. Oncol Rep 36(1):471–479
63. Zhang R et al (2016) miR-526b-3p functions as a tumor suppressor in colon cancer by regulating HIF-1alpha. Am J Transl Res 8(6):2783–2789
64. Yamakuchi M et al (2011) MicroRNA-22 regulates hypoxia signaling in colon cancer cells. PLoS One 6(5):e20291
65. Wu Z et al (2016) miR-497 suppresses angiogenesis in breast carcinoma by targeting HIF-1alpha. Oncol Rep 35(3):1696–1702
66. Cheng CW et al (2015) Foxo3a-mediated overexpression of microRNA-622 suppresses tumor metastasis by repressing hypoxia-inducible factor-1alpha in ERK-responsive lung cancer. Oncotarget 6(42):44222–44238
67. Cha ST et al (2010) MicroRNA-519c suppresses hypoxia-inducible factor-1alpha expression and tumor angiogenesis. Cancer Res 70(7):2675–2685
68. Lu Y et al (2017) MiR-142 modulates human pancreatic cancer proliferation and invasion by targeting hypoxia-inducible factor 1 (HIF-1alpha) in the tumor microenvironments. Biol Open 6(2):252–259
69. Liu L et al (2017) MiR-186 inhibited aerobic glycolysis in gastric cancer via HIF-1alpha regulation. Oncogenesis 6(4):e318
70. Ambade A, Satishchandran A, Szabo G (2016) Alcoholic hepatitis accelerates early hepatobiliary cancer by increasing stemness and miR-122-mediated HIF-1alpha activation. Sci Rep 6:21340
71. Takahashi K et al (2014) Modulation of hypoxia-signaling pathways by extracellular linc-RoR. J Cell Sci 127(Pt 7):1585–1594
72. Shan Y et al (2015) MicroRNA-338 inhibits migration and proliferation by targeting hypoxia-induced factor 1alpha in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Oncol Rep 34(4):1943–1952
73. Rupaimoole R et al (2016) miRNA deregulation in cancer cells and the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Discov 6(3):235–246
74. Bandara KV, Michael MZ, Gleadle JM (2017) MicroRNA biogenesis in hypoxia. Microrna 6(2):80–96
75. Bandara V, Michael MZ, Gleadle JM (2014) Hypoxia represses microRNA biogenesis proteins in breast cancer cells. BMC Cancer 14:533

76. Khoshnaw SM et al (2013) The microRNA maturation regulator Drosha is an independent predictor of outcome in breast cancer patients. Breast Cancer Res Treat 137(1):139–153
77. Khoshnaw SM et al (2012) Loss of Dicer expression is associated with breast cancer progression and recurrence. Breast Cancer Res Treat 135(2):403–413
78. Faber C et al (2011) Overexpression of Dicer predicts poor survival in colorectal cancer. Eur J Cancer 47(9):1414–1419
79. Vychytilova-Faltejskova P et al (2019) MicroRNA biogenesis pathway genes are deregulated in colorectal cancer. Int J Mol Sci 20(18):4460
80. Rupaimoole R et al (2014) Hypoxia-mediated downregulation of miRNA biogenesis promotes tumour progression. Nat Commun 5:5202
81. van den Beucken T et al (2014) Hypoxia promotes stem cell phenotypes and poor prognosis through epigenetic regulation of DICER. Nat Commun 5:5203
82. Wang X et al (2013) c-Myc modulates microRNA processing via the transcriptional regulation of Drosha. Sci Rep 3:1942
83. Shen J et al (2013) EGFR modulates microRNA maturation in response to hypoxia through phosphorylation of AGO2. Nature 497(7449):383–387
84. Rupaimoole R et al (2016) Hypoxia-upregulated microRNA-630 targets Dicer, leading to increased tumor progression. Oncogene 35(33):4312–4320
85. Li Y et al (2015) MicroRNA-107 contributes to post-stroke angiogenesis by targeting Dicer-1. Sci Rep 5:13316
86. Fan Y et al (2018) miR-122 promotes metastasis of clear-cell renal cell carcinoma by downregulating Dicer. Int J Cancer 142(3):547–560
87. Yang F et al (2017) Exosomal miRNAs and miRNA dysregulation in cancer-associated fibroblasts. Mol Cancer 16(1):148
88. Kalluri R (2016) The biology and function of fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 16(9):582–598
89. Gieniec KA et al (2019) Cancer-associated fibroblasts-heroes or villains? Br J Cancer 121(4):293–302
90. Wang M et al (2019) Emerging function and clinical values of exosomal MicroRNAs in cancer. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids 16:791–804
91. Baguley BC (2010) Multiple drug resistance mechanisms in cancer. Mol Biotechnol 46(3):308–316
92. Bach DH et al (2017) The role of exosomes and miRNAs in drug-resistance of cancer cells. Int J Cancer 141(2):220–230
93. Mitra AK et al (2012) MicroRNAs reprogram normal fibroblasts into cancer-associated fibroblasts in ovarian cancer. Cancer Discov 2(12):1100–1108
94. Pang W et al (2015) Pancreatic cancer-secreted miR-155 implicates in the conversion from normal fibroblasts to cancer-associated fibroblasts. Cancer Sci 106(10):1362–1369
95. Li Q et al (2013) MiR-21/Smad 7 signaling determines TGF-beta1-induced CAF formation. Sci Rep 3:2038
96. Melling GE et al (2018) A miRNA-145/TGF-beta1 negative feedback loop regulates the cancer-associated fibroblast phenotype. Carcinogenesis 39(6):798–807
97. Taddei ML et al (2014) Senescent stroma promotes prostate cancer progression: the role of miR-210. Mol Oncol 8(8):1729–1746
98. Tanaka K et al (2015) miR-27 is associated with chemoresistance in esophageal cancer through transformation of normal fibroblasts to cancer-associated fibroblasts. Carcinogenesis 36(8):894–903
99. Zhang L et al (2018) Micro-RNA-21 regulates cancer-associated fibroblast-mediated drug resistance in pancreatic cancer. Oncol Res 26(6):827–835
100. Zhou Y et al (2019) MiR-141-3p suppresses gastric cancer induced transition of normal fibroblast and BMSC to cancer-associated fibroblasts via targeting STAT4. Exp Mol Pathol 107:85–94
101. Zhang Z et al (2017) Loss of exosomal miR-320a from cancer-associated fibroblasts contributes to HCC proliferation and metastasis. Cancer Lett 397:33–42
102. Donnarumma E et al (2017) Cancer-associated fibroblasts release exosomal microRNAs that dictate an aggressive phenotype in breast cancer. Oncotarget 8(12):19592–19608
103. Li Y et al (2019) miR-148-3p inhibits growth of glioblastoma targeting DNA Methyltransferase-1 (DNMT1). Oncol Res 27(8):911–921
104. Li BL et al (2019) Loss of exosomal miR-148b from cancer-associated fibroblasts promotes endometrial cancer cell invasion and cancer metastasis. J Cell Physiol 234(3):2943–2953
105. Wang JW et al (2019) Exosomal miR-1228 from cancer-associated fibroblasts promotes cell migration and invasion of osteosarcoma by directly targeting SCAI. Oncol Res 27(9):979–986
106. Li YY et al (2018) Cancer-associated fibroblasts contribute to oral cancer cells proliferation and metastasis via exosome-mediated paracrine miR-34a-5p. EBioMedicine 36:209–220
107. Wang X et al (2019) Loss of exosomal miR-3188 in cancer-associated fibroblasts contributes to HNC progression. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 38(1):151
108. Baroni S et al (2016) Exosome-mediated delivery of miR-9 induces cancer-associated fibroblast-like properties in human breast fibroblasts. Cell Death Dis 7(7):e2312
109. Sun P et al (2014) miR-186 regulates glycolysis through Glut1 during the formation of cancer-associated fibroblasts. Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 15(10):4245–4250
110. Zhang D et al (2015) Metabolic reprogramming of cancer-associated fibroblasts by IDH3alpha downregulation. Cell Rep 10(8):1335–1348
111. Geevarghese A, Herman IM (2014) Pericyte-endothelial crosstalk: implications and opportunities for advanced cellular therapies. Transl Res 163(4):296–306

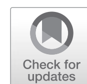
112. Garza Trevino EN et al (2019) Effects of pericytes and colon cancer stem cells in the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell Int 19:173
113. Birbrair A et al (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307(1):C25–C38
114. Cho WC, Jour G, Aung PP (2019) Role of angiogenesis in melanoma progression: Update on key angiogenic mechanisms and other associated components. Semin Cancer Biol 59:175–186
115. Chantrain CF et al (2006) Mechanisms of pericyte recruitment in tumour angiogenesis: a new role for metalloproteinases. Eur J Cancer 42(3):310–318
116. van Hinsbergh VW, Engelse MA, Quax PH (2006) Pericellular proteases in angiogenesis and vasculogenesis. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 26(4):716–728
117. Shangguan W et al (2017) Endothelium originated from colorectal cancer stem cells constitute cancer blood vessels. Cancer Sci 108(7):1357–1367
118. Larsson E et al (2009) Discovery of microvascular miRNAs using public gene expression data: miR-145 is expressed in pericytes and is a regulator of Fli1. Genome Med 1(11):108
119. Truettner JS et al (2013) Hypoxia alters MicroRNA expression in rat cortical pericytes. Microrna 2(1):32–44
120. Tang JT et al (2011) MicroRNA 345, a methylation-sensitive microRNA is involved in cell proliferation and invasion in human colorectal cancer. Carcinogenesis 32(8):1207–1215
121. Wu S et al (2010) Multiple microRNAs modulate p21Cip1/Waf1 expression by directly targeting its 3′ untranslated region. Oncogene 29(15):2302–2308
122. Esen N et al (2016) Hypoxia-induced Let-7d has a role in pericyte differentiation. Adv Exp Med Biol 923:37–42
123. Slater SC et al (2018) MicroRNA-532-5p regulates pericyte function by targeting the transcription regulator BACH1 and Angiopoietin-1. Mol Ther 26(12):2823–2837
124. Yamamoto S et al (2015) Inflammation-induced endothelial cell-derived extracellular vesicles modulate the cellular status of pericytes. Sci Rep 5:8505
125. Xu G, Li JY (2016) Differential expression of PDGFRB and EGFR in microvascular proliferation in glioblastoma. Tumour Biol 37(8):10577–10586
126. Laplagne C et al (2019) Latest advances in targeting the tumor microenvironment for tumor suppression. Int J Mol Sci 20(19):4719
127. Cosmi L et al (2014) T helper cells plasticity in inflammation. Cytometry A 85(1):36–42
128. Muljo SA et al (2005) Aberrant T cell differentiation in the absence of Dicer. J Exp Med 202(2):261–269
129. Chong MM et al (2008) The RNAseIII enzyme Drosha is critical in T cells for preventing lethal inflammatory disease. J Exp Med 205(9):2005–2017
130. Li D et al (2015) MiR-125a-5p Decreases the sensitivity of Treg cells toward IL-6-mediated conversion by inhibiting IL-6R and STAT3 expression. Sci Rep 5:14615
131. Yang HY et al (2016) MicroRNA-17 modulates regulatory T cell function by targeting co-regulators of the Foxp3 transcription factor. Immunity 45(1):83–93
132. Sheedy FJ, O'Neill LA (2008) Adding fuel to fire: microRNAs as a new class of mediators of inflammation. Ann Rheum Dis 67(Suppl 3):iii50–5
133. Banerjee A et al (2010) Micro-RNA-155 inhibits IFN-gamma signaling in CD4+ T cells. Eur J Immunol 40(1):225–231
134. Yuan L et al (2010) Paclitaxel acts as an adjuvant to promote both Th1 and Th2 immune responses induced by ovalbumin in mice. Vaccine 28(27):4402–4410
135. Lu LF et al (2010) Function of miR-146a in controlling Treg cell-mediated regulation of Th1 responses. Cell 142(6):914–929
136. Sasaki K et al (2010) miR-17-92 expression in differentiated T cells - implications for cancer immunotherapy. J Transl Med 8:17
137. Jiang S et al (2011) Molecular dissection of the miR-17-92 cluster's critical dual roles in promoting Th1 responses and preventing inducible Treg differentiation. Blood 118(20):5487–5497
138. Li W et al (2014) MiR-568 inhibits the activation and function of CD4(+) T cells and Treg cells by targeting NFAT5. Int Immunol 26(5):269–281
139. Ye SB et al (2014) Tumor-derived exosomes promote tumor progression and T-cell dysfunction through the regulation of enriched exosomal microRNAs in human nasopharyngeal carcinoma. Oncotarget 5(14):5439–5452
140. Ye SB et al (2016) Exosomal miR-24-3p impedes T-cell function by targeting FGF11 and serves as a potential prognostic biomarker for nasopharyngeal carcinoma. J Pathol 240(3):329–340
141. Wei J et al (2013) miR-124 inhibits STAT3 signaling to enhance T cell-mediated immune clearance of glioma. Cancer Res 73(13):3913–3926
142. Yin Y et al (2014) Tumor-secreted miR-214 induces regulatory T cells: a major link between immune evasion and tumor growth. Cell Res 24(10):1164–1180
143. Lv M et al (2014) miR141-CXCL1-CXCR2 signaling-induced Treg recruitment regulates metastases and survival of non-small cell lung cancer. Mol Cancer Ther 13(12):3152–3162
144. Liao C et al (2015) Radiotherapy suppressed tumor-specific recruitment of regulator T cells via up-regulating microR-545 in Lewis lung carcinoma cells. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 8(3):2535–2544
145. Farhood B, Najafi M, Mortezaee K (2019) CD8(+) cytotoxic T lymphocytes in cancer immunotherapy: A review. J Cell Physiol 234(6):8509–8521
146. Trifari S et al (2013) MicroRNA-directed program of cytotoxic CD8+ T-cell differentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(46):18608–18613
147. Lin R et al (2014) Targeting miR-23a in CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocytes prevents tumor-

dependent immunosuppression. J Clin Invest 124(12):5352–5367
148. Yu T et al (2016) MicroRNA-491 regulates the proliferation and apoptosis of CD8(+) T cells. Sci Rep 6:30923
149. Martinez FO, Gordon S (2014) The M1 and M2 paradigm of macrophage activation: time for reassessment. F1000Prime Rep 6:13
150. Qian BZ, Pollard JW (2010) Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. Cell 141(1):39–51
151. Varol C, Mildner A, Jung S (2015) Macrophages: development and tissue specialization. Annu Rev Immunol 33:643–675
152. Noy R, Pollard JW (2014) Tumor-associated macrophages: from mechanisms to therapy. Immunity 41(1):49–61
153. Lin EY, Pollard JW (2007) Tumor-associated macrophages press the angiogenic switch in breast cancer. Cancer Res 67(11):5064–5066
154. Yang M et al (2011) Microvesicles secreted by macrophages shuttle invasion-potentiating microRNAs into breast cancer cells. Mol Cancer 10:117
155. Yin Z et al (2019) Macrophage-derived exosomal microRNA-501-3p promotes progression of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma through the TGFBR3-mediated TGF-beta signaling pathway. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 38(1):310
156. Zhong Y, Yi C (2016) MicroRNA-720 suppresses M2 macrophage polarization by targeting GATA3. Biosci Rep 36(4):e00363
157. Yang J et al (2014) MicroRNA-19a-3p inhibits breast cancer progression and metastasis by inducing macrophage polarization through downregulated expression of Fra-1 proto-oncogene. Oncogene 33(23):3014–3023
158. Zhang Y et al (2013) Expression profiles of miRNAs in polarized macrophages. Int J Mol Med 31(4):797–802
159. Cai X et al (2012) Re-polarization of tumor-associated macrophages to pro-inflammatory M1 macrophages by microRNA-155. J Mol Cell Biol 4(5):341–343
160. Merline R et al (2011) Signaling by the matrix proteoglycan decorin controls inflammation and cancer through PDCD4 and MicroRNA-21. Sci Signal 4(199):ra75
161. O'Connell RM et al (2009) Inositol phosphatase SHIP1 is a primary target of miR-155. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106(17):7113–7118
162. Squadrito ML et al (2012) miR-511-3p modulates genetic programs of tumor-associated macrophages. Cell Rep 1(2):141–154
163. Asangani IA et al (2008) MicroRNA-21 (miR-21) post-transcriptionally downregulates tumor suppressor Pdcd4 and stimulates invasion, intravasation and metastasis in colorectal cancer. Oncogene 27(15):2128–2136
164. He M et al (2009) MicroRNA-155 regulates inflammatory cytokine production in tumor-associated macrophages via targeting C/EBPbeta. Cell Mol Immunol 6(5):343–352
165. Zhu X et al (2019) Macrophages derived exosomes deliver miR-223 to epithelial ovarian cancer cells to elicit a chemoresistant phenotype. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 38(1):81
166. Aucher A, Rudnicka D, Davis DM (2013) MicroRNAs transfer from human macrophages to hepato-carcinoma cells and inhibit proliferation. J Immunol 191(12):6250–6260
167. Wang Z et al (2016) miRNA let-7b modulates macrophage polarization and enhances tumor-associated macrophages to promote angiogenesis and mobility in prostate cancer. Sci Rep 6:25602
168. Li D et al (2012) TLR4 signaling induces the release of microparticles by tumor cells that regulate inflammatory cytokine IL-6 of macrophages via microRNA let-7b. Onco Targets Ther 1(5):687–693
169. Huang Z et al (2016) Targeted delivery of let-7b to reprogramme tumor-associated macrophages and tumor infiltrating dendritic cells for tumor rejection. Biomaterials 90:72–84
170. Fabbri M et al (2012) MicroRNAs bind to Toll-like receptors to induce prometastatic inflammatory response. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(31):E2110–E2116
171. Ying X et al (2016) Epithelial ovarian cancer-secreted exosomal miR-222-3p induces polarization of tumor-associated macrophages. Oncotarget 7(28):43076–43087
172. van der Vos KE et al (2016) Directly visualized glioblastoma-derived extracellular vesicles transfer RNA to microglia/macrophages in the brain. Neuro-Oncology 18(1):58–69
173. Jang JY et al (2013) Exosome derived from epigallocatechin gallate treated breast cancer cells suppresses tumor growth by inhibiting tumor-associated macrophage infiltration and M2 polarization. BMC Cancer 13:421
174. Frank AC et al (2019) Apoptotic tumor cell-derived microRNA-375 uses CD36 to alter the tumor-associated macrophage phenotype. Nat Commun 10(1):1135
175. Szebeni GJ et al (2017) Inflammation and cancer: extra- and intracellular determinants of tumor-associated macrophages as tumor promoters. Mediat Inflamm 2017:9294018
176. Ma S et al (2016) A double feedback loop mediated by microRNA-23a/27a/24-2 regulates M1 versus M2 macrophage polarization and thus regulates cancer progression. Oncotarget 7(12):13502–13519
177. Lin X et al (2019) miR-195-5p/NOTCH2-mediated EMT modulates IL-4 secretion in colorectal cancer to affect M2-like TAM polarization. J Hematol Oncol 12(1):20
178. Huang C et al (2016) MiR-146a modulates macrophage polarization by inhibiting Notch1 pathway in RAW264.7 macrophages. Int Immunopharmacol 32:46–54

179. Liu J et al (2019) Long non-coding RNA CCAT1/miR-148a/PKCzeta prevents cell migration of prostate cancer by altering macrophage polarization. Prostate 79(1):105–112
180. Hambardzumyan D, Gutmann DH, Kettenmann H (2016) The role of microglia and macrophages in glioma maintenance and progression. Nat Neurosci 19(1):20–27
181. Takenaka MC et al (2019) Control of tumor-associated macrophages and T cells in glioblastoma via AHR and CD39. Nat Neurosci 22(5):729–740
182. Wei C et al (2019) Crosstalk between cancer cells and tumor associated macrophages is required for mesenchymal circulating tumor cell-mediated colorectal cancer metastasis. Mol Cancer 18:64
183. Dolcetti L et al (2008) Myeloid-derived suppressor cell role in tumor-related inflammation. Cancer Lett 267(2):216–225
184. Nagaraj S, Gabrilovich DI (2008) Tumor escape mechanism governed by myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Res 68(8):2561–2563
185. Kumar V et al (2016) The nature of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumor microenvironment. Trends Immunol 37(3):208–220
186. Murdoch C, Giannoudis A, Lewis CE (2004) Mechanisms regulating the recruitment of macrophages into hypoxic areas of tumors and other ischemic tissues. Blood 104(8):2224–2234
187. Allavena P et al (2008) The inflammatory micro-environment in tumor progression: the role of tumor-associated macrophages. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 66(1):1–9
188. Gabrilovich DI, Nagaraj S (2009) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as regulators of the immune system. Nat Rev Immunol 9(3):162–174
189. Liu Y et al (2012) MicroRNA-494 is required for the accumulation and functions of tumor-expanded myeloid-derived suppressor cells via targeting of PTEN. J Immunol 188(11):5500–5510
190. Rong Y et al (2016) Doxorubicin resistant cancer cells activate myeloid-derived suppressor cells by releasing PGE2. Sci Rep 6:23824
191. Sun JP et al (2019) MiR-6991-3p is identified as a novel suppressor in the expansion and activation of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in hepatoma-bearing mice. Onco Targets Ther 12:309–317
192. Xu Z et al (2017) MiR-30a increases MDSC differentiation and immunosuppressive function by targeting SOCS3 in mice with B-cell lymphoma. FEBS J 284(15):2410–2424
193. Tian J et al (2015) MicroRNA-9 regulates the differentiation and function of myeloid-derived suppressor cells via targeting Runx1. J Immunol 195(3):1301–1311
194. Fontana L et al (2007) MicroRNAs 17-5p-20a-106a control monocytopoiesis through AML1 targeting and M-CSF receptor upregulation. Nat Cell Biol 9(7):775–787
195. Wang J et al (2015) MicroRNA-155 deficiency enhances the recruitment and functions of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in tumor microenvironment and promotes solid tumor growth. Int J Cancer 136(6):E602–E613
196. Wang X et al (2013) Twist and miR-34a are involved in the generation of tumor-educated myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Int J Mol Sci 14(10):20459–20477
197. Ren W et al (2019) Exosomal miRNA-107 induces myeloid-derived suppressor cell expansion in gastric cancer. Cancer Manag Res 11:4023–4040
198. Pyzer AR et al (2017) MUC1-mediated induction of myeloid-derived suppressor cells in patients with acute myeloid leukemia. Blood 129(13):1791–1801
199. Chen S et al (2016) miR-34a inhibits the apoptosis of MDSCs by suppressing the expression of N-myc. Immunol Cell Biol 94(6):563–572
200. Huang A et al (2014) miR-34a expands myeloid-derived suppressor cells via apoptosis inhibition. Exp Cell Res 326(2):259–266
201. Bergamin LS et al (2019) Role of the P2X7 receptor in in vitro and in vivo glioma tumor growth. Oncotarget 10(47):4840–4856
202. Young CNJ, Gorecki DC (2018) P2RX7 Purinoceptor as a therapeutic target-the second coming? Front Chem 6:248
203. Guo X et al (2018) Immunosuppressive effects of hypoxia-induced glioma exosomes through myeloid-derived suppressor cells via the miR-10a/Rora and miR-21/Pten Pathways. Oncogene 37(31):4239–4259
204. Dzhagalov I, Zhang N, He YW (2004) The roles of orphan nuclear receptors in the development and function of the immune system. Cell Mol Immunol 1(6):401–407
205. Mei S et al (2015) MicroRNA-200c promotes suppressive potential of myeloid-derived suppressor cells by modulating PTEN and FOG2 expression. PLoS One 10(8):e0135867
206. Sonda N et al (2013) miR-142-3p prevents macrophage differentiation during cancer-induced myelopoiesis. Immunity 38(6):1236–1249
207. Li L et al (2014) MicroRNA-155 and MicroRNA-21 promote the expansion of functional myeloid-derived suppressor cells. J Immunol 192(3):1034–1043
208. Medzhitov R (2001) Toll-like receptors and innate immunity. Nat Rev Immunol 1(2):135–145
209. Dubois B et al (1999) Dendritic cells directly modulate B cell growth and differentiation. J Leukoc Biol 66(2):224–230
210. Gerosa F et al (2002) Reciprocal activating interaction between natural killer cells and dendritic cells. J Exp Med 195(3):327–333
211. Smyth MJ et al (2002) New aspects of natural-killer-cell surveillance and therapy of cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2(11):850–861
212. Voskoboinik I, Whisstock JC, Trapani JA (2015) Perforin and granzymes: function, dysfunction and human pathology. Nat Rev Immunol 15(6):388–400
213. Senovilla L et al (2012) Trial watch: prognostic and predictive value of the immune infiltrate in cancer. Onco Targets Ther 1(8):1323–1343

214. Baginska J et al (2013) The critical role of the tumor microenvironment in shaping natural killer cell-mediated anti-tumor immunity. Front Immunol 4:490
215. Subbiah V et al (2018) Cytokines produced by dendritic cells administered intratumorally correlate with clinical outcome in patients with diverse cancers. Clin Cancer Res 24(16):3845–3856
216. Wang S et al (2006) Tumor evasion of the immune system: inhibiting p38 MAPK signaling restores the function of dendritic cells in multiple myeloma. Blood 107(6):2432–2439
217. Liang X et al (2015) MicroRNA-22 impairs anti-tumor ability of dendritic cells by targeting p38. PLoS One 10(3):e0121510
218. Dunand-Sauthier I et al (2011) Silencing of c-Fos expression by microRNA-155 is critical for dendritic cell maturation and function. Blood 117(17):4490–4500
219. Zhou M et al (2014) Pancreatic cancer derived exosomes regulate the expression of TLR4 in dendritic cells via miR-203. Cell Immunol 292(1–2):65–69
220. Ding G et al (2015) Pancreatic cancer-derived exosomes transfer miRNAs to dendritic cells and inhibit RFXAP expression via miR-212-3p. Oncotarget 6(30):29877–29888
221. Bezman NA et al (2010) Distinct requirements of microRNAs in NK cell activation, survival, and function. J Immunol 185(7):3835–3846
222. Cichocki F et al (2011) Cutting edge: microRNA-181 promotes human NK cell development by regulating Notch signaling. J Immunol 187(12):6171–6175
223. Fehniger TA et al (2010) Next-generation sequencing identifies the natural killer cell microRNA transcriptome. Genome Res 20(11):1590–1604
224. Kim TD et al (2011) Human microRNA-27a* targets Prf1 and GzmB expression to regulate NK-cell cytotoxicity. Blood 118(20):5476–5486
225. Liu X et al (2012) Identification of microRNA transcriptome involved in human natural killer cell activation. Immunol Lett 143(2):208–217
226. Kim N et al (2014) MicroRNA-150 regulates the cytotoxicity of natural killers by targeting perforin-1. J Allergy Clin Immunol 134(1):195–203
227. Tili E, Croce CM, Michaille JJ (2009) miR-155: on the crosstalk between inflammation and cancer. Int Rev Immunol 28(5):264–284
228. Trotta R et al (2012) miR-155 regulates IFN-gamma production in natural killer cells. Blood 119(15):3478–3485
229. Sullivan RP et al (2013) MicroRNA-155 tunes both the threshold and extent of NK cell activation via targeting of multiple signaling pathways. J Immunol 191(12):5904–5913
230. Trotta R et al (2013) Overexpression of miR-155 causes expansion, arrest in terminal differentiation and functional activation of mouse natural killer cells. Blood 121(16):3126–3134
231. Donatelli SS et al (2014) TGF-beta-inducible microRNA-183 silences tumor-associated natural killer cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 111(11):4203–4208
232. Berchem G et al (2016) Hypoxic tumor-derived microvesicles negatively regulate NK cell function by a mechanism involving TGF-beta and miR23a transfer. Onco Targets Ther 5(4):e1062968
233. Sun PD (2003) Structure and function of natural-killer-cell receptors. Immunol Res 27(2–3):539–548
234. Rapaport AS et al (2015) The inhibitory receptor NKG2A sustains virus-specific CD8(+) T cells in response to a lethal poxvirus infection. Immunity 43(6):1112–1124
235. Espinoza JL et al (2012) Human microRNA-1245 down-regulates the NKG2D receptor in natural killer cells and impairs NKG2D-mediated functions. Haematologica 97(9):1295–1303
236. Abdelrahman MM et al (2016) Enhancing NK cell cytotoxicity by miR-182 in hepatocellular carcinoma. Hum Immunol 77(8):667–673
237. Ma Y et al (2016) MicroRNA-30c promotes natural killer cell cytotoxicity via up-regulating the expression level of NKG2D. Life Sci 151:174–181
238. Mudduluru G et al (2015) A systematic approach to defining the microRNA landscape in metastasis. Cancer Res 75(15):3010–3019
239. Ors-Kumoglu G, Gulce-Iz S, Biray-Avci C (2019) Therapeutic microRNAs in human cancer. Cytotechnology 71(1):411–425
240. Abba ML et al (2017) MicroRNAs as novel targets and tools in cancer therapy. Cancer Lett 387:84–94
241. Krutzfeldt J et al (2005) Silencing of microRNAs in vivo with ‘antagomirs’. Nature 438(7068):685–689
242. Ebert MS, Neilson JR, Sharp PA (2007) MicroRNA sponges: competitive inhibitors of small RNAs in mammalian cells. Nat Methods 4(9):721–726
243. Ban E, Kwon TH, Kim A (2019) Delivery of therapeutic miRNA using polymer-based formulation. Drug Deliv Transl Res 9:1043
244. Lim W, Kim HS (2019) Exosomes as therapeutic vehicles for cancer. Tissue Eng Regen Med 16(3):213–223
245. Kota J et al (2009) Therapeutic microRNA delivery suppresses tumorigenesis in a murine liver cancer model. Cell 137(6):1005–1017
246. Kalbasi A, Ribas A (2019) Tumour-intrinsic resistance to immune checkpoint blockade. Nat Rev Immunol 20:25
247. Smolle MA et al (2019) Current concepts of non-coding RNA regulation of immune checkpoints in cancer. Mol Asp Med 70:117
248. Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):252–264
249. Wang Q et al (2017) The roles of microRNAs in regulating the expression of PD-1/PD-L1 immune checkpoint. Int J Mol Sci 18(12):2540
250. Latchman Y et al (2001) PD-L2 is a second ligand for PD-1 and inhibits T cell activation. Nat Immunol 2(3):261–268

251. Blank CU et al (2019) Defining ‘T cell exhaustion’. Nat Rev Immunol 19:665
252. Chen L et al (2014) Metastasis is regulated via microRNA-200/ZEB1 axis control of tumour cell PD-L1 expression and intratumoral immunosuppression. Nat Commun 5:5241
253. Fujita Y et al (2015) The clinical relevance of the miR-197/CKS1B/STAT3-mediated PD-L1 network in chemoresistant non-small-cell lung cancer. Mol Ther 23(4):717–727
254. Wang S et al (2018) E3 ubiquitin ligases Cbl-b and c-Cbl downregulate PD-L1 in EGFR wild-type non-small cell lung cancer. FEBS Lett 592(4):621–630
255. Xu S et al (2016) miR-424(322) reverses chemoresistance via T-cell immune response activation by blocking the PD-L1 immune checkpoint. Nat Commun 7:11406
256. Li D et al (2019) miR3609 sensitizes breast cancer cells to adriamycin by blocking the programmed death-ligand 1 immune checkpoint. Exp Cell Res 380(1):20–28
257. Ashizawa M et al (2019) miRNA-148a-3p regulates immunosuppression in DNA mismatch repair-deficient colorectal cancer by targeting PD-L1. Mol Cancer Res 17(6):1403–1413
258. Fan Y et al (2018) MiR-940 promotes the proliferation and migration of gastric cancer cells through up-regulation of programmed death ligand-1 expression. Exp Cell Res 373(1–2):180–187
259. Jia L et al (2017) miR-142-5p regulates tumor cell PD-L1 expression and enhances anti-tumor immunity. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 488(2):425–431
260. Zhao L et al (2016) The tumor suppressor miR-138-5p targets PD-L1 in colorectal cancer. Oncotarget 7(29):45370–45384
261. Audrito V et al (2017) PD-L1 up-regulation in melanoma increases disease aggressiveness and is mediated through miR-17-5p. Oncotarget 8(9):15894–15911
262. Wang Y, Wang L (2017) miR-34a attenuates glioma cells progression and chemoresistance via targeting PD-L1. Biotechnol Lett 39(10):1485–1492
263. Huang F et al (2018) MicroRNA-374b inhibits liver cancer progression via down regulating programmed cell death-1 expression on cytokine-induced killer cells. Oncol Lett 15(4):4797–4804
264. Chen D et al (2018) Cytokine-induced killer cells as a feasible adoptive immunotherapy for the treatment of lung cancer. Cell Death Dis 9(3):366
265. Li Q et al (2016) miR-28 modulates exhaustive differentiation of T cells through silencing programmed cell death-1 and regulating cytokine secretion. Oncotarget 7(33):53735–53750
266. Zhang M et al (2019) miR-149-3p reverses CD8(+) T-cell exhaustion by reducing inhibitory receptors and promoting cytokine secretion in breast cancer cells. Open Biol 9(10):190061
267. Wei J et al (2016) MiR-138 exerts anti-glioma efficacy by targeting immune checkpoints. Neuro-Oncology 18(5):639–648
268. Young HA, Bream JH (2007) IFN-gamma: recent advances in understanding regulation of expression, biological functions, and clinical applications. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 316:97–117
269. Ivashkiv LB (2018) IFNgamma: signalling, epigenetics and roles in immunity, metabolism, disease and cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Immunol 18(9):545–558
270. Fayyad-Kazan H et al (2014) Downregulation of microRNA-24 and -181 parallels the upregulation of IFN-gamma secreted by activated human CD4 lymphocytes. Hum Immunol 75(7):677–685
271. Mastroianni J et al (2019) miR-146a controls immune response in the melanoma microenvironment. Cancer Res 79(1):183–195
272. Moles R, Bellon M, Nicot C (2015) STAT1: a novel target of miR-150 and miR-223 is involved in the proliferation of HTLV-I-transformed and ATL cells. Neoplasia 17(5):449–462



The Impact of Estrogen in the Tumor Microenvironment

2

Ashwin Somasundaram, Natalie J. Rothenberger, and Laura P. Stabile

Abstract

Tumor immune escape is now a hallmark of cancer development, and therapies targeting these pathways have emerged as standard of care. Specifically, immune checkpoint signal blockade offers durable responses and increased overall survival. However, the majority of cancer patients still do not respond to checkpoint blockade immune therapy leading to an unmet need in tumor immunology research. Sex-based differences have been noted in the use of cancer immunotherapy suggesting that sex hormones such as estrogen may play an important role in tumor immune regulation. Estrogen signaling already has a known role in autoimmunity, and the estrogen receptor can be expressed across multiple immune cell populations and effect their regulation. While it has been well established that tumor cells such as ovarian carcinoma, breast carcinoma, and even lung carcinoma can be regulated by estrogen, research into the role of estrogen in the regulation of tumor-associated immune cells is still emerging. In this chapter, we discuss the role of estrogen in the tumor immune microenvironment and the possible immunotherapeutic implications of targeting estrogen in cancer patients.

Keywords

Tumor microenvironment (TME) · 17β-estradiol (E2) · Estrogen receptor α (ERα) or estrogen receptor β (ERβ) · Cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) · Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) · Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) · Immune T cells · CD4+ T lymphocytes · CD8+ T lymphocytes · Regulatory T cells (Tregs) · Programmed death-1 (PD1) · Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated protein 4 (CTLA4) · Immune B cells · Natural killer (NK) cells · Dendritic cells (DCs) · Fibroblast growth factor (FGF) · Epidermal growth factor (EGF) · Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF)

A. Somasundaram
Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Department of Immunology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

UPMC Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

N. J. Rothenberger
Department of Medicine, Division of Hematology/Oncology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Geisinger Commonwealth School of Medicine, Scranton, PA, USA

L. P. Stabile (✉)
UPMC Hillman Cancer Center, Pittsburgh, PA, USA

Department of Pharmacology & Chemical Biology, University of Pittsburgh, Pittsburgh, PA, USA
e-mail: stabilela@upmc.edu

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_2

2.1 Introduction

The tumor microenvironment (TME) is made up of multiple cell types beyond only tumor cells including immune cells, stromal cells including pericytes, and extracellular molecules all regulating tumor growth. These cells have been well established as mechanisms of resistance and have been targets for cancer therapy [1–4]. While these therapeutic strategies have been promising, de novo, and acquired resistance leading to inevitable tumor progression remains an ongoing problem [5–7]. Therefore, alternative regulatory pathways have become necessary to evaluate for possible avenues for future therapeutic research. Female gender has been suggested in retrospective meta-analyses to be associated with decreased response to checkpoint blockade therapy [8–10]. Given the known role of estrogen and other sex hormones effecting immune responses, these findings warrant the evaluation of estrogen signaling in the TME [11]. Estrogen is a steroid hormone that has many physiological functions associated with reproduction, metabolism, and even immune regulation [12]. The main biological endogenous estrogen, 17β-estradiol (E2), is synthesized from androgens by aromatase (CYP19A1) and binds estrogen receptor α (ERα) or estrogen receptor β (ERβ) to exert its effects through both genomic and non-genomic mechanisms [12–17]. Estrogen has been long established as a driver of malignancy in hormone-sensitive carcinomas such as ovarian, breast, endometrial, lung, colon, and even prostate [18]. The oncogenic function of ER is due to the ability of tumor cells to enable transcriptional upregulation of proliferation and cell-survival genes via growth factors such as insulin growth factor (IGF), fibroblast growth factor (FGF), and epidermal growth factor (EGF) [19–23]. Therapy targeting these aspects of E2 signaling in cancer has been in use clinically for decades. These therapeutics include selective estrogen receptor modulators or degraders (SERMs or SERDs) and aromatase inhibitors (AIs), and are typically utilized in hormone-positive breast cancer, but their utility is being evaluated in other relevant solid tumors [24]. However, most of the studies have focused primarily on the tumoral signaling of E2, while the remainder of the TME has gone unexplored.

E2 signaling and ER expression are not limited to tumor cells but also found on immune cells where they have distinct functions of immune regulation [25–28]. The link between E2 and autoimmunity has been established since findings of sex disparities in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), and multiple, current reviews outline E2 regulation of immune cell function and expansion [29–32]. While the link between E2 and immune regulation has been well characterized and tumor immunology is growing as a field, there is a missing connection between E2 pathways and tumor immunology. This chapter will discuss the current findings in the literature exploring the impact of E2 and tumor immunology, as well as the future therapeutic implications of targeting the E2 pathway in the cancer immunotherapy era.

2.2 E2 Signaling Pathways on Tumor Cells

While ER expression and E2 pathways are canonically associated with tumor cells from hormone-sensitive tumors such as ovarian, breast, and endometrial, there are almost 30 tumor types that are also associated with the E2 pathway [33, 34]. These findings are also associated with changes in outcome for the disease further conveying the importance of understanding this pathway across multiple relevant tumor types. For example, nuclear ERα expression in breast cancer, ovarian cancer, or endometrial cancer is correlated with improved overall survival (OS) compared to cancer patients that are ERα-negative [25, 35–38], while some of the breast cancer patients that were ERα-positive also had increased disease burden. Conversely, cytoplasmic ERα expression in non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC) cells is correlated with worse OS [39–41]. Aromatase and ERβ expression in tumor cells are more controversial with studies varying on whether they convey a survival benefit [42–47]. These mixed opinions in the literature are

possibly due to the lack of standardized and clinically validated staining ERβ antibody, as well as the multitude of ERβ splice variants and post-translational modifications [26, 48, 49]. While these findings are consistent with understanding E2 on tumor cells, there is still the need to evaluate the remainder of the TME.

2.3 The E2 Pathway in Tumor-Associated Stromal Cells and Immune Cells

Within the TME, ERs and aromatase are in notable concentrations in stromal and immune cells in addition to neoplastic cells (Table 2.1). A myriad of studies in the past decade have detailed key interactions between neoplastic cells and their recruited stromal cells that are responsible for tumorigenic potentiation (reviewed in [4, 47]). Cellular architecture complicit in this potentiation is heterogeneous between and within tumor cells, but generally includes cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), immune T and B cells, natural killer (NK) cells, and endothelial cells [4]. Transitively, the association of hormonal protein expression in TME stromal and immune cells serves to underlie a potential immunomodulatory role of ER signaling in cancer biology, demonstrated by cell types listed in Table 2.1.

2.3.1 Tumor-Infiltrating Lymphocytes (TIL)

There exists a notable interplay between cancer type and lymphocyte composition of the TME. It is often opposing immune infiltrates within a given primary tumor that promote neoplastic evolution and antitumor immunity [65]. For example, $CD4^{+}$ T-cell polarization has been identified as a mediator of tumor immune surveillance. Specifically, T helper 1 (Th1) T cell responses are associated with tumor suppression while T helper 2 (Th2) exhibit tumor activation via IFNγ and IL-12 upregulation and IL-4 expression, respec-

Table 2.1 Estrogen receptor (ER) and aromatase expression in stromal and immune cells in the tumor microenvironment

TME cell type	Cancer type	Human expression	Murine expression	Method of evaluation	Reference
Stromal	Breast	Aromatase	ERα	PCR, IHC	[50, 51]
	Melanoma		ERα	IHC	[51]
	Lung		ERα	IHC	[51]
	Endometrial	Aromatase		IHC	[52]
CAF	Breast	ERα		PCR	[53]
	Prostate	ERα, ERβ		IHC	[54, 55]
	Endometrial	ERα, ERβ		PCR	[56]
	Ovarian	ERα		IHC	[57]
TAM	Ovarian	ERα, ERβ		IF,IHC	[58]
	Breast	Aromatase		IHC, PCR	[59]
	Lung	Aromatase	Aromatase	IHC	[17, 60]
MDSC	Ovarian	ERα	ERα	PCR, Western	[57]
NK cells	Breast	ERα, ERβ		IHC	[61]
Effector CD4+/CD8+ T cells	Breast Nonmalignant	ERα, ERβ		IHC	[27, 62]
Tregs	Cervical	ERα		IHC	[63]

Table adapted from [64]
Studies were identified by PubMed searches using keywords: ERα, ERβ, aromatase, stromal, CAF, TAM, MDSC, expression, cancer. *CAF* cancer-associated fibroblast, *TAM* tumor-associated macrophage, *MDSC* myeloid-derived suppressor cell, *IHC* immunohistochemistry, *PCR* polymerase chain reaction, *IF* immunofluorescence, *Western*: Western blotting analysis

tively [66, 67]. Interestingly, several murine and human studies have reported an induction of Th2 response and IL-4 production in settings of elevated E2 [29, 32]. Further support of ER's role in tumorigenesis was illuminated by a recent in silico study showing an increase in Th1 T cells, B cells, and cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) in ER-negative breast tumors relative to ER-positive breast tumors [68]. This study additionally saw an inverse correlation between ER activity and immune infiltration of these cell types in breast cancer tissues. The inverse correlation observed affirmed previous reports that increased TIL, specifically $CD8^+$ T cells, in ER-negative tumors correlated with improved OS [68, 69]. Additionally, post hoc analysis in ER-positive breast cancer patients treated with letrozole showed increased infiltration of B and Th1 cells both at the initiation and at the end of treatments [68].

2.3.1.1 Cytotoxic T Cells and Natural Killer Cells

Granule-mediated exocytosis of serine proteases, such as granzyme B, is a major pathway CTLs and NKCs initiate caspase-dependent apoptosis to eliminate pathogenic and tumor cells [70, 71]. Jiang et al. cultured ERα-expressing human liver carcinoma cells with E2 resulting in upregulated expression of the granzyme B inhibitor, proteinase inhibitor-9 (PI-9). This upregulation protected the tumor cells against granule-mediated exocytosis by these cells per DNA fragmentation assays [72]. A similar study illustrated E2-induced PI-9 expression was also observed in ERα-positive MCF7 breast cancer cells with the same protection, while PI-9 knockdown blocked E2's protective effect [73]. Cumulatively, these studies suggest a component of E2 immunosuppression is via inhibition of NK- and CTL-mediated tumor cell elimination.

2.3.1.2 Regulatory T Cells

T cell activation and effector differentiation are integral to the adaptive immune response. $FoxP3^-$ expressing Tregs subdue neoplastic activity, as well as responder T cell expansion, through secretion of immunosuppressive cytokines [74]. Administration of physiologic doses of E2 to immunocompetent, ovariectomized mice has been observed to expand $CD4^+CD25^+$ Treg concentration, as well as Foxp3 expression in various tissue types [75]. Furthermore, fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACs) assays revealed acquisition of CD25 in E2-incubated ERα-expressing $CD4^+CD25^-$ cells [75]. These transformed $CD4^+CD25^+$ T cells then exhibited an immunosuppressive Treg phenotype in vitro that significantly downregulated T cell concentration [75–78]. Additional studies have reported E2-stimulated Foxp3 expression in murine Tregs, expression of which is vital to Treg functionality. High $FoxP3^+$ Tregs in the TME is a negative prognostic indicator in a variety of cancers. For example, early-stage NSCLC with nuclear ERα expression has a relatively higher risk of both recurrence and $FoxP3^+$ lymphocyte infiltrate [79]. Furthermore, a recent meta-analysis reported $FoxP3^+$ Treg infiltration correlated negatively with OS in ER-positive breast cancer patients and positively in ER-negative patients [80]. Conversely, studies of ERα-positive breast tumors treated with letrozole in vivo demonstrated a resulting reduction of $FoxP3^+$ Tregs [81].

E2 appears to suppress Treg expression in both physiologic and ERα/ERβ knockout mice, with the former group having increased expression of programmed-death 1 (PD-1) and the latter having decreased PD-1 expression [82]. E2 treatment of ERα-positive endometrial and breast cancer cells also stimulates in vitro expression of the PD-1 ligand (PD-L1) via activation of PI3K signaling [83]. $PD\text{-}L1^+$ tumor cells exhaust $PD\text{-}1^+$ cytotoxic T lymphocytes (CTLs) through this protein interaction, resulting in tumor immune evasion [84]. Given E2's upregulation of both PD-1 and PD-L1, the hormone appears to have an important influence on the pathway and its role in the TME.

2.3.2 Stromal Cells

Tumor evolution is heavily dependent on malignant tissue as well as recruited stromal cells that

interact between and within the TME. Via an in vivo murine model, ERα expression in stromal cells was observed within the context of tumor-cell-independent ER signaling in the TME. E2 interactions with stromal ERα has also been seen to accelerate neoplastic growth and blood vessel density in ovariectomized, syngeneic mice transplanted with ER-negative melanoma, breast, or lung cancer cells [51]. The same study found this E2-stimulated tumor growth demonstrated a relative increase in immunocompromised mice, reflecting closer association with E2 modulation of innate immunity [51]. Aromatase expression appears to also modulate the TME in certain neoplasms. Perineoplastic endometrial stromal cells' expression of aromatase also correlates with more advanced disease and, transitively, worse OS [52, 85]. Similarly, perineoplastic breast adipocytes' expression of aromatase appears to be complicit in tumorigenesis in obese patients via inflammation and modification of the TME [50, 86, 87]. Additionally, type 2 pericytes have also been associated with tumorigenesis and vascular formation for tumors [88]. Pericytes recruited for vascular formation have been associated with ERα expression and E2-dependent signaling during function [89, 90].

2.3.3 Cancer-Associated Fibroblasts

CAFs are one of the most integral stromal cell types in the TME for tumor survival and metastasis via paracrine-induced signaling pathways via chemokines and soluble growth factors [91, 92]. ERα expression in breast CAFs have been observed in vivo through nuclear receptor arrays comparing gene expression between CAFs and normal human breast adipose fibroblasts [53]. Interestingly, similar levels of ERα expression are seen in both malignant and physiologic fibroblasts, but with downstream upregulation of the direct transcriptional activator liver receptor homolog-1 (*LRH-1*) in the former [53]. The regulator serves to increase expression of the aromatase-encoding gene *CYP19A1* [93–95]. Co-expression of aromatase and LRH-1 in the breast TME suggests CAF-induced paracrine formation of E2 and subsequent ER-mediated oncogenesis [96]. Coculturing of endometrial CAFs with endometrial neoplastic cells have been seen to contribute to tumor progression, possibly attributed to CAFs' expression of ERα and ERβ [56]. This tumor progression mechanism is supported through in vitro upregulation of phosphatidylinositide 3-kinase (PI3K) and mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling networks, which are both well-known ER-mediated pathways in breast and lung cancer [56, 97–99].

Contrastingly, ER expression in prostate CAFs has contradicting evidence, with reports of ERα/ERβ expression portending advanced disease [54] and others suggesting ERα expression is a protective factor again neoplastic invasion macrophage infiltration [100, 101]. These latter in vitro studies conveyed that CAF ERα expression reduced murine and human prostate cancer cell invasion, as well as lymph node metastasis of orthotopically implanted human prostate cancer cells in mice [101]. These ERα-positive CAFs appeared to halt invasion and metastasis of human prostate cancer cells through downstream downregulation of the C-C motif chemokine ligand 5 (CCL5) and IL-6 chemokines, whose roles are involved in growth factor signaling, inflammation, and tumor recruitment [102, 103].

2.3.4 Tumor-Associated Macrophages

In a physiologic setting, macrophages regulate tissue-specific innate immune responses to fight foreign invaders through polarization by varied cytokines. However, TAMs have been complicit in tumor proliferation and migration, as well as inflammation in the TME [104, 105]. Physiologically, polarized M1 macrophages secrete the proinflammatory cytokines IFNγ, interleukin 12 (IL-12), and tumor necrosis factor (TNF)-α for tumor rejection and antigen presentation [106]. Alternatively, M2 macrophages produce interleukins 4, 5, 6, and 10 [106], which are known promoters of tumor cell growth and immune evasion [107]. TAMs within the TME

are often M2, with denser concentration demonstrating worse OS, thus offering a therapeutic opportunity for a variety of malignancies [108].

TAMs are an independent poor prognostic predictor for ovarian adenocarcinoma [109]. Relatedly, co-localized expression of both ERα/ERβ is reported in human high-grade serous ovarian cystadenocarcinoma (HGSOC) TAMs. Interestingly, HGSOC in premenopausal women demonstrates elevated TAM infiltration relative to that of postmenopausal women. The highest concentration of TAMs in this TME can be found in ERα-positive tumors [58]. The mechanism of this was elucidated by an IHC analysis revealing aromatase expression in the TME of breast TAMs, which was observed to increase E2 production and breast cell proliferation [59]. TAM proliferation, however, is relatively more prevalent in ER-negative breast malignancies [110, 111]. It is important to note, however, that quantification of TAM polarization was not analyzed in these studies. Interestingly, aromatase and ERβ expression in NSCLC TAMs have also been observed, specifically in infiltrating macrophages of preneoplastic, tobacco carcinogen-induced murine lung lesions [17, 60].

Although direct observation of ER expression in TAMs has been limited, E2 induction of M2 polarization and subsequent tumor spread has been studied. A polyomavirus middle T (PyMT), ER-positive breast cancer murine model demonstrated direct E2 stimulation of tumoral M2 TAM infiltration and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) [112, 113]. Alternatively, untreated controls exhibited M1 TAM infiltration instead [112]. In a HGSOC, ovariectomized murine model, E2 induced growth of both ER-negative xenografts and M2 TAM infiltration [58]. In tobacco carcinogen-exposed mice, administration of E2 increased pulmonary TAM infiltration while mice receiving the aromatase inhibitor anastrozole had a significant reduction in pulmonary TAMs [114]. Further, E2-induced VEGF expression was also observed in this model [114]. Of note, E2-mediated TAM infiltration has been observed in vitro to be fed forward via M2 TAM-induced epigenetic ERα upregulation via interleukin 17A (IL-17A) in endometrial malignancy [115]. This positive feedback mechanism between E2 and M2 TAMs provides a potential therapeutic target, a concept recently addressed via effects of the phytoestrogen SERM resveratrol in a lung cancer xenograft model [116]. Resveratrol treatment appeared to suppress tumor proliferation through decreased signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (STAT3) signaling and M2 polarization [116].

2.3.5 Myeloid-Derived Suppressor Cells

MDSCs are another myeloid cell present in the TME known to interfere immune surveillance and facilitate tumor growth [117]. ERα expression in human ovarian adenocarcinoma MDSCs has been identified by IHC and confirmed through PCR and immunoblotting [57]. In an E2-insensitive syngeneic ovarian cancer model, ovariectomized mice exhibited improved survival compared to non-ovariectomized mice following tumor challenge. Contrastingly, E2 supplementation in these mice accelerated tumor progression and reversed the protective effect found in estrogen-depleted mice [57]. Of note, this study found that T-cell-deficient mice lost survival benefit of estrogen depletion, suggesting adaptive immunocompetence to be mechanistically integral [57]. Estrogen's effect on the two legs of immunity was also observed in E2-treated mice, which were found to have notably decreased concentrations of helper and cytotoxic T cells, and significantly increased concentrations of granulocytic MDSCs in spleen and tumor beds [57]. ER-dependence of MDSC expansion was further studied with in vitro administration of the ERα antagonist methylpiperidino pyrazole (MPP) to inhibit MDSC proliferation [57]. Ovarian tumor-bearing mice treated with E2 had measurable JAK2 and SRC upregulation with downstream STAT3 signaling, a regulator of myeloid differentiation and development [118]. In syngeneic lung and breast cancer murine models, E2-stimulated tumor growth was mitigated by MDSC depletion after treatment with anti-Gr1 antibodies [57, 119, 120]. Patients with cervical cancer that were pregnant with high E2 had increased expansion

of MDSCs and shorter PFS. These findings were further evaluated in mouse models [120].

2.3.6 Inflammatory Cytokines and Eicosanoids

Chronic inflammation has been accepted as a common factor in tumorigenesis and spread. TME facilitates neoplastic progression primarily through cytokine-induced oncogenic pathway activation, leading to cell proliferation, immune evasion, and infiltration [121]. IL-6 from TAFs has been observed to assist ERα-positive breast cancer proliferation and immune evasion [122] via STAT3 activation in vitro and in vivo [123]. TNFα in ERα-positive breast cancer cells has been observed to regulate gene expression for metastasis [124]. This cytokine has also been shown to upregulate aromatase expression in cultured human adipose stromal cells [125]. Neoplastic implication of these inflammatory markers is evidenced by data showing TNFα and IL-6 correlate closely with aromatase expression in human breast cancer tissue and not in adjacent noncancerous tissue [126]. Aromatase has similar transcriptional correlation with cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) [126]. COX-2 mediates the inflammatory response by producing eicosanoids such as prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) [127], which upregulates aromatase expression through cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) in breast malignancy [128]. Despite conflicting reports, a case–control study demonstrated regular administration of the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) aspirin reduced the risk of developing ERα-positive breast cancers (hazard ratio (HR) = 0.74; 95% CI, 0.60–0.93), but not ERα-negative cancers (HR = 0.97; 95% CI, 0.67–1.40) [129].

ERα, TNFα, and NF-κB protein expression correlate closely in breast cancer tissues [130]. NF-κB signaling, a proinflammatory cytokine associated with IL-6 and TNFα, is often constitutively activated in many tumor types [131]. High levels of the cytokine are also implicated in SERM resistance in ERα-expressing human breast cancer cells [132, 133]. E2 also enhanced pulmonary inflammation through increased NF-κB, VEGF, and IL-17A in a murine model evaluating tobacco carcinogen-induced lung cancer [114]. E2 inhibition with combined AI/NSAID treatment served to noticeably decrease pulmonary malignancy in these mice. Notable pathways affected included IL-17A expression, IL-6 concentration, as well as STAT3 and MAPK [114]. Cumulatively, there appears to be a potential target for the E2 pathway as it interacts with tumorigenesis via inflammation.

2.3.7 The Impact of Supraphysiologic Estrogen

Esterified estrogen, specifically estrone, is significantly increased in the setting of obesity. Aromatase in adipocytes serves to increase estrone secretion in the setting of hypertrophy. The effect this supraphysiologic estrogen has on tumorigenesis has been controversial [134, 135]. Recent findings suggest that while immune dysfunction and tumor progression are associated with obesity, improved response to immunotherapy may also be associated with obesity, supporting the immune-mediated link between obesity and cancer [136]. Chronic inflammation from obesity is integral to carcinogenesis and tumor evolution, as observed in postmenopausal, ER- and progesterone receptor (PR)-expressing breast malignancy [137]. It is important to note that studies suggesting protumor effects of estrogen in estrogen-depleted mammals have been performed primarily in the setting of hormone replacement therapy (HRT).

Tumorigenesis, progression, and infiltration in the setting of HRT in estrogen-depleted mammals remain controversial. There is a paucity of studies demonstrating proinflammatory changes with hormone replacement therapy in murine models. In contrast, there are many studies conveying a protective effect of exogenous estrogen. Specifically, ERβ-expression has been observed to prevent progression of human colorectal carcinoma (CRC) [134, 138]. Mechanistic protection against carcinogenesis with exogenous estrogen in postmenopausal patients appears to primarily

be through a decrease in the natural postmenopausal increase in Th1/Th2 ratio [139, 140]. Specifically, Th2 cytokines are quantifiably stable until late postmenopausal stage, while production of Th1 cytokines is progressively increased in women after menopause. HRT prevents this increased Th1/Th2 ratio, thereby improving the aberration of Th1/Th2 balance that is implicated in an inadequate immune response and neoplastic conditions [140]. Substantiation of this antitumoral concept was provided through an in vivo, placebo-controlled study regarding postmenopausal human breast cancer cell demonstrating estrogen's notable decrease in IL-6 production [141].

2.4 Clinical Implications of Targeting the Estrogen Pathway in the Tumor Microenvironment

Immunotherapy is a developing and effective treatment avenue in the world of cancer; yet the TME and its immunosuppressive mechanisms is a deterrent for large-scale success. As it stands, the immune checkpoint modulators of cytotoxic T-lymphocyte-associated antigen 4 (CTLA4) and PD-1/PD-L1 are the most studied immunotherapies [142]. These revolutionary options have had dramatic impacts on OS relative to standard-of-care chemotherapies [143–146]. Even so, response rates are limited to 20–35% of cases, closely dependent on tumor type, stage, and PD-L1 expression [147]. Moreover, 25–33% of melanoma patients often demonstrate delayed relapse during treatments attributed to tumor cell adaptation [5, 6].

There appears to be a balance of tumoral mutations and immunoediting that facilitate immune evasion, and subsequently, failure of checkpoint therapy. On the one hand, damaged DNA repair mechanisms, increased non-synonymous somatic mutational load, and neoantigen presentation cripple immune evasion and improve OS [2, 3, 148]. On the other hand, damage to antigen-presenting mechanisms, as well as recurrence of nonantigenic mutations, appears to facilitate immune evasion [149, 150]. Studies identifying these mechanisms provide insight into measurable biomarkers to assess tumor responsiveness to current and, inevitably necessary, novel immunotherapies. A potential investigative therapy is endocrinological agents that modulate E2 and its protumoral pathway to abrogate tumor immune evasion. Specifically, anti-estrogen therapy may reduce TME immunosuppression while increasing E2-sensitive tumor responsiveness.

Recently, a high-throughput screening assay in human lung cancer cells demonstrated fulvestrant, an anti-estrogen agent, as the most efficacious compound in increasing tumor sensitivity to immune-mediated lysis [151]. Fulvestrant additionally has few interactions and overlapping toxicities with anti-PD-1/PD-L1 agents. Thus, anti-E2 therapies to target the immunosuppressive TME could increase efficacy and duration of response of current immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICI) [119, 152] (Fig. 2.1).

Based on the well-established evidence of sex-driven dimorphism in immune function and response, patient sex has been postulated to have an influence on the efficacy of ICIs [9]. This sexual dimorphism plays an important role in the disparity of cancer immunoediting in females and males and could not only explain differences in progression and mortality observed between male and female cancer patients but also sex differences in response rates, toxicity patterns, and outcomes to treatment with ICIs. In support of this concept, the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway is modulated by multiple X-linked microRNAs (miRNAs), which crosstalk with the estrogen-ERα axis, suggesting an important role of the estrogen pathway and response to ICIs [153, 154]. Further since estrogen modulation of the PD-1/PD-L1 pathway has been demonstrated in animal models [82, 155], it is reasonable to expect that immunotherapy efficacy may vary according to patient sex.

In an effort to identify patient characteristics linked to ICI effectiveness, several meta-analyses have been conducted to evaluate sex-differential effects in efficacy of ICIs. Conforti et al. evaluated the effect of patient's sex on the efficacy of

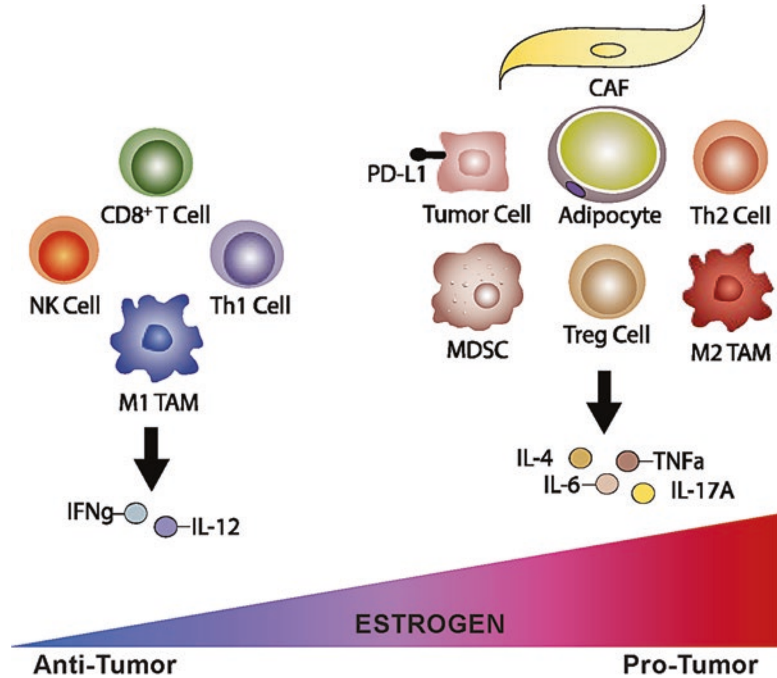


Fig. 2.1 Increasing estrogen promotes a pro-tumor TME via increased Th2 responses, increased production of tumor-promoting cytokines (IL-4, IL-6, TNFα, and IL-17A), M2 TAM infiltration, decreased Th1 cytokines (IL-12 and IFNγ), and M1 TAM infiltration. E2 has also been associated with increased Treg and MDSC proliferation, increased PD-L1 expression on tumor cells, and decreased CD8+ T cell and NK cell proliferation. CAFs and adipocytes may also serve as pro-tumor as they can supply E2 and IL-6. (Adapted from [64])

ICIs measured in terms of OS on different tumor types [156]. This study included 11,351 patients (67% men and 33% women) enrolled in 20 Phase II and III randomized controlled trials that evaluated CTLA4 inhibitors, as well as PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors in patients with different tumor types, mostly melanoma and NSCLC. Results showed that male patients who received ICIs alone had a reduced risk of death compared to men in the control arms (HR = 0.72, 95% CI 0.65–0.79). Similar findings were observed in female patients, but the difference in risk reduction was smaller between the treatment and the control arm (HR = 0.86, 95% CI 0.79–0.93). Although there was a significant difference in the efficacy of ICIs between male and female patients, the heterogeneity test for this sex-related interaction was not quite significant.

A subsequent meta-analysis evaluated the differences in outcomes based on sex in lung cancer patients who received targeted therapy or immunotherapy [10]. This study included a total of 12 Phase III clinical trials evaluating EGFR, ALK, and PD-1 inhibitors versus chemotherapy. Of the 12 trials included in this meta-analysis, five compared PD-1 inhibitors versus chemotherapy, two of which compared pembrolizumab versus chemotherapy (KEYNOTE 010 and KEYNOTE 024), and three compared nivolumab versus chemotherapy (CheckMate 017, CheckMate 026, CheckMate 057) [144, 157–159]. The studies that compared ICIs versus chemotherapy included 1028 female and 1435 male lung cancer patients. While there was significant heterogeneity between STUDIES, OS was favorable in male patients treated with ICIs compared to chemotherapy (HR = 0.76; 95% CI 0.068–0.86; $p < 0.00001$). There was no significant difference in survival in female lung cancer patients receiving chemotherapy compared to ICIs (HR = 1.03; 95%CI 0.89 to 1.03; $p = 0.69$). In a separate study focused on metastatic NSCLC, El-Ostra et al. evaluated results from eight randomized clinical trials for predictors of benefit to single agent ICIs over chemotherapy [8]. NSCLC patients treated with ICIs had significant progression-free survival (PFS) superiority in ever-smokers, male patients, and patients with PD-L1-positive tumors. In contrast, female NSCLC patients had comparable PFS between ICIs and chemotherapy.

Wallis et al. also conducted a meta-analysis that included 23 randomized clinical trials (67.9% men and 32.1% women) that compared ICIs (both ICI alone and ICI plus chemotherapy trials) to standard-of-care treatment in advanced solid tumors (including NSCLC, SCLC, urothelial carcinoma, head and neck squamous carcinoma, melanoma, mesothelioma, clear cell renal carcinoma, and gastric or gastroesophageal carcinoma). In this study, no difference in OS between men and women who received immunotherapy was observed ($I^2 = 38\%$; $p = 0.6$) [160]. The conflicting results and limitations in these meta-analyses suggest that further investigation of the efficacy of ICIs and patients' sex is warranted in future studies. While the majority of the trials included in these studies were underpowered to detect clinically relevant sex differences in outcome, these results indicate that the hormonal milieu may have some effect on treatment response (Table 2.2).

The current best predictive markers of therapeutic response to ICIs are high PD-L1 expression and high tumor mutational burden (TMB). The difference between PD-L1 expression between men and women has been evaluated in some cancer patient cohort with a reported increased PD-L1 expression in male patients [161–163]. TMB has also been shown to be lower in women compared to men ($p = 0.0349$), across multiple studies [164, 165]. TMB is predictive of response to ICI in lung cancer and is lower in female lung cancer patients compared to male lung cancer patients [165]. Similarly, sex differences in immune-related adverse events (irAEs) have also been noted in ICI trials [166, 167]. The gut microbiome and obesity are emerging areas of interest that may predict response to ICIs [168]. Whether or not these factors interact with sex hormones in the context of anti-cancer immunity is yet to be determined.

2.5 Conclusions and Perspective

The E2 pathway is an identified promoter of tumorigenesis in several cancers, largely for its genomic, epigenomic, and transcriptional effects on tumor cells and the TME. The reciprocal interactions of the peritumoral and tumoral environment are becoming more evident, with E2 playing a major role in modulation of primarily protumoral pathways. With immunoediting being a culprit in E2-mediated protumoral activity, it appears to be an important deterrent for checkpoint blockade immunotherapy success. Thus, inhibition of the E2 pathway may augment current immunotherapy response rates.

Carcinogenesis from obesity and its related illnesses are thought to be primarily driven through proinflammatory cytokine secretion. Supraphysiologic estrogen from adipocyte aromatase expression may also play a role, but as of now, it is difficult to distinguish. However, estrogen replacement therapy in postmenopausal women appears to have a relatively protective effect via immune modulation. Stabilization of immunologic aberrancies, notably in the adaptive immune system, is protective against age-related malignancies such as colorectal carcinoma and breast cancers. Based on the above discussion, future studies are war-

Table 2.2 Selected trials evaluating the combination of Estrogen pathway targeting agents with ICIs

Malignancy	Selected study drugs	*n* =	Clinical trial number
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Exemestane and durvalumab/tremelimumab	240	NCT02997995
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Pembrolizumab, letrozole, and palbociclib	22	NCT02778685
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Atezolizumab and fulvestrant	126	NCT03280563
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Pembrolizumab and exemestane	25	NCT02990845
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Pembrolizumab and AI	37	NCT02971748
ER+/Her2- Breast cancer	Pembrolizumab and letrozole, exemestane anastrozole	56	NCT02648477
AR+/ER- Breast cancer	Pembrolizumab and enobosarm	29	NCT02971761

Selected ongoing trials evaluating ICI in combination with therapeutic agents targeting the E2 pathway. Disease type, selected study agents, predicted accrual size, and clinical trial number are provided

ranted to assess responsiveness to current ICIs across sex, menopausal status, and BMI in order to isolate E2 pathway contribution to immune evasion.

References

1. Alexandrov LB, Nik-Zainal S, Wedge DC, Aparicio SA, Behjati S, Biankin AV, Bignell GR, Bolli N, Borg A, Borresen-Dale AL, Boyault S, Burkhardt B, Butler AP, Caldas C, Davies HR, Desmedt C, Eils R, Eyfjord JE, Foekens JA, Greaves M, Hosoda F, Hutter B, Ilicic T, Imbeaud S, Imielinski M, Jager N, Jones DT, Jones D, Knappskog S, Kool M, Lakhani SR, Lopez-Otin C, Martin S, Munshi NC, Nakamura H, Northcott PA, Pajic M, Papaemmanuil E, Paradiso A, Pearson JV, Puente XS, Raine K, Ramakrishna M, Richardson AL, Richter J, Rosenstiel P, Schlesner M, Schumacher TN, Span PN, Teague JW, Totoki Y, Tutt AN, Valdes-Mas R, van Buuren MM, van 't Veer L, Vincent-Salomon A, Waddell N, Yates LR, Australian Pancreatic Cancer Genome I, Consortium IBC, Consortium IM-S, PedBrain I, Zucman-Rossi J, Futreal PA, Mcdermott U, Lichter P, Meyerson M, Grimmond SM, Siebert R, Campo E, Shibata T, Pfister SM, Campbell PJ, Stratton MR (2013) Signatures of mutational processes in human cancer. Nature 500(7463):415–421. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature12477. PubMed PMID: 23945592; PMCID: PMC3776390
2. Rooney MS, Shukla SA, Wu CJ, Getz G, Hacohen N (2015) Molecular and genetic properties of tumors associated with local immune cytolytic activity. Cell 160(1–2):48–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2014.12.033. PubMed PMID: 25594174; PMCID: PMC4856474
3. Rizvi NA, Hellmann MD, Snyder A, Kvistborg P, Makarov V, Havel JJ, Lee W, Yuan J, Wong P, Ho TS, Miller ML, Rekhtman N, Moreira AL, Ibrahim F, Bruggeman C, Gasmi B, Zappasodi R, Maeda Y, Sander C, Garon EB, Merghoub T, Wolchok JD, Schumacher TN, Chan TA (2015) Cancer immunology. Mutational landscape determines sensitivity to PD-1 blockade in non-small cell lung cancer. Science 348(6230):124–128. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaa1348. PubMed PMID: 25765070; PMCID: PMC4993154
4. Quail DF, Joyce JA (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med 19(11):1423–1437. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.3394. PubMed PMID: 24202395; PMCID: 3954707
5. Sharma P, Hu-Lieskovan S, Wargo JA, Ribas A (2017) Primary, adaptive, and acquired resistance to cancer immunotherapy. Cell 168(4):707–723. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.01.017. PubMed PMID: 28187290; PMCID: PMC5391692
6. Schachter J, Ribas A, Long GV, Arance A, Grob JJ, Mortier L, Daud A, Carlino MS, McNeil C, Lotem M, Larkin J, Lorigan P, Neyns B, Blank C, Petrella TM, Hamid O, Zhou H, Ebbinghaus S, Ibrahim N, Robert C (2017) Pembrolizumab versus ipilimumab for advanced melanoma: final overall survival results of a multicentre, randomised, open-label phase 3 study (KEYNOTE-006). Lancet 390(10105):1853–1862. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(17)31601-X. PubMed PMID: 28822576
7. Somasundaram A, Burns TF (2017) The next generation of immunotherapy: keeping lung cancer in check. J Hematol Oncol 10(1):87. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13045-017-0456-5. PubMed PMID: 28434399; PMCID: PMC5402056
8. El-Osta H, Jafri S (2019) Predictors for clinical benefit of immune checkpoint inhibitors in advanced non-small-cell lung cancer: a meta-analysis. Immunotherapy 11(3):189–99. Epub 2019/02/08. https://doi.org/10.2217/imt-2018-0086. PubMed PMID: 30730276
9. Capone I, Marchetti P, Ascierto PA, Malorni W, Gabriele L (2018) Sexual dimorphism of immune responses: a new perspective in cancer immunotherapy. Front Immunol 9:552. Epub 2018/04/06. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2018.00552. PubMed PMID: 29619026; PMCID: PMC5871673
10. Pinto JA, Vallejos CS, Raez LE, Mas LA, Ruiz R, Torres-Roman JS, Morante Z, Araujo JM, Gomez HL, Aguilar A, Bretel D, Flores CJ, Rolfo C (2018) Gender and outcomes in non-small cell lung cancer: an old prognostic variable comes back for targeted therapy and immunotherapy? ESMO Open 3(3):e000344. Epub 2018/04/24. https://doi.org/10.1136/esmoopen-2018-000344. PubMed PMID: 29682332; PMCID: PMC5905840
11. Klein SL, Flanagan KL (2016) Sex differences in immune responses. Nat Rev Immunol 16:626. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri.2016.90
12. Nilsson S, Gustafsson J (2010) Estrogen receptors: their actions and functional roles in health and human disease. In: Bunce C, Campbell MJ (eds) Nuclear receptors: current concepts and future challenges. Dordrecht, Netherlands, pp 91–141
13. Delaunay F, Pettersson K, Tujague M, Gustafsson JA (2000) Functional differences between the amino-terminal domains of estrogen receptors alpha and beta. Mol Pharmacol 58(3):584–590. PubMed PMID: 10953052
14. Zhu BT, Han GZ, Shim JY, Wen Y, Jiang XR (2006) Quantitative structure-activity relationship of various endogenous estrogen metabolites for human estrogen receptor alpha and beta subtypes: Insights into the structural determinants favoring a differential subtype binding. Endocrinology 147(9):4132–4150. https://doi.org/10.1210/en.2006-0113. PubMed PMID: 16728493
15. Brzozowski AM, Pike AC, Dauter Z, Hubbard RE, Bonn T, Engström O, Öhman L, Greene GL, Gustafsson J-Å, Carlquist M (1997) Molecular basis

of agonism and antagonism in the oestrogen receptor. Nature 389(6652):753

16. Klinge CM (2001) Estrogen receptor interaction with estrogen response elements. Nucleic Acids Res 29(14):2905–2919
17. Siegfried JM, Stabile LP (2014) Estrongenic steroid hormones in lung cancer. Semin Oncol 41(1):5–16. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.seminoncol.2013.12.009. PubMed PMID: 24565577; PMCID: PMC4001725
18. Folkerd EJ, Dowsett M (2010) Influence of sex hormones on cancer progression. J Clin Oncol 28(26):4038–4044. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2009.27.4290. PubMed PMID: 20644089
19. Frasor J, Danes JM, Komm B, Chang KC, Lyttle CR, Katzenellenbogen BS (2003) Profiling of estrogen up- and down-regulated gene expression in human breast cancer cells: insights into gene networks and pathways underlying estrogenic control of proliferation and cell phenotype. Endocrinology 144(10):4562–4574. https://doi.org/10.1210/en.2003-0567. PubMed PMID: 12959972
20. Hershberger PA, Vasquez AC, Kanterewicz B, Land S, Siegfried JM, Nichols M (2005) Regulation of endogenous gene expression in human non-small cell lung cancer cells by estrogen receptor ligands. Cancer Res 65(4):1598–1605. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-2694. PubMed PMID: 15735050
21. Egloff AM, Rothstein ME, Seethala R, Siegfried JM, Grandis JR, Stabile LP (2009) Cross-talk between estrogen receptor and epidermal growth factor receptor in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 15(21):6529–6540. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-0862. PubMed PMID: 19825947; PMCID: 2783886
22. Lanzino M, Morelli C, Garofalo C, Panno ML, Mauro L, Ando S, Sisci D (2008) Interaction between estrogen receptor alpha and insulin/IGF signaling in breast cancer. Curr Cancer Drug Targets 8(7):597–610. PubMed PMID: 18991569
23. Siegfried JM, Farooqui M, Rothenberger NJ, Dacic S, Stabile LP (2017) Interaction between the estrogen receptor and fibroblast growth factor receptor pathways in non-small cell lung cancer. Oncotarget 8(15):24063–24076. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.16030. PubMed PMID: 28445992; PMCID: 5421827
24. American Cancer Society. Cancer Facts & Figures 2019. Atlanta: American Cancer Society; 2019.
25. Dunnwald LK, Rossing MA, Li CI (2007) Hormone receptor status, tumor characteristics, and prognosis: a prospective cohort of breast cancer patients. Breast Cancer Res 9(1):R6. https://doi.org/10.1186/bcr1639. PubMed PMID: 17239243; PMCID: PMC1851385
26. Leung YK, Lee MT, Lam HM, Tarapore P, Ho SM (2012) Estrogen receptor-beta and breast cancer: translating biology into clinical practice. Steroids 77(7):727–737. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.steroids.2012.03.008. PubMed PMID: 22465878; PMCID: PMC3356459
27. Phiel KL, Henderson RA, Adelman SJ, Elloso MM (2005) Differential estrogen receptor gene expression in human peripheral blood mononuclear cell populations. Immunol Lett 97(1):107–113. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.imlet.2004.10.007. PubMed PMID: 15626482
28. Laffont S, Rouquie N, Azar P, Seillet C, Plumas J, Aspord C, Guery JC (2014) X-Chromosome complement and estrogen receptor signaling independently contribute to the enhanced TLR7-mediated IFN-alpha production of plasmacytoid dendritic cells from women. J Immunol 193(11):5444–5452. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1303400. PubMed PMID: 25339659
29. Fish EN (2008) The X-files in immunity: sex-based differences predispose immune responses. Nat Rev Immunol 8(9):737–744. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri2394. PubMed PMID: 18728636
30. Kovats S (2015) Estrogen receptors regulate innate immune cells and signaling pathways. Cell Immunol 294(2):63–69. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cellimm.2015.01.018. PubMed PMID: 25682174; PMCID: 4380804
31. Kovats S (2012) Estrogen receptors regulate an inflammatory pathway of dendritic cell differentiation: mechanisms and implications for immunity. Horm Behav 62(3):254–262. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yhbeh.2012.04.011. PubMed PMID: 22561458; PMCID: 3415586
32. Khan D, Ansar AS (2015) The immune system is a natural target for estrogen action: opposing effects of estrogen in two prototypical autoimmune diseases. Front Immunol 6:635. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2015.00635. PubMed PMID: 26779182; PMCID: 4701921
33. Cerami E, Gao J, Dogrusoz U, Gross BE, Sumer SO, Aksoy BA, Jacobsen A, Byrne CJ, Heuer ML, Larsson E, Antipin Y, Reva B, Goldberg AP, Sander C, Schultz N (2012) The cBio cancer genomics portal: an open platform for exploring multidimensional cancer genomics data. Cancer Discov 2(5):401–404. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-12-0095. PubMed PMID: 22588877; PMCID: 3956037
34. Gao J, Aksoy BA, Dogrusoz U, Dresdner G, Gross B, Sumer SO, Sun Y, Jacobsen A, Sinha R, Larsson E, Cerami E, Sander C, Schultz N (2013) Integrative analysis of complex cancer genomics and clinical profiles using the cBioPortal. Sci Signal 6(269):l1. https://doi.org/10.1126/scisignal.2004088. PubMed PMID: 23550210; PMCID: 4160307
35. Li L, Wang Q, Lv X, Sha L, Qin H, Wang L, Li L (2015) Expression and localization of estrogen receptor in human breast cancer and its clinical significance. Cell Biochem Biophys 71(1):63–68. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12013-014-0163-6. PubMed PMID: 25113640
36. Grann VR, Troxel AB, Zojwalla NJ, Jacobson JS, Hershman D, Neugut AI (2005) Hormone receptor status and survival in a population-based cohort of patients with breast carcinoma. Cancer

103(11):2241–2251. https://doi.org/10.1002/cncr.21030. PubMed PMID: 15844176
37. Shen Z, Luo H, Li S, Sheng B, Zhao M, Zhu H, Zhu X (2017) Correlation between estrogen receptor expression and prognosis in epithelial ovarian cancer: a meta-analysis. Oncotarget 8(37):62400–13. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.18253. PubMed PMID: 28977954; PMCID: PMC5617514
38. Zhang Y, Zhao D, Gong C, Zhang F, He J, Zhang W, Zhao Y, Sun J (2015) Prognostic role of hormone receptors in endometrial cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. World J Surg Oncol 13:208. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12957-015-0619-1. PubMed PMID: 26108802; PMCID: PMC4511445
39. Kawai H, Ishii A, Washiya K, Konno T, Kon H, Yamaya C, Ono I, Minamiya Y, Ogawa J (2005) Estrogen receptor alpha and beta are prognostic factors in non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 11(14):5084–5089. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-0200. PubMed PMID: 16033821
40. Nose N, Sugio K, Oyama T, Nozoe T, Uramoto H, Iwata T, Onitsuka T, Yasumoto K (2009) Association between estrogen receptor-beta expression and epidermal growth factor receptor mutation in the postoperative prognosis of adenocarcinoma of the lung. J Clin Oncol 27(3):411–417. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2008.18.3251. PubMed PMID: 19064969
41. Stabile LP, Dacic S, Land SR, Lenzner DE, Dhir R, Acquafondata M, Landreneau RJ, Grandis JR, Siegfried JM (2011) Combined analysis of estrogen receptor beta-1 and progesterone receptor expression identifies lung cancer patients with poor outcome. Clin Cancer Res 17(1):154–164. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-10-0992. PubMed PMID: 21062926; PMCID: 3064257
42. Hsu LH, Chu NM, Kao SH (2017) Estrogen, estrogen receptor and lung cancer. Int J Mol Sci 18(8). https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms18081713. PubMed PMID: 28783064; PMCID: PMC5578103
43. Mah V, Seligson DB, Li A, Marquez DC, Wistuba II, Elshimali Y, Fishbein MC, Chia D, Pietras RJ, Goodglick L (2007) Aromatase expression predicts survival in women with early-stage non small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 67(21):10484–10490. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-2607. PubMed PMID: 17974992; PMCID: PMC3581354
44. Miller WR, Anderson TJ, Jack WJ (1990) Relationship between tumour aromatase activity, tumour characteristics and response to therapy. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 37(6):1055–1059. PubMed PMID: 2285581
45. Lipton A, Santen RJ, Santner SJ, Harvey HA, Sanders SI, Matthews YL (1992) Prognostic value of breast cancer aromatase. Cancer 70(7):1951–1955. PubMed PMID: 1525771
46. Esteban JM, Warsi Z, Haniu M, Hall P, Shively JE, Chen S (1992) Detection of intratumoral aromatase in breast carcinomas. An immunohistochemical study with clinicopathologic correlation. Am J Pathol 140(2):337–343. PubMed PMID: 1739127; PMCID: PMC1886419
47. Miki Y, Suzuki T, Sasano H (2007) Controversies of aromatase localization in human breast cancer--stromal versus parenchymal cells. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 106(1–5):97–101. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsbmb.2007.05.007. PubMed PMID: 17624762
48. Haldosen LA, Zhao C, Dahlman-Wright K (2014) Estrogen receptor beta in breast cancer. Mol Cell Endocrinol 382(1):665–672. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2013.08.005. PubMed PMID: 23954741
49. Leygue E, Murphy LC (2013) A bi-faceted role of estrogen receptor beta in breast cancer. Endocr Relat Cancer 20(3):R127–R139. https://doi.org/10.1530/ERC-12-0389. PubMed PMID: 23533249
50. Morris PG, Hudis CA, Giri D, Morrow M, Falcone DJ, Zhou XK, Du B, Brogi E, Crawford CB, Kopelovich L, Subbaramaiah K, Dannenberg AJ (2011) Inflammation and increased aromatase expression occur in the breast tissue of obese women with breast cancer. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 4(7):1021–1029. https://doi.org/10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-11-0110. PubMed PMID: 21622727; PMCID: PMC3131426
51. Pequeux C, Raymond-Letron I, Blacher S, Boudou F, Adlanmerini M, Fouque MJ, Rochaix P, Noel A, Foidart JM, Krust A, Chambon P, Brouchet L, Arnal JF, Lenfant F (2012) Stromal estrogen receptor-alpha promotes tumor growth by normalizing an increased angiogenesis. Cancer Res 72(12):3010–3019. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-3768. PubMed PMID: 22523036
52. Segawa T, Shozu M, Murakami K, Kasai T, Shinohara K, Nomura K, Ohno S, Inoue M (2005) Aromatase expression in stromal cells of endometrioid endometrial cancer correlates with poor survival. Clin Cancer Res 11(6):2188–2194. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-04-1859. PubMed PMID: 15788666
53. Knower KC, Chand AL, Eriksson N, Takagi K, Miki Y, Sasano H, Visvader JE, Lindeman GJ, Funder JW, Fuller PJ, Simpson ER, Tilley WD, Leedman PJ, Graham J, Muscat GE, Clarke CL, Clyne CD (2013) Distinct nuclear receptor expression in stroma adjacent to breast tumors. Breast Cancer Res Treat 142(1):211–223. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10549-013-2716-6. PubMed PMID: 24122391
54. Daniels G, Gellert LL, Melamed J, Hatcher D, Li Y, Wei J, Wang J, Lee P (2014) Decreased expression of stromal estrogen receptor alpha and beta in prostate cancer. Am J Transl Res 6(2):140–146. PubMed PMID: 24489993; PMCID: PMC3902224
55. Leav I, Lau KM, Adams JY, McNeal JE, Taplin ME, Wang J, Singh H, Ho SM (2001) Comparative studies of the estrogen receptors beta and alpha and the androgen receptor in normal human prostate glands, dysplasia, and in primary and metastatic carci-

noma. Am J Pathol 159(1):79–92. PubMed PMID: 11438457; PMCID: PMC1850428
56. Subramaniam KS, Tham ST, Mohamed Z, Woo YL, Mat Adenan NA, Chung I (2013) Cancer-associated fibroblasts promote proliferation of endometrial cancer cells. PLoS One 8(7):e68923. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0068923. PubMed PMID: 23922669; PMCID: PMC3724864
57. Svoronos N, Perales-Puchalt A, Allegrezza MJ, Rutkowski MR, Payne KK, Tesone AJ, Nguyen JM, Curiel TJ, Cadungog MG, Singhal S, Eruslanov EB, Zhang P, Tchou J, Zhang R, Conejo-Garcia JR (2017) Tumor cell-independent Estrogen signaling drives disease progression through mobilization of myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Discov 7(1):72–85. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-16-0502. PubMed PMID: 27694385; PMCID: 5222699
58. Ciucci A, Zannoni GF, Buttarelli M, Lisi L, Travaglia D, Martinelli E, Scambia G, Gallo D (2016) Multiple direct and indirect mechanisms drive estrogen-induced tumor growth in high grade serous ovarian cancers. Oncotarget 7(7):8155–8171. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.6943. PubMed PMID: 26797759; PMCID: PMC4884983
59. Mor G, Yue W, Santen RJ, Gutierrez L, Eliza M, Berstein LM, Harada N, Wang J, Lysiak J, Diano S, Naftolin F (1998) Macrophages, estrogen and the microenvironment of breast cancer. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 67(5–6):403–411. PubMed PMID: 10030689
60. Stabile LP, Rothstein ME, Cunningham DE, Land SR, Dacic S, Keohavong P, Siegfried JM (2012) Prevention of tobacco carcinogen-induced lung cancer in female mice using antiestrogens. Carcinogenesis 33(11):2181–2189
61. Curran EM, Berghaus LJ, Vernetti NJ, Saporita AJ, Lubahn DB, Estes DM (2001) Natural killer cells express estrogen receptor-α and estrogen receptor-β and can respond to estrogen via a non-estrogen receptor-α-mediated pathway. Cell Immunol 214(1):12–20
62. Michalek RD, Gerriets VA, Nichols AG, Inoue M, Kazmin D, Chang C-Y, Dwyer MA, Nelson ER, Pollizzi KN, Ilkayeva O (2011) Estrogen-related receptor-α is a metabolic regulator of effector T-cell activation and differentiation. Proc Natl Acad Sci 108(45):18348–18353
63. Adurthi S, Kumar MM, Vinodkumar H, Mukherjee G, Krishnamurthy H, Acharya KK, Bafna U, Uma DK, Abhishekh B, Krishna S (2017) Oestrogen receptor-α binds the FOXP3 promoter and modulates regulatory T-cell function in human cervical cancer. Sci Rep 7(1):17289
64. Rothenberger NJ, Somasundaram A, Stabile LP (2018) The role of the estrogen pathway in the tumor microenvironment. Int J Mol Sci 19(2):611
65. Fridman WH, Pages F, Sautes-Fridman C, Galon J (2012) The immune contexture in human tumours: impact on clinical outcome. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):298–306. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc3245. PubMed PMID: 22419253
66. Haabeth OA, Lorvik KB, Hammarstrom C, Donaldson IM, Haraldsen G, Bogen B, Corthay A (2011) Inflammation driven by tumour-specific Th1 cells protects against B-cell cancer. Nat Commun 2:240. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms1239. PubMed PMID: 21407206; PMCID: PMC3072106
67. DeNardo DG, Barreto JB, Andreu P, Vasquez L, Tawfik D, Kolhatkar N, Coussens LM (2009) CD4(+) T cells regulate pulmonary metastasis of mammary carcinomas by enhancing protumor properties of macrophages. Cancer Cell 16(2):91–102. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2009.06.018. PubMed PMID: 19647220; PMCID: PMC2778576
68. Dannenfelser R, Nome M, Tahiri A, Ursini-Siegel J, Vollan HKM, Haakensen VD, Helland A, Naume B, Caldas C, Borresen-Dale AL, Kristensen VN, Troyanskaya OG (2017) Data-driven analysis of immune infiltrate in a large cohort of breast cancer and its association with disease progression, ER activity, and genomic complexity. Oncotarget 8(34):57121–57133. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.19078. PubMed PMID: 28915659; PMCID: PMC5593630
69. Ali HR, Provenzano E, Dawson SJ, Blows FM, Liu B, Shah M, Earl HM, Poole CJ, Hiller L, Dunn JA, Bowden SJ, Twelves C, Bartlett JM, Mahmoud SM, Rakha E, Ellis IO, Liu S, Gao D, Nielsen TO, Pharoah PD, Caldas C (2014) Association between CD8+ T-cell infiltration and breast cancer survival in 12,439 patients. Ann Oncol 25(8):1536–1543. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdu191. PubMed PMID: 24915873
70. Cullen SP, Martin SJ (2008) Mechanisms of granule-dependent killing. Cell Death Differ 15(2):251–262. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.cdd.4402244. PubMed PMID: 17975553
71. Lieberman J (2003) The ABCs of granule-mediated cytotoxicity: new weapons in the arsenal. Nat Rev Immunol 3(5):361–370. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri1083. PubMed PMID: 12766758
72. Jiang X, Orr BA, Kranz DM, Shapiro DJ (2006) Estrogen induction of the granzyme B inhibitor, proteinase inhibitor 9, protects cells against apoptosis mediated by cytotoxic T lymphocytes and natural killer cells. Endocrinology 147(3):1419–1426. https://doi.org/10.1210/en.2005-0996. PubMed PMID: 16306080
73. Jiang X, Ellison SJ, Alarid ET, Shapiro DJ (2007) Interplay between the levels of estrogen and estrogen receptor controls the level of the granzyme inhibitor, proteinase inhibitor 9 and susceptibility to immune surveillance by natural killer cells. Oncogene 26(28):4106–4114. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.onc.1210197. PubMed PMID: 17237823
74. Tanaka A, Sakaguchi S (2017) Regulatory T cells in cancer immunotherapy. Cell Res 27(1):109–

118. https://doi.org/10.1038/cr.2016.151. PubMed PMID: 27995907; PMCID: PMC5223231
75. Tai P, Wang J, Jin H, Song X, Yan J, Kang Y, Zhao L, An X, Du X, Chen X, Wang S, Xia G, Wang B (2008) Induction of regulatory T cells by physiological level estrogen. J Cell Physiol 214(2):456–464. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcp.21221. PubMed PMID: 17654501
76. Polanczyk MJ, Carson BD, Subramanian S, Afentoulis M, Vandenbark AA, Ziegler SF, Offner H (2004) Cutting edge: estrogen drives expansion of the CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cell compartment. J Immunol 173(4):2227–2230. PubMed PMID: 15294932
77. Fontenot JD, Gavin MA, Rudensky AY (2003) Foxp3 programs the development and function of CD4+CD25+ regulatory T cells. Nat Immunol 4(4):330–336. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni904. PubMed PMID: 12612578
78. Chaudhary B, Elkord E (2016) Regulatory T cells in the tumor microenvironment and cancer progression: role and therapeutic targeting. Vaccines (Basel) 4(3). https://doi.org/10.3390/vaccines4030028. PubMed PMID: 27509527; PMCID: PMC5041022
79. Kadota K, Eguchi T, Villena-Vargas J, Woo KM, Sima CS, Jones DR, Travis WD, Adusumilli PS (2015) Nuclear estrogen receptor-alpha expression is an independent predictor of recurrence in male patients with pT1aN0 lung adenocarcinomas, and correlates with regulatory T-cell infiltration. Oncotarget 6(29):27505–27518. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.4752. PubMed PMID: 26318038; PMCID: PMC4695005
80. Shang B, Liu Y, Jiang SJ, Liu Y (2015) Prognostic value of tumor-infiltrating FoxP3+ regulatory T cells in cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Sci Rep 5:15179. https://doi.org/10.1038/srep15179. PubMed PMID: 26462617; PMCID: PMC4604472
81. Generali D, Bates G, Berruti A, Brizzi MP, Campo L, Bonardi S, Bersiga A, Allevi G, Milani M, Aguggini S, Dogliotti L, Banham AH, Harris AL, Bottini A, Fox SB (2009) Immunomodulation of FOXP3+ regulatory T cells by the aromatase inhibitor letrozole in breast cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 15(3):1046–1051. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1507. PubMed PMID: 19188178
82. Polanczyk MJ, Hopke C, Vandenbark AA, Offner H (2007) Treg suppressive activity involves estrogen-dependent expression of programmed death-1 (PD-1). Int Immunol 19(3):337–343. https://doi.org/10.1093/intimm/dxl151. PubMed PMID: 17267414
83. Yang L, Huang F, Mei J, Wang X, Zhang Q, Wang H, Xi M, You Z (2017) Posttranscriptional control of PD-L1 expression by 17beta-Estradiol via PI3K/Akt signaling pathway in ERalpha-positive cancer cell lines. Int J Gynecol Cancer 27(2):196–205. https://doi.org/10.1097/IGC.0000000000000875. PubMed PMID: 27870715; PMCID: PMC5258765
84. Jiang Y, Li Y, Zhu B (2015) T-cell exhaustion in the tumor microenvironment. Cell Death Dis 6:e1792. https://doi.org/10.1038/cddis.2015.162. PubMed PMID: 26086965; PMCID: PMC4669840
85. Matsumoto M, Yamaguchi Y, Seino Y, Hatakeyama A, Takei H, Niikura H, Ito K, Suzuki T, Sasano H, Yaegashi N, Hayashi S (2008) Estrogen signaling ability in human endometrial cancer through the cancer-stromal interaction. Endocr Relat Cancer 15(2):451–463. https://doi.org/10.1677/ERC-07-0227. PubMed PMID: 18508998
86. Subbaramaiah K, Morris PG, Zhou XK, Morrow M, Du B, Giri D, Kopelovich L, Hudis CA, Dannenberg AJ (2012) Increased levels of COX-2 and prostaglandin E2 contribute to elevated aromatase expression in inflamed breast tissue of obese women. Cancer Discov 2(4):356–365. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-11-0241. PubMed PMID: 22576212; PMCID: PMC3398487
87. Subbaramaiah K, Howe LR, Bhardwaj P, Du B, Gravaghi C, Yantiss RK, Zhou XK, Blaho VA, Hla T, Yang P, Kopelovich L, Hudis CA, Dannenberg AJ (2011) Obesity is associated with inflammation and elevated aromatase expression in the mouse mammary gland. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 4(3):329–346. https://doi.org/10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-10-0381. PubMed PMID: 21372033; PMCID: PMC3071249
88. Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang Z-M, Messi ML, Olson JD, Mintz A, Delbono O (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Phys Cell Phys 307(1):C25–C38
89. Sortino MA, Platania P, Chisari M, Merlo S, Copani A, Catania MV (2005) A major role for astrocytes in the neuroprotective effect of estrogen. Drug Dev Res 66(2):126–135
90. Bukovsky A, Cekanova M, Caudle MR, Wimalasena J, Foster JS, Henley DC, Elder RF (2003) Expression and localization of estrogen receptor-alpha protein in normal and abnormal term placentae and stimulation of trophoblast differentiation by estradiol. Reprod Biol Endocrinol 1(1):13
91. Xing F, Saidou J, Watabe K (2010) Cancer associated fibroblasts (CAFs) in tumor microenvironment. Front Biosci (Landmark Ed) 15:166–79. PubMed PMID: 20036813; PMCID: PMC2905156
92. Brechbuhl HM, Finlay-Schultz J, Yamamoto TM, Gillen AE, Cittelly DM, Tan A-C, Sams SB, Pillai MM, Elias AD, Robinson WA (2017) Fibroblast subtypes regulate responsiveness of luminal breast cancer to estrogen. Clin Cancer Res 23(7):1710–1721
93. Annicotte JS, Chavey C, Servant N, Teyssier J, Bardin A, Licznar A, Badia E, Pujol P, Vignon F, Maudelonde T, Lazennec G, Cavailles V, Fajas L (2005) The nuclear receptor liver receptor homolog-1 is an estrogen receptor target gene. Oncogene 24(55):8167–8175. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.onc.1208950. PubMed PMID: 16091743; PMCID: PMC2259230
94. Clyne CD, Kovacic A, Speed CJ, Zhou J, Pezzi V, Simpson ER (2004) Regulation of aromatase expres-

sion by the nuclear receptor LRH-1 in adipose tissue. Mol Cell Endocrinol 215(1–2):39–44. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2003.11.001. PubMed PMID: 15026173
95. Chand AL, Herridge KA, Howard TL, Simpson ER, Clyne CD (2011) Tissue-specific regulation of aromatase promoter II by the orphan nuclear receptor LRH-1 in breast adipose stromal fibroblasts. Steroids 76(8):741–744. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.steroids.2011.02.024. PubMed PMID: 21392518
96. Miki Y, Clyne CD, Suzuki T, Moriya T, Shibuya R, Nakamura Y, Ishida T, Yabuki N, Kitada K, Hayashi S, Sasano H (2006) Immunolocalization of liver receptor homologue-1 (LRH-1) in human breast carcinoma: possible regulator of insitu steroidogenesis. Cancer Lett 244(1):24–33. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.canlet.2005.11.038. PubMed PMID: 16427184
97. Guo RX, Wei LH, Tu Z, Sun PM, Wang JL, Zhao D, Li XP, Tang JM (2006) 17 beta-estradiol activates PI3K/Akt signaling pathway by estrogen receptor (ER)-dependent and ER-independent mechanisms in endometrial cancer cells. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 99(1):9–18. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jsbmb.2005.11.013. PubMed PMID: 16567092
98. Stabile LP, Lyker JS, Gubish CT, Zhang W, Grandis JR, Siegfried JM (2005) Combined targeting of the estrogen receptor and the epidermal growth factor receptor in non-small cell lung cancer shows enhanced antiproliferative effects. Cancer Res 65(4):1459–1470. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-04-1872. PubMed PMID: 15735034
99. Keshamouni VG, Mattingly RR, Reddy KB (2002) Mechanism of 17-beta-estradiol-induced Erk1/2 activation in breast cancer cells. A role for HER2 AND PKC-delta. J Biol Chem 277(25):22558–22565. https://doi.org/10.1074/jbc.M202351200. PubMed PMID: 11960991
100. Yeh CR, Slavin S, Da J, Hsu I, Luo J, Xiao GQ, Ding J, Chou FJ, Yeh S (2016) Estrogen receptor alpha in cancer associated fibroblasts suppresses prostate cancer invasion via reducing CCL5, IL6 and macrophage infiltration in the tumor microenvironment. Mol Cancer 15:7. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12943-015-0488-9. PubMed PMID: 26790618; PMCID: PMC4721150
101. Slavin S, Yeh CR, Da J, Yu S, Miyamoto H, Messing EM, Guancial E, Yeh S (2014) Estrogen receptor alpha in cancer-associated fibroblasts suppresses prostate cancer invasion via modulation of thrombospondin 2 and matrix metalloproteinase 3. Carcinogenesis 35(6):1301–1309. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgt488. PubMed PMID: 24374826; PMCID: PMC4043239
102. Aldinucci D, Colombatti A (2014) The inflammatory chemokine CCL5 and cancer progression. Mediat Inflamm 2014:292376. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/292376. PubMed PMID: 24523569; PMCID: PMC3910068
103. Kumari N, Dwarakanath BS, Das A, Bhatt AN (2016) Role of interleukin-6 in cancer progression and therapeutic resistance. Tumour Biol 37(9):11553–11572. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13277-016-5098-7. PubMed PMID: 27260630
104. Qian BZ, Pollard JW (2010) Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. Cell 141(1):39–51. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2010.03.014. PubMed PMID: 20371344; PMCID: PMC4994190
105. Liu Y, Cao X (2015) The origin and function of tumor-associated macrophages. Cell Mol Immunol 12(1):1–4. https://doi.org/10.1038/cmi.2014.83. PubMed PMID: 25220733; PMCID: PMC4654376
106. Mantovani A, Sozzani S, Locati M, Allavena P, Sica A (2002) Macrophage polarization: tumor-associated macrophages as a paradigm for polarized M2 mononuclear phagocytes. Trends Immunol 23(11):549–55. PubMed PMID: 12401408
107. Lee S, Margolin K (2011) Cytokines in cancer immunotherapy. Cancers (Basel) 3(4):3856–3893. https://doi.org/10.3390/cancers3043856. PubMed PMID: 24213115; PMCID: PMC3763400
108. Bingle L, Brown NJ, Lewis CE (2002) The role of tumour-associated macrophages in tumour progression: implications for new anticancer therapies. J Pathol 196(3):254–265. https://doi.org/10.1002/path.1027. PubMed PMID: 11857487
109. Wan T, Liu JH, Zheng LM, Cai MY, Ding T (2009) Prognostic significance of tumor-associated macrophage infiltration in advanced epithelial ovarian carcinoma. Ai Zheng 28(3):323–7. PubMed PMID: 19619451
110. Gwak JM, Jang MH, Kim DI, Seo AN, Park SY (2015) Prognostic value of tumor-associated macrophages according to histologic locations and hormone receptor status in breast cancer. PLoS One 10(4):e0125728. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0125728. PubMed PMID: 25884955; PMCID: PMC4401667
111. Campbell MJ, Tonlaar NY, Garwood ER, Huo D, Moore DH, Khramtsov AI, Au A, Baehner F, Chen Y, Malaka DO, Lin A, Adeyanju OO, Li S, Gong C, McGrath M, Olopade OI, Esserman LJ (2011) Proliferating macrophages associated with high grade, hormone receptor negative breast cancer and poor clinical outcome. Breast Cancer Res Treat 128(3):703–711. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10549-010-1154-y. PubMed PMID: 20842526; PMCID: PMC4657137
112. Svensson S, Abrahamsson A, Rodriguez GV, Olsson AK, Jensen L, Cao Y, Dabrosin C (2015) CCL2 and CCL5 Are novel therapeutic targets for Estrogen-dependent breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 21(16):3794–3805. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-0204. PubMed PMID: 25901081
113. Okizaki S, Ito Y, Hosono K, Oba K, Ohkubo H, Kojo K, Nishizawa N, Shibuya M, Shichiri M, Majima M (2016) Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor type 1 signaling prevents delayed wound healing in diabetes by attenuating the production of IL-1beta by recruited macrophages. Am J Pathol 186(6):1481–1498. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajpath.2016.02.014. PubMed PMID: 27085138

114. Stabile LP, Farooqui M, Kanterewicz B, Abberbock S, Kurland BF, Diergaarde B, Siegfried JM (2017) Preclinical evidence for combined use of aromatase inhibitors and NSAIDs as preventive agents of tobacco-induced lung cancer. J Thorac Oncol. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtho.2017.11.126. PubMed PMID: 29233790
115. Ning C, Xie B, Zhang L, Li C, Shan W, Yang B, Luo X, Gu C, He Q, Jin H, Chen X, Zhang Z, Feng Y (2016) Infiltrating macrophages induce ERalpha expression through an IL17A-mediated epigenetic mechanism to sensitize endometrial cancer cells to Estrogen. Cancer Res 76(6):1354–1366. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-15-1260. PubMed PMID: 26744532
116. Sun L, Chen B, Jiang R, Li J, Wang B (2017) Resveratrol inhibits lung cancer growth by suppressing M2-like polarization of tumor associated macrophages. Cell Immunol 311:86–93. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cellimm.2016.11.002. PubMed PMID: 27825563
117. Umansky V, Blattner C, Gebhardt C, Utikal J (2016) The Role of Myeloid-Derived Suppressor Cells (MDSC) in cancer progression. Vaccines (Basel) 4(4). https://doi.org/10.3390/vaccines4040036. PubMed PMID: 27827871; PMCID: PMC5192356
118. Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Bronte V (2012) Coordinated regulation of myeloid cells by tumours. Nat Rev Immunol 12(4):253–268. https://doi.org/10.1038/nri3175. PubMed PMID: 22437938; PMCID: PMC3587148
119. Márquez-Garbán DC, Deng G, Comin-Anduix B, Garcia AJ, Xing Y, Chen H-W, Cheung-Lau G, Hamilton N, Jung ME, Pietras RJ (2019) Antiestrogens in combination with immune checkpoint inhibitors in breast cancer immunotherapy. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 193:105415
120. Kozasa K, Mabuchi S, Matsumoto Y, Kuroda H, Yokoi E, Komura N, Kawano M, Takahashi R, Sasano T, Shimura K (2019) Estrogen stimulates female cancer progression by inducing myeloid-derived suppressive cells: investigations on pregnant and non-pregnant experimental models. Oncotarget 10(20):1887
121. Yoshimura A (2006) Signal transduction of inflammatory cytokines and tumor development. Cancer Sci 97(6):439–447. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1349-7006.2006.00197.x. PubMed PMID: 16734720
122. Sasser AK, Sullivan NJ, Studebaker AW, Hendey LF, Axel AE, Hall BM (2007) Interleukin-6 is a potent growth factor for ER-alpha-positive human breast cancer. FASEB J 21(13):3763–3770. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.07-8832com. PubMed PMID: 17586727
123. Studebaker AW, Storci G, Werbeck JL, Sansone P, Sasser AK, Tavolari S, Huang T, Chan MW, Marini FC, Rosol TJ, Bonafe M, Hall BM (2008) Fibroblasts isolated from common sites of breast cancer metastasis enhance cancer cell growth rates and invasiveness in an interleukin-6-dependent manner. Cancer Res 68(21):9087–9095. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-0400. PubMed PMID: 18974155
124. Yin Y, Chen X, Shu Y (2009) Gene expression of the invasive phenotype of TNF-alpha-treated MCF-7 cells. Biomed Pharmacother 63(6):421–428. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.biopha.2009.04.032. PubMed PMID: 19564093
125. Zhao Y, Nichols JE, Valdez R, Mendelson CR, Simpson ER (1996) Tumor necrosis factor-alpha stimulates aromatase gene expression in human adipose stromal cells through use of an activating protein-1 binding site upstream of promoter 1.4. Mol Endocrinol 10(11):1350–1357. https://doi.org/10.1210/mend.10.11.8923461. PubMed PMID: 8923461
126. Irahara N, Miyoshi Y, Taguchi T, Tamaki Y, Noguchi S (2006) Quantitative analysis of aromatase mRNA expression derived from various promoters (I.4, I.3, PII and I.7) and its association with expression of TNF-alpha, IL-6 and COX-2 mRNAs in human breast cancer. Int J Cancer 118(8):1915–1921. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.21562. PubMed PMID: 16287071
127. Ricciotti E, FitzGerald GA (2011) Prostaglandins and inflammation. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 31(5):986–1000. https://doi.org/10.1161/ATVBAHA.110.207449. PubMed PMID: 21508345; PMCID: PMC3081099
128. Zhao Y, Agarwal VR, Mendelson CR, Simpson ER (1996) Estrogen biosynthesis proximal to a breast tumor is stimulated by PGE2 via cyclic AMP, leading to activation of promoter II of the CYP19 (aromatase) gene. Endocrinology 137(12):5739–5742. https://doi.org/10.1210/endo.137.12.8940410. PubMed PMID: 8940410
129. Terry MB, Gammon MD, Zhang FF, Tawfik H, Teitelbaum SL, Britton JA, Subbaramaiah K, Dannenberg AJ, Neugut AI (2004) Association of frequency and duration of aspirin use and hormone receptor status with breast cancer risk. JAMA 291(20):2433–2440. https://doi.org/10.1001/jama.291.20.2433. PubMed PMID: 15161893
130. Zhou XL, Fan W, Yang G, Yu MX (2014) The clinical significance of PR, ER, NF- kappa B, and TNF-alpha in breast cancer. Dis Markers 2014:494581. https://doi.org/10.1155/2014/494581. PubMed PMID: 24864130; PMCID: PMC4017837
131. Hoesel B, Schmid JA (2013) The complexity of NF-kappaB signaling in inflammation and cancer. Mol Cancer 12:86. https://doi.org/10.1186/1476-4598-12-86. PubMed PMID: 23915189; PMCID: PMC3750319
132. Johnston SR, Lu B, Scott GK, Kushner PJ, Smith IE, Dowsett M, Benz CC (1999) Increased activator protein-1 DNA binding and c-Jun NH2-terminal kinase activity in human breast tumors with acquired tamoxifen resistance. Clin Cancer Res 5(2):251–256. PubMed PMID: 10037172
133. Zhou Y, Yau C, Gray JW, Chew K, Dairkee SH, Moore DH, Eppenberger U, Eppenberger-Castori S, Benz CC (2007) Enhanced NF kappa B and AP-1 transcriptional activity associated with antiestrogen

resistant breast cancer. BMC Cancer 7:59. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2407-7-59. PubMed PMID: 17407600; PMCID: PMC1852565
134. Guffey CR, Fan D, Singh UP, Murphy EA (2013) Linking obesity to colorectal cancer: recent insights into plausible biological mechanisms. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 16(5):595–600. Epub 2013/06/08. https://doi.org/10.1097/MCO.0b013e328362d10b. PubMed PMID: 23743611
135. Lin JH, Morikawa T, Chan AT, Kuchiba A, Shima K, Nosho K, Kirkner G, Zhang SM, Manson JE, Giovannucci E, Fuchs CS, Ogino S (2012) Postmenopausal hormone therapy is associated with a reduced risk of colorectal cancer lacking CDKN1A expression. Cancer Res 72(12):3020–8. Epub 2012/04/19. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-2619. PubMed PMID: 22511578; PMCID: PMC3377852
136. Wang Z, Aguilar EG, Luna JI, Dunai C, Khuat LT, Le CT, Mirsoian A, Minnar CM, Stoffel KM, Sturgill IR (2019) Paradoxical effects of obesity on T cell function during tumor progression and PD-1 checkpoint blockade. Nat Med 25(1):141
137. Crespi E, Bottai G, Santarpia L (2016) Role of inflammation in obesity-related breast cancer. Curr Opin Pharmacol 31:114–22. Epub 2016/11/28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.coph.2016.11.004. PubMed PMID: 27889687
138. Barzi A, Lenz AM, Labonte MJ, Lenz H-J (2013) Molecular pathways: estrogen pathway in colorectal cancer. Clin Cancer Res 19(21):5842–5848
139. Deguchi K, Kamada M, Irahara M, Maegawa M, Yamamoto S, Ohmoto Y, Murata K, Yasui T, Yamano S, Aono T (2001) Postmenopausal changes in production of type 1 and type 2 cytokines and the effects of hormone replacement therapy. Menopause 8(4):266–273. Epub 2001/07/13. PubMed PMID: 11449084
140. Kamada M, Irahara M, Maegawa M, Ohmoto Y, Murata K, Yasui T, Yamano S, Aono T (2001) Transient increase in the levels of T-helper 1 cytokines in postmenopausal women and the effects of hormone replacement therapy. Gynecol Obstet Investig 52(2):82–8. Epub 2001/10/05. https://doi.org/10.1159/000052948. PubMed PMID: 11586033
141. Berg G, Ekerfelt C, Hammar M, Lindgren R, Matthiesen L, Ernerudh J (2002) Cytokine changes in postmenopausal women treated with estrogens: a placebo-controlled study. Am J Reprod Immunol 48(2):63–69. Epub 2002/10/23. PubMed PMID: 12389594
142. Pardoll DM (2012) The blockade of immune checkpoints in cancer immunotherapy. Nat Rev Cancer 12(4):252–264. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc3239. PubMed PMID: 22437870; PMCID: PMC4856023
143. Wolchok JD, Chiarion-Sileni V, Gonzalez R, Rutkowski P, Grob JJ, Cowey CL, Lao CD, Wagstaff J, Schadendorf D, Ferrucci PF, Smylie M, Dummer R, Hill A, Hogg D, Haanen J, Carlino MS, Bechter O, Maio M, Marquez-Rodas I, Guidoboni M, McArthur G, Lebbe C, Ascierto PA, Long GV, Cebon J, Sosman J, Postow MA, Callahan MK, Walker D, Rollin L, Bhore R, Hodi FS, Larkin J (2017) Overall survival with combined Nivolumab and Ipilimumab in advanced melanoma. N Engl J Med 377(14):1345–1356. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1709684. PubMed PMID: 28889792; PMCID: PMC5706778
144. Reck M, Rodriguez-Abreu D, Robinson AG, Hui R, Csoszi T, Fulop A, Gottfried M, Peled N, Tafreshi A, Cuffe S, O'Brien M, Rao S, Hotta K, Leiby MA, Lubiniecki GM, Shentu Y, Rangwala R, Brahmer JR (2016) Investigators K-. Pembrolizumab versus chemotherapy for PD-L1-positive non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 375(19):1823–1833. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1606774. PubMed PMID: 27718847
145. Brahmer J, Reckamp KL, Baas P, Crino L, Eberhardt WE, Poddubskaya E, Antonia S, Pluzanski A, Vokes EE, Holgado E, Waterhouse D, Ready N, Gainor J, Aren Frontera O, Havel L, Steins M, Garassino MC, Aerts JG, Domine M, Paz-Ares L, Reck M, Baudelet C, Harbison CT, Lestini B, Spigel DR (2015) Nivolumab versus docetaxel in advanced squamous-cell non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 373(2):123–135. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1504627. PubMed PMID: 26028407; PMCID: 4681400
146. Wang X, Bao Z, Zhang X, Li F, Lai T, Cao C, Chen Z, Li W, Shen H, Ying S (2017) Effectiveness and safety of PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors in the treatment of solid tumors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Oncotarget 8(35):59901–59914. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.18316. PubMed PMID: 28938692; PMCID: PMC5601788
147. Patel SP, Kurzrock R (2015) PD-L1 expression as a predictive biomarker in cancer immunotherapy. Mol Cancer Ther 14(4):847–856. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-14-0983. PubMed PMID: 25695955
148. Green AR, Aleskandarany MA, Ali R, Hodgson EG, Atabani S, De Souza K, Rakha EA, Ellis IO, Madhusudan S (2017) Clinical impact of tumor DNA repair expression and T-cell infiltration in breast cancers. Cancer Immunol Res 5(4):292–299. https://doi.org/10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-16-0195. PubMed PMID: 28254786
149. McGranahan N, Rosenthal R, Hiley CT, Rowan AJ, Watkins TBK, Wilson GA, Birkbak NJ, Veeriah S, Van Loo P, Herrero J, Swanton C, Consortium TR (2017) Allele-specific HLA loss and immune escape in lung cancer evolution. Cell 171(6):1259–71 e11. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.10.001. PubMed PMID: 29107330; PMCID: PMC5720478
150. Marty R, Kaabinejadian S, Rossell D, Slifker MJ, van de Haar J, Engin HB, de Prisco N, Ideker T, Hildebrand WH, Font-Burgada J, Carter H (2017) MHC-I genotype restricts the oncogenic mutational landscape. Cell 171(6):1272–83 e15. https://doi.

org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.09.050. PubMed PMID: 29107334; PMCID: PMC5711564
151. Hamilton DH, Griner LM, Keller JM, Hu X, Southall N, Marugan J, David JM, Ferrer M, Palena C (2016) Targeting Estrogen receptor signaling with fulvestrant enhances immune and chemotherapy-mediated cytotoxicity of human lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 22(24):6204–6216. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-15-3059. PubMed PMID: 27267852; PMCID: 5143224
152. Welte T, Zhang XH, Rosen JM (2017) Repurposing antiestrogens for tumor immunotherapy. Cancer Discover 7(1):17–19. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-16-1308. PubMed PMID: 28062672; PMCID: PMC5224927
153. Smolle MA, Calin HN, Pichler M, Calin GA (2017) Noncoding RNAs and immune checkpoints-clinical implications as cancer therapeutics. FEBS J 284(13):1952–66. Epub 2017/01/31. https://doi.org/10.1111/febs.14030. PubMed PMID: 28132417
154. Dai R, Ahmed SA (2014) Sexual dimorphism of miRNA expression: a new perspective in understanding the sex bias of autoimmune diseases. Ther Clin Risk Manag 10:151–63. Epub 2014/03/14. https://doi.org/10.2147/TCRM.S33517. PubMed PMID: 24623979; PMCID: PMC3949753
155. Polanczyk MJ, Hopke C, Vandenbark AA, Offner H (2006) Estrogen-mediated immunomodulation involves reduced activation of effector T cells, potentiation of Treg cells, and enhanced expression of the PD-1 costimulatory pathway. J Neurosci Res 84(2):370–8. Epub 2006/05/06. https://doi.org/10.1002/jnr.20881. PubMed PMID: 16676326
156. Conforti F, Pala L, Bagnardi V, De Pas T, Martinetti M, Viale G, Gelber RD, Goldhirsch A (2018) Cancer immunotherapy efficacy and patients' sex: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Oncol 19(6):737–46. Epub 2018/05/21. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1470-2045(18)30261-4. PubMed PMID: 29778737
157. Herbst RS, Baas P, Kim DW, Felip E, Perez-Gracia JL, Han JY, Molina J, Kim JH, Arvis CD, Ahn MJ, Majem M, Fidler MJ, de Castro G Jr, Garrido M, Lubiniecki GM, Shentu Y, Im E, Dolled-Filhart M, Garon EB (2016) Pembrolizumab versus docetaxel for previously treated, PD-L1-positive, advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (KEYNOTE-010): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 387(10027):1540–50. Epub 2015/12/30. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(15)01281-7. PubMed PMID: 26712084
158. Vokes EE, Ready N, Felip E, Horn L, Burgio MA, Antonia SJ, Aren Frontera O, Gettinger S, Holgado E, Spigel D, Waterhouse D, Domine M, Garassino M, Chow LQM, Blumenschein G Jr, Barlesi F, Coudert B, Gainor J, Arrieta O, Brahmer J, Butts C, Steins M, Geese WJ, Li A, Healey D, Crino L (2018) Nivolumab versus docetaxel in previously treated advanced non-small-cell lung cancer (CheckMate 017 and CheckMate 057): 3-year update and outcomes in patients with liver metastases. Ann Oncol 29(4):959–65. Epub 2018/02/07. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdy041. PubMed PMID: 29408986
159. Carbone DP, Reck M, Paz-Ares L, Creelan B, Horn L, Steins M, Felip E, van den Heuvel MM, Ciuleanu TE, Badin F, Ready N, Hiltermann TJN, Nair S, Juergens R, Peters S, Minenza E, Wrangle JM, Rodriguez-Abreu D, Borghaei H, Blumenschein GR Jr, Villaruz LC, Havel L, Krejci J, Corral Jaime J, Chang H, Geese WJ, Bhagavatheeswaran P, Chen AC, Socinski MA (2017) CheckMate I. First-line Nivolumab in stage IV or recurrent non-small-cell lung cancer. N Engl J Med 376(25):2415–26. Epub 2017/06/22. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1613493. PubMed PMID: 28636851
160. Wallis CJD, Butaney M, Satkunasivam R, Freedland SJ, Patel SP, Hamid O, Pal SK, Klaassen Z (2019) Association of patient sex with efficacy of immune checkpoint inhibitors and overall survival in advanced cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Oncol . Epub 2019/01/04. PubMed PMID: 30605213. https://doi.org/10.1001/jamaoncol.2018.5904
161. Pan ZK, Ye F, Wu X, An HX, Wu JX (2015) Clinicopathological and prognostic significance of programmed cell death ligand1 (PD-L1) expression in patients with non-small cell lung cancer: a meta-analysis. J Thorac Dis 7(3):462–70. Epub 2015/04/30. https://doi.org/10.3978/j.issn.2072-1439.2015.02.13. PubMed PMID: 25922726; PMCID: PMC4387432
162. Wu S, Shi X, Sun J, Liu Y, Luo Y, Liang Z, Wang J, Zeng X (2017) The significance of programmed cell death ligand 1 expression in resected lung adenocarcinoma. Oncotarget 8(10):16421–9. Epub 2017/02/02. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.14851. PubMed PMID: 28145884; PMCID: PMC5369973
163. Grassadonia A, Sperduti I, Vici P, Iezzi L, Brocco D, Gamucci T, Pizzuti L, Maugeri-Saccà M, Marchetti P, Cognetti G (2018) Effect of gender on the outcome of patients receiving immune checkpoint inhibitors for advanced cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of phase III randomized clinical trials. J Clin Med 7(12):542
164. Goodman AM, Kato S, Bazhenova L, Patel SP, Frampton GM, Miller V, Stephens PJ, Daniels GA, Kurzrock R (2017) Tumor mutational burden as an independent predictor of response to immunotherapy in diverse cancers. Mol Cancer Ther 16(11):2598–608. Epub 2017/08/25. https://doi.org/10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-17-0386. PubMed PMID: 28835386; PMCID: PMC5670009
165. Wang S, Zhang J, He Z, Wu K, Liu XS (2019) The predictive power of tumor mutational burden in lung cancer immunotherapy response is influenced by patients' sex. Int J Cancer 145:2840

166. Unger JM, Moseley A, Ramsey SD, Osarogiagbon RU, Symington B, Hershman DL (2019) Socioeconomic deprivation and cancer outcomes in patients treated in clinical trials. Proc Am Soc Clin Oncol 37:162
167. Duma N, Abdel-Ghani A, Yadav S, Hoversten KP, Reed CT, Sitek AN, Enninga EAL, Paludo J, Aguilera JV, Leventakos K (2019) Sex differences in tolerability to anti-programmed cell death protein 1 therapy in patients with metastatic melanoma and non-small cell lung cancer: are we all equal? Oncologist. https://doi.org/10.1634/theoncologist.2019-0094
168. Ozdemir BC, Dotto GP (2019) Sex hormones and anticancer immunity. Clin Cancer Res . Epub 2019/03/21. PubMed PMID: 30890551. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-19-0137

3 The Non-Bone-Related Role of RANK/RANKL Signaling in Cancer

Peter A. van Dam, Yannick Verhoeven, and Xuan B. Trinh

Abstract

RANK ligand (RANKL) is a member of the tumor necrosis factor alpha superfamily of cytokines. It is the only known ligand binding to a membrane receptor named receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B (RANK), thereby triggering recruitment of TNF receptor-associated factor (TRAF) adaptor proteins and activation of downstream pathways. RANK/RANKL signaling is controlled by a decoy receptor, osteoprotegerin (OPG), but also has additional more complex levels of regulation. It is crucial for the differentiation of bone-resorbing osteoclasts and is deregulated in disease processes such as osteoporosis and cancer bone metastasis. Cells expressing RANK and RANKL are commonly found in the tumor environment. In many tumor types, the RANK/RANKL pathway is overexpressed, and this is in most cases correlated with poor prognosis. RANK signaling plays an important role in the innate and adaptive immune response, generates regulatory T (Treg) cells, and increases the production of cytokines. It is also involved in chemo resistance in vitro. Recent evidence suggests that RANKL blockade improves the efficacy of anti-CTLA-4 antibodies against solid tumors and experimental metastasis. Therefore, there is increasing interest to use RANKL inhibition as an immunomodulatory strategy in an attempt to make immune-resistant tumor responsive to immune therapy.

Keywords

RANK · RANKL · Osteoprotegerin · Microenvironment · Cancer · Bone health · Immunomodulation · PFD-L1 · CTLA-4 · Immune response · Inflammation · Immune tolerance · Angiogenesis

3.1 Background

In most cancer types, only a minority of patients have an improved survival after immune therapy. Mutational burden, neoantigen load, quality and clonality of neoantigens, expression of antigen presenting molecules and immune checkpoints, interferon gamma responsiveness, and composition of the microenvironment (hot versus cold tumors), all influence the beneficial effects of

P. A. van Dam (✉) · Y. Verhoeven · X. B. Trinh
Multidisciplinary Oncologic Centre Antwerp (MOCA), Antwerp University Hospital, Edegem, Belgium

Center for Oncological Research (CORE), University of Antwerp, Wilrijk, Belgium
e-mail: peter.vandam@uza.be

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_3

immune therapies [1]. Although combinations of immune therapy (e.g., CTLA-4 and PD-L1 blocking) can be synergistic, they do not resolve their diminutive effectiveness in cancer treatment and often induce significant additional toxicity [2–5]. Hence, there is an increasing interest in combining immune therapy with less toxic immune modulating drugs to sensitize immune unresponsive tumors to immune therapies [6]. Recent data suggest that RANK/RANKL inhibition may be an attractive approach to increase the effectiveness of immunotherapy. Signaling between the receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B (RANK) and its ligand (RANKL) is essential for the differentiation of bone-resorbing osteoclasts and is deregulated in pathological processes such as postmenopausal osteoporosis or cancer-induced bone destruction [2]. However, cells expressing RANK and RANKL are also commonly found in the tumor microenvironment. RANK signaling plays an important role in the innate and adaptive immune response as it generates regulatory T (Treg) cells and increases production of cytokines [7, 8]. In this chapter, the effects of RANK/RANKL signaling inhibition on the microenvironment of malignant tumors are reviewed. It is hypothesized that this approach may be used to improve the response to immunotherapy (Fig. 3.1).

3.2 The RANK/RANKL Signaling Pathway

The receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B ligand (RANKL) was originally identified in T cells and dendritic cells (DC) [2]. It is a type II homotrimeric transmembrane protein that has three known isoforms. RANKL1 and RANKL2 are expressed as membrane bound proteins. RANKL3 is a soluble secreted protein that is formed by cleavage of the membranous counterparts or by alternative splicing [9]. The RANKL has a large cytoplasmic domain containing four cystein-rich repeat motifs and two N-glycosylation sites. The full length RANKL is called RANKL1, in RANKL2 a part of the intracellular domain is deleted, while in RANKL3 the N-terminal part misses [7, 10]. The RANKL is encoded by the TNFS11 gene in humans and is also named osteoclast differentiation factor (ODF), osteoprotegerin ligand (OPGL), or TNF-related activation induced cytokine (TRANCE) [9, 11]. It is the only known ligand binding to a membrane receptor named receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B (RANK), which is a type I transmembrane protein belonging to the TNF receptor superfamily (TNFRSF11A) [11, 12]. Binding between RANKL and RANK induces

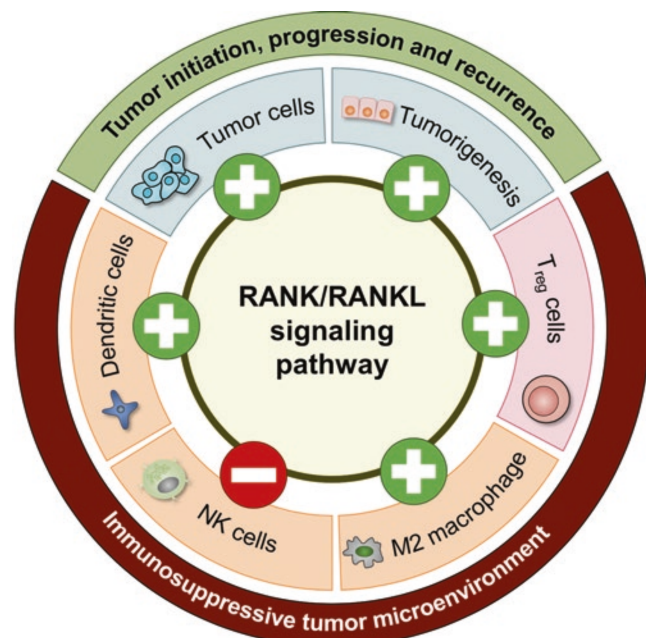


Fig. 3.1 Main effects of RANK/RANKL signaling pathway on tumor growth, immune cells, and microenvironment

trimerization of the receptor. This triggers recruitment of TNF receptor-associated factors (TRAF), adaptor proteins, and activation of downstream signaling pathways (such as NF-kB, AKT/PKB, JNK, and the MAP kinase cascade) [7, 13, 14]. A regulatory system is built into the RANK/RANKL signaling pathway by means of a decoy receptor called osteoprotegerin (OPG, TBFRSF11B) interacting with RANKL [2]. OPG is a soluble glycoprotein that can exist either as a 60-kDa monomer or as a 120-kD dimer but lacks transmembrane or cytoplasmatic domains. The dimerization of OPG increases the affinity of OPG to RANKL dramatically and is essential for RANK/RANKL signal inhibition [15]. Several factors can upregulate OPG expression such as estrogen (which is important for bone metabolism), TRAIL, Wnt, and TNFalpha [7]. On the other hand, it can be downregulated by PTH and TGF-beta [9]. The overall inhibitory effect of OPG on RANKL depends on the balance of its binding to these various ligands [11, 12]. The RANK/RANKL signaling network is further complexed by a second, more recently discovered, decoy receptor for RANKL, LGR4 [14]. LGR4 suppresses canonical RANK signaling by competing with RANK to bind RANKL. The binding of RANKL to LGR4 activates the Gαq and GSK3-β signaling pathway. This suppresses the expression and activity of nuclear factor of activated T cells and calcineurin-dependent 1 (NFATC1) during osteoclastogenesis. Furthermore, functional RANK splicing variants have also been identified, implicating several sophisticated levels of the pathway [16].

3.3 The Functional Role of RANK/RANKL Signaling in Humans

RANK and RANKL can be detected in many different tissues, such as the bone, prostate, thymus, mammary glands, and liver, implicating a functional role in these organs [17]. Studies in mice indicate that RANK/RANKL signaling is required for mammary gland development and lymph node formation [7, 17, 18, 19]. The signaling pathway's crucial role in healthy bone remodeling and bone homeostasis is, however, much better documented [8]. The RANK/RANKL pathway regulates the formation of multinucleated osteoclasts from their monocyte-macrophage precursor cells and subsequently also their activation and survival [8]. By binding RANKL, OPG prevents it to connect to and activate RANK, thereby protecting the skeleton from excessive bone resorption [19, 20]. When deregulated, this pathway may lead to pathological processes such as cancer-induced bone destruction and osteoporosis but also chronic inflammatory processes such as inflammatory bowel diseases and arthritis [14, 20, 21].

Another well-known functional role for RANK/RANKL signaling is that of modulating the immune response. RANK/RANKL and OPG knockout mice showed a disrupted immune phenotype (e.g., impaired T or B cell development) [7, 22]. RANKL can be found in tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), immature dendritic cells, B cells, macrophages, and monocytes [2]. RANK activation induces lymphocyte differentiation, T-cell activation, and dendritic cell (DC) survival, triggering intracellular signaling pathways (e.g., MAPK, NFkB, p38, and c-JNK) and even extracellular kinases (ERK) [17, 23, 24, 25]. RANKL can induce the expression of multiple activating cytokines by DCs, including IL-1, IL-6, IL-12, and IL-15, and can enhance DC survival via the induction of the antiapoptotic protein Bcl-xL (B-cell lymphoma-extra large) [2]. Dendritic cells prime and activate T cells during the immune response by processing and presenting antigens to them. The RANKL signal can alter the function of dendritic cells, which may lead to an increase of Foxp3-positive Tregs [7]. Recent evidence suggests that in response to injury, pericytes are also able to modulate local tissue immune responses via several independent pathways including RANKL signaling. In this area, the OPG/RANK/RANKL axis in association with the functions of pericytes may be involved in vasculogenesis, the process of atherosclerosis by altering lipid metabolism, vascular signaling, and angiogenesis [26, 27].

3.4 RANK/RANKL Signaling in Cancer

Several studies documented RANK signaling to be important in a variety of cancers [23–43]. This was recently nicely reviewed by Renema et al. and de Groot et al. [17]. Tregs are a CD4+ helper T-cell subset that can suppress autoimmune responses in the body and are critical to create an immune suppressive environment in cancers [2]. Together with other partners, such as TAMs, they can create a status of local immunosuppression surrounding the tumor [7]. TAMs express immune checkpoint modulators (such as PD-L1) that directly inhibit activated T cells and produce various chemokines that attract other immunosuppressive cells, such as Tregs and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) [11]. In many situations, the RANK network is an important driver to create an immunosuppressive microenvironment, thereby promoting tumor progression. The central role of RANK/RANKL signaling in bone metastasis has been well studied [9]. The RANK signal network has been shown to drive epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT), induce stem cell-like phenotypes, promote osteomimicry, and give cancer cells the ability to home to bone [11, 39]. In a large population of breast cancer patients, strikingly high levels of RANK expression in the primary tumor were predictive for the frequency of the later occurrence of bone metastasis [37]. Recently, it seems that RANK signaling is important in the biology of many tumor types beyond bone metastasis [2, 7, 8, 11, 17, 23–43]. RANK and RANKL-expressing cells are commonly found in the tumor microenvironment [2]. The RANKL/RANK pathway is often overexpressed in cancers of the prostate, endometrium, stomach, breast, cervix, stomach, bladder, oesophagus, and thyroid, which is correlated with poor prognosis [23–43]. RANKL has been detected in endothelial cells and implicated in angiogenesis [7].

There is some circumstantial evidence suggesting that paracrine signaling through RANK/RANKL is responsible for the expansion of mammary stem cells observed during pregnancy and luteal cycles [13, 38]. MMTV-RANK transgenic mice are prone to develop mammary tumors, which may be related to activated RANK signaling [35]. Pharmacologic inhibition of RANKL or genetic ablation of RANK reduces (particularly estrogen and progesterone receptor negative) mammary tumor and metastasis development in animal models [32]. Breast cancer cells are able to produce RANKL and stimulate osteoclast differentiation [16, 38, 39]. In humans, high RANK expression is associated with altered mammary differentiation, which suggests that increased RANK signaling may contribute to breast carcinogenesis [13, 40]. High RANK expression was particularly detected in human primary breast adenocarcinomas that lack expression of the hormone receptors, in tumors with high pathologic grade and proliferation index. It is associated with the presence of metastases and poor prognosis [37]. It has been shown in vitro that HIF-1 alpha-induced expression of RANKL initiates increased migration of breast cancer cells via PI3K/AKT signaling, illustrating that the RANK/RANKL pathway also plays an important role in breast cancer progression [41, 42].

Mouse models and randomized studies in humans have shown that combination of antibodies blocking OPG or RANK with chemotherapy, hormone therapy, or targeted drugs resulted in stronger decrease of tumor burden in the bone [8, 17]. However, inhibition of RANK signaling also has a direct effect on tumor cells at other locations [28]. The RANK/RANKL pathway was variably expressed in tumors of the thyroid, and increased serum OPG was also correlated with poor prognosis in gastric, cervical, esophageal, and bladder carcinoma [23–27, 29–32]. Song et al. found that RANK expression was significantly higher in hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) than in peritumoral hepatic tissue [33]. HCC cell lines express RANK constitutively, and activation of the RANK-RANKL axis significantly promoted migration and invasion ability of HCC cells in vitro. Recently, it has been demonstrated that RANK/RANKL expression is also significantly elevated in endometrial and prostate cancer tissue, particularly in tumors of higher stage [20, 34, 35, 44]. Therefore, there may be a role for RANKL inhibitors as a therapeutic strategy.

3.5 Effects of the RANK/RANKL Signaling Pathway on the Tumor Microenvironment

RANK and RANKL expressing cells are commonly found in the tumor microenvironment [20]. RANKL modulates the immune response by inducing T-cell proliferation and dendritic cell survival [45]. In human breast carcinomas, RANKL is found in tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), and RANK is strongly expressed in tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) [18]. TAMs accumulate in the microenvironment and, depending on their M2 or M1 phenotype, are involved in tumor growth, angiogenesis, and metastasis. RANKL acts as a chemoattractant for these cells [2]. RANK/RANKL signaling in M2 macrophages modulates production of chemokines, promoting the proliferation of Tregs and thereby creating an immunosuppressive environment. As RANKL is mainly produced by Tregs, a vicious circle is established in conjunction with the TAMs mainly expressing RANK [7, 46]. Tumor-infiltrating Tregs have been shown to stimulate mammary cancer metastasis through RANKL-RANK signaling [47]. RANKL treatment enhances survival of mature dendritic cells (DCs) and triggers generation of proinflammatory cytokines (IL-1, IL-6, and IL-12) that can promote differentiation of CD4+ T cells into Th1 cells, providing a major costimulatory factor for CD4+ T-cell responses [47]. RANK is also expressed on NK cells, playing an important role in immunosurveillance. RANKL/RANK is involved in crosstalk between the bone and the immune system. It stimulates osteoclasts to function as antigen-presenting cells, thereby activating CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. A similar phenomenon might also be present in the microenvironment of solid tumors [7]. The crosstalk of tumor cells with the immune system is not completely understood, but the impact of RANK-RANKL signaling on the tumor immune response is likely to be context specific [4]. Due to sequestering OPG by tumor cells or entrapment of OPG by the proteoglycans and glycosaminoglycans of the extracellular matrix, a microenvironment is created that facilitates the expansion of the tumor cells [48]. In addition, OPG can block TRAIL activity, thereby acting as an antiapoptotic and pro-proliferative stimulus for cancer cells [11, 21]. It has been shown that RANK/RANKL signaling can promote the initial stages of cancer development by inducing stemness and epithelial-mesenchymal transition [19]. RANKL (e.g., produced by osteoblasts or bone marrow stromal cells) attracts RANK-expressing cells and induces their migration by activation of specific signaling pathways, such as the MAP kinase pathway [44]. RANKL was also detected in endothelial cells and has been implicated in angiogenesis through Src and phospholipase C-dependent mechanisms [2, 49].

3.6 RANKL Signaling Inhibition

The only commercially available inhibitor of RANKL is denosumab. This drug is a fully human monoclonal antibody that binds RANKL, thereby blocking its interaction with RANK [2, 8]. Denosumab is approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of osteoporosis and giant cell tumor of the bone and for the prevention and treatment of skeletal complications caused by bone metastases and lytic bone lesions in multiple myeloma [8]. The drug has a well-known and acceptable toxicity profile [8]. It remains unclear whether RANK/RANKL inhibition with denosumab in patients with cancer has any effect beyond the bone. In a post hoc analysis of patients with non-small-cell carcinoma of the lung (NSCLC) that were included in a phase III randomized trial comparing zoledronic acid versus denosumab, a survival benefit was observed (HR 0.80; 95% CI 0.67–0.95, $p = 0.01$) for the patients treated in the denosumab arm [50]. There was no difference in the delay of bone events in both groups, and the beneficial effect of denosumab could be observed in patients with visceral metastasis, as well as in patients with bone metastasis only. However, the recent prospective SPLENDOUR trial could not show any improvement in OS or PFS by adding denosumab to standard first-line therapy in patients with metastatic NSCLC [51].

The effect of adjuvant denosumab in women with early breast cancer was recently studied in two large, multicenter, prospective, randomized trials [52, 53]. In the ABCSG-18 study, it was shown that disease-free survival was significantly better in the denosumab group [52]. This study compared placebo or denosumab 60 mg subcutaneously every 6 months for 5 years in 3425 postmenopausal patients with hormone-sensitive early breast cancer treated with an aromatase inhibitor. In the DCARE study, which assessed 4509 high-risk early breast cancer patients treated with standard therapy either with or without denosumab 120 mg SC every month (for 6 months, then 3 monthly up to 5 years), no improvement in bone metastasis-free, disease-free, or overall survival was reported, even though there was an improvement in time to bone metastasis at site of first recurrence in the denosumab group [53]. It is important to mention that most (95.9%) of these patients had received taxane or anthracycline-based chemotherapy. This raises the hypothesis that chemotherapy may reduce some of the tumor suppressive effects of RANK/RANKL inhibition in the cancer microenvironment. Other explanations may be the differences in molecular characteristics of the tumors of these patient populations, or effects of the menopause and endocrine treatment on the tumor behavior. It is clear that more research is necessary to unravel the effect of denosumab on tumor behavior. In the D-BEYOND trial, the biological effects of two neoadjuvant injections of 120 mg denosumab (1 week apart) in 27 patients with premenopausal primary breast cancer were evaluated [54]. The authors concluded that 2 weeks of RANKL inhibition did not have an effect on the tumor proliferation rate, but significantly increased the number of TILS in the tumor environment, making them theoretically more susceptible for immune therapy. Recently, some additional evidence emerged that RANK/RANKL inhibition may have a role as immune modulator. In preclinical studies, RANKL blockade improves the efficacy of anti-CTLA-4-targeted antibodies in solid tumor models of metastasis [53]. Bakhru et al. showed that antibodies blocking RANKL and CTLA-4 cooperate to increase the frequency of tumor-infiltrating CD4+ T cells expressing cytolytic markers, thereby improving antimelanoma immunity [55]. Addition of RANKL blockade to anti-PD-1 and anti CTLA-4 resulted in superior tumor responses and was most effective if RANKL inhibition was given concurrent or following checkpoint blockade [54]. This triple combination therapy improved T-cell effector function in tumor bearing mice by increasing the proportion of tumor-infiltrating CD4+ and CD8+ T cells that can produce both interferon gamma and TNF. In 2014, Smyth et al. described a case of a rapidly advancing metastatic melanoma with aggressive and symptomatic bone metastases requiring treatment with the anti-RANKL antibody denosumab for palliation in a patient who was concomitantly treated with ipilimumab (an anti-CTLA-4 antibody) [56]. She had a spectacular partial response and was alive at 62 weeks. In a melanoma preclinical model, these authors could demonstrate that monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) directed to CTLA-4 or RANKL have modest antimetastatic activities in monotherapy, but when these drugs were combined at the time of intravenous melanoma inoculation, the development of metastases was significantly reduced. Mechanistically, the combined effect of anti-CTLA-4 and anti-RANKL depends on lymphocytes or natural killer cells. In a retrospective study, Afzal and Shirai evaluated the synergistic effect of immune checkpoint inhibitors and denosumab in metastatic melanoma patients [57]. Eleven (29.72%) out of 37 patients were treated with immune checkpoint inhibitors and denosumab, and the others only immune checkpoint inhibitors. The median progression-free and overall survival in the cohort having the combination treatment, respectively, was 11.6 and 57 months compared with 4.15 and 22.8 months in the control group. Although there are potential confounders, this suggests that adding denosumab to immune checkpoint inhibitors may have a beneficial effect on outcome. In a subsequent study, Ahern et al. assessed the efficacy of a combination of RANKL and CTLA-4 blockade by analysis of tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes, tumor growth, and metastasis in a model using a

variety of neutralizing antibodies and gene-targeted mice [58]. RANKL blockade improved the efficacy of anti-CTLA-4 mAbs against solid tumors and experimental metastases. Treg-depleting anti-CTLA-4 mAbs of the mouse IgG2a isotype showed the highest combinatorial activity. The optimal combination depended on the presence of activating Fc receptors and lymphocytes (particularly natural killer and $CD8^+$ T cells), whereas anti-RANKL alone did not require Fc receptors. T-cell infiltration into solid tumors post anti-RANKL and anti-CTLA-4 was significantly higher, and this was accompanied by increased T-cell effector function. Several studies are currently ongoing, studying the effect of denosumab monotherapy and the combination of RANKL inhibition and immunotherapy [2, 7].

3.7 RANK/RANKL Signaling and Chemo- or Radiotherapy

The role of the RANK/RANKL signaling in drug resistance remains unclear. There is some in vitro evidence suggesting that RANK/RANKL signaling can induce chemoresistance through the activation of multiple signal transduction pathways [59, 60]. However, in a mouse model, RANKL blockade increases the efficacy of cisplatin chemotherapy [60]. At the moment, there are no objective data that RANK/RANKL signaling inhibition has an influence on the effectivity of chemotherapy or radiotherapy in humans [7].

3.8 Conclusion

The role of RANK/RANKL inhibition as an immunomodulatory strategy in combination with other treatment modalities should be further investigated. As denosumab has clear immune-stimulating effects and an interesting toxicity profile, the drug has an attractive potential to be coadministered with immunotherapies for cancer treatment, thereby reinforcing the antitumor immune response. Optimal dosage and sequencing of treatment with other drug combinations warrants further investigation.

References

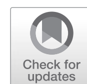
1. Aspelagh S, Morel D, Soria JC, Postel-Vinay S (2018) Epigenetic modifiers as new immunomodulatory therapies in solid tumors. Ann Oncol 29:812–824. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdy50
2. van Dam PA, Verhoeven Y, Trinh XB, Wouters A, Lardon F, Prenen H, Smits E, Baldewijns M, Lammens M (2019) RANK/RANKL signaling inhibition may improve the effectiveness of checkpoint blockade in cancer treatment. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 133:85–91
3. Vinay DS, Ryan EP, Pawelec G, Talib WH, Stagg J, Elkord E, Lichtor R, Decker WK, Whelan RL, Shanta Kumara HM, Signori E, Honoki K et al (2015) Immune evasion in cancer: mechanistic basis and therapeutic strategies. Semin Cancer Biol 35:S185–S198
4. Tilborghs S, Corthouts J, Verhoeven Y, Arias D, Rolfo C, Trinh XB, van Dam PA (2017) The role of nuclear factor-kappa B signaling in human cervical cancer. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 120:141–150. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.critrevonc.2017.11.001. Epub 2017 Nov 7
5. van Dam PA, van Dam PH, Rolfo C, Giallombardo M, Van Berckelaer C, Trinh XB, Altintas S, Huizing M, Papadimitriou K, Tjalma WA, Van Laere S (2016) In silico pathway analysis in cervical carcinoma reveals potential new targets for treatment. Oncotarget 7(3):2780–2795. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.6667
6. Casey SC, Amedei A, Aquilano K, Azmi AS, Benecia F, Bhakta D, Bilsland AE, Boosani CS, Chen S, Ciriolo MR, Crawford S, Fujii H, Georgakilas AG, Guha G et al (2015) Cancer prevention and therapy through the modulation of the tumor microenvironment. Semin Cancer Biol 35:S199–S223
7. van Dam P, Verhoeven Y, Jacobs J, Wouters A, Tjalma W, Lardon F, Van den Weyngaert, De Wulf J, Smits E, Colpaert C, Prene H, Peeters M, Lammens M, Trinh XB (2019) RANK_RANKL signaling in cancer of the uterine cervix: a review. Int J Mol Sci 20(9):2183
8. Castellano D, Sepulveda JM, Garcia-Escobar I, Rodriguez-Antolin A, Sundlov A, Cortes-Funes H (2011) The role of RANK-ligand inhibition in cancer: the story of denosumab. Oncologist 16(2):136–145
9. Millian MM (2015) The role of estrogen receptor in bone cells. Clin Rev Bone Miner Metabol 13:105–112
10. Ikeda T, Kasai M, Utsuyama M, Harikowa K (2001) Determination of three isoforms of the receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B ligand and their differential expression in bone and thymus. Endocrinology 142:1419–1426
11. Renema N, Navet B, Heymann MF, Lezot F, Heymann D (2016) RANK-RANKL signaling in cancer. Biosci Rep 36:e00366. https://doi.org/10.1042/BSR20160150
12. Theolaire S, Wittrant Y, Kwantat S, Fortun Y, Redeni F, Heymann D (2004) The molecular triad OPG/

RANK/RANKL: involvement in the orchestration of pathophysiologic bone remodeling. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 15:457–475
13. Gonzalez-Suarez E, Sanz-Moreno A (2016) RANK as a therapeutic target in cancer. FEBS J 283:2018–2033
14. Luo J, Yang Z, Ma Y, Yue Z, Lin H, Qu G, Huang J, Dai W, Li C, Zheng C, Xu L, Chen H, Wang J, Li D, Siwko S, Penninger JM, Ning G, Xiao J, Liu M (2016) LGR4 is a receptor for RANKL and negatively regulates osteoclast differentiation and bone resorption. Nat Med 22:539–546. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.4076. Epub 2016 Apr 11
15. Schneeweis LA, Willard D, Milla ME (2005) Functional dissection of osteoprotegerin and its interactions with receptor activator of NF-kappaB ligand. J Biol Chem 280:41155–41164
16. Papanastasiou AD, Sirinian C, Kalofonos HP (2012) Identification of novel human receptor activator of NF-kB isoforms generated through alternative spicing: implications in breast cancer cell survival and migration. Breast Cancer Res 1:R112
17. de Groot AF, Appelman-Dijkstra NM, van der Burg SH, Kroep JR (2018) The anti-tumor effect of RANKL inhibition in malignant solid tumors - A systematic review. Cancer Treat Rev 62:18–28. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ctrv.2017.10.010. Epub 2017 Nov 2. Review
18. Gonzalez-Suarez E, Jacob AP, Jones J, Miller R, Roudier-Meyer MP, Erwert R et al (2010) RANK ligand mediates progestin-induced mammary epithelial proliferation and carcinogenesis. Nature 468:103–107
19. Palafox M, Ferrer I, Pellegrini P, Vila S, Hernadez-Ortega S, Urricoechea A, Climent F, Soler MT, Munoz P, Vinals F, Tometsko M, Branstetter D, Dougall WC, Gonzalez-Suarez E (2012) RANK induces epithelial-mesenchymal transition and stem ness in human mammary epithelial cells and promotes tumorigenesis and metastasis. Cancer Res 72(11):2678–2688
20. Chu CY, Chung LW (2014) RANK-mediated signaling network and cancer metastasis. Cancer Metastasis Rev 33:497–509
21. Reid PE, Brown NJ, Holen I (2009) Breast cancer cells stimulate osteoprotegerin production by endothelial cells through direct cell contact. Mol Cancer 8:49. https://doi.org/10.1186/1476-4598-8-9
22. Sigl V, Jones LP, Penninger JM (2016) RANKL/RANK: from bone loss to the prevention of breast cancer. Open Biol 6:160230. https://doi.org/10.1098/rsob.160230
23. De Castro J, Garcia R, Garrido P, Isla D, Massuti B, Blanca B, Vazquez J (2015) Therapeutic potential of denosumab in patients with lung cancer: beyond prevention of skeletal complications. Clin Lung Cancer 16:431–446
24. Heymann MF, Riet A, Le Goff B, Battaglia S, Paineau J, Heymann D (2008) OPG, RANK and RANK ligand expression in thyroid lesions. Regul Pept 148:46–53
25. Mizutani Y, Matsubara H, Yamamoto K, Nan Li Y, Mikami K, Okihara K, Kawauchi A, Bonavida B, Miki T (2004) Prognostic significance of serum osteoprotegrin levels in patients with bladder carcinoma. Cancer 101:1794–1802
26. Rochette L, Meloux A, Rigal E, Zeller M, Cottin Y, Vergely C (2019) The role of osteoprotegerin and its ligands in vascular function. Int J Mol Sci 20(3). pii: E705. https://doi.org/10.3390/ijms20030705. Review
27. Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang ZM, Messi ML, Olson JD, Mintz A, Delbono O (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307(1):C25–C38. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpcell.00084.2014. Epub 2014 Apr 30
28. Yamada T, Tsuda M, Takahashi T, Totsuka Y, Shindoh M, Ohba Y (2011) RANKL expression specifically observed in vivo promotes epithelial mesenchymal transition and tumor progression. Am J Pathol 178:2845–2856
29. Naumnik W, Płońska I, Ossolińska M, Nikliński J, Naumnik B (2018) Prognostic value of osteoprotegerin and sRANKL in Bronchoalveolar Lavage fluid of patients with advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Adv Exp Med Biol 1047:1–6. https://doi.org/10.1007/5584_2017_111
30. Zhang X, Song Y, Song N, Zhang L, Wang Y, Li D, Wang Z, Qu X, Liu Y (2018) RANKL expression predicts poor prognosis in gastric cancer patients: results from a retrospective and single-center analysis. Braz J Med Biol Res 51(3):e6265. https://doi.org/10.1590/1414-431X20176265
31. Shang WQ, Li H, Liu LB, Chang KK, Yu JJ, Xie F, Li MQ, Yu JJ (2015) RANKL/RANK interaction promotes the growth of cervical cancer cells by strengthening the dialogue between cervical cancer cells and regulation of IL-8 secretion. Oncol Rep 34(6):3007–3016
32. Ma D, Chang LY, Zhao S, Zhao JJ, Xiong YJ, Cao FY, Yuan L, Zhang Q, Wang XY, Geng ML, Zheng HY, Li O (2017) KLF5 promotes cervical cancer proliferation, migration and invasion in a manner partly dependent on TNFRSF11a expression. Sci Rep 7(1):15683. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-017-15979-1
33. Song FN, Duan M, Liu LZ, Wang ZC, Shi JY, Yang LX, Zhou J, Fan J, Gao Q, Wang XY (2014) RANKL promotes migration and invasion of hepatocellular carcinoma cells via NFkB mediated epithelial mesenchymal transition. PLoS One 9:e108507. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone
34. Wang J, Zhang H, Wang Y, Li Y (2015) MPA influences tumor cell proliferation, migration and invasion induced by RANKL through PRB involving the MAPK pathway in endometrial cancer. Oncol Rep 33:799–809
35. Christoph F, König F, Lebentrau S, Jandrig B, Krause H, Strenziok R, Schostak M (2018) RANKL/RANK/OPG cytokine receptor system: mRNA expression pattern in BPH, primary and metastatic prostate cancer disease. World J Urol 36(2):187–192. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00345-017-2145-y. Epub 2017 Dec 4

36. Schultz MA, Hagan SS, Datta A, Zhang Y, Freeman ML, Sikka SC, Abdel-Mageed AB, Mondal D (2014) Nrf1 and Nrf2 transcription factors regulate androgen receptor transactivation in prostate cancer cells. PLoS One 9(1):e87204. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0087204
37. Pellegrini P, Cordero A, Gallego MI, Dougall WC, Munoz P, Pujana MA, Gonzalez-Suarez E (2013) Constitutive activation of RANK disrupts mammary cell fate leading to tumorigenesis. Stem Cells 31:1954–1965
38. Cross SS, Harrison RF, Balasubramanian SP, Lippitt JM, Evans CA, Reed MW, Holen I (2006) Expression of receptor activator nuclear factor kappa beta ligand (RANKL) and tumor necrosis factor related apoptosis inducing ligand (TRAIL) in breast cancer, and its relations with osteoprotegrin, estrogen receptor and clinicopathological variables. J Clin Pathol 59:716–720
39. Park HR, Min SK, Cho HD, Kim DH, Shin HS (2003) Expression of osteoprotegerin and RANK ligand in breast cancer bone metastasis. J Korean Med Sci 18(4):541–546
40. Sarink D, Schock H, Johnson T, Overvad K, Holm M, Tjønneland A, Boutron-Ruault MC, His M, Kvaskoff M, Boeing H, Lagiou P, Papatesta EM, Trichopoulou A, Palli D, Pala V, Mattiello A, Tumino R, Sacerdote C, Bueno-de-Mesquita HBA, van Gils CH, Peeters PH, Weiderpass E, Agudo A, Sánchez MJ, Chirlaque MD, Ardanaz E, Amiano P, Khaw KT, Travis R, Dossus L, Gunter M, Rinaldi S, Merritt M, Riboli E, Kaaks R, Fortner RT (2017) Circulating RANKL and RANKL/OPG and breast cancer risk by ER and PR subtype: results from the EPIC cohort. Cancer Prev Res 10:525–534. https://doi.org/10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-17-0125
41. Tang ZN, Zhang F, Tang P, Qi XW, Jiang J (2011) Hypoxia induces RANK and RANKL expression by activating HIF-1 alpha in breast cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 408:411–416
42. Zhang L, Teng Y, Fan Y, Wang Y, Li W, Shi J, Ma Y, Li C, Shi X, Qu X, Liu Y (2015) The E3 ubiquitin ligase Cbl-b improves the prognosis of RANK positive breast cancer patients by inhibiting RANKL-induced cell migration and metastasis. Oncotarget 6(26):22918–22933
43. Papanastasiou AD, Sirinian C, Plakoula E, Zolota V, Zarkadis IK, Kalofonos HP (2018) RANK and EGFR in invasive breast carcinoma. J Cancer Gen 216-217:61–66. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cancergen.2017.07.004. Epub 2017 Jul 26
44. Liu Y, Wang J, Ni T, Wang L, Wang Y, Sun X (2016) CCL20 mediates RANK/RANKL-induced epithelial-mesenchymal transition in endometrial cancer cells. Oncotarget 18:25328–25339. https://doi.org/10.18632/oncotarget.8291
45. Wong BR, Josien R, Lee SY, Sauter B, Li HL, Steinman RM, Choi Y (1997) TRANCE, a new TNF family member predominantly expressed in T cells, is a dendritic cell specific survival factor. J Exp Med 186:2075–2080
46. Tan W, Zhang W, Strasner A, Grivennikov S, Cheng JQ, Hofman RM, Karin M (2011) Tumour infiltrating regulatory T cells stimulate mammary cancer metastasis through RANKL-RANK signaling. Nature 470:548–553
47. Li H, Hong S, Qian J, Zheng Y, Yang J, Yi Q (2009) Cross talk between the bone and immune systems: osteoclasts function as antigen-presenting cells and activate CD4+ and CD8+ T cells. Blood 116:210–217
48. Goswami S, Sharma-Walia N (2016) Osteoprotegerin rich tumor microenvironment: implications in breast cancer. Oncotarget 7(27):42777–42791
49. Min JK, Kim YM, Kim YM, Kim EC, Gho YS, Kang IJ, LEE SY, Kong YY, Kwon YG (2003) Vascular endothelial growth factor upregulates expression of receptor activator of NF-kB (RANK) in endothelial cells: concomitant increase of angiogenic responses to RANK ligand. J Biol Chem 278:39548–39557
50. Scagliotti GV, Hirsh V, Siena S, Henry DH, Woll PJ, Manegold C, Solal-Celigny P, Rodriguez G, Krzakowski M, Mehta ND, Lipton L, García-Sáenz JA, Pereira JR, Prabhash K, Ciuleanu TE, Kanarev V, Wang H, Balakumaran A, Jacobs I (2012) Overall survival improvement in patients with lung cancer and bone metastases treated with denosumab versus zoledronic acid: subgroup analysis from a randomized phase 3 study. J Thorac Oncol 7(12):1823–1829. https://doi.org/10.1097/JTO.0b013e31826aec2b
51. Peters S, Danson SJ, Hasan B, Reinmuth N, Majem M, Tournoy KG et al (2018) A randomized phase III trial evaluating the addition of denosumab to standard first-line treatment in advanced NSCLC: the ETOP and EORTC SPLENDOUR trial (abstract 1385). Ann Oncol 29(mdy292):008
52. Gnant M, Pfeiler G, Steger G, Egle D, Greil R, Fitzal F, Wette V, Haslbauer F, Melbiner E et al (2018) Adjuvant denosumab in early breast cancer: disease-free survival analysis of 3425 postmenopausal patients in the ABCSG-18 trial. J Clin Oncol 36:S500
53. Coleman RE, Finkelstein D, Martin M, Iwata H, Glaspy JA, Zhou Y, Jandial D, Chan A (2018) Adjuvant denosumab in early breast cancer: first results from the international multicenter randomized phase III placebo controlled study. J Clin Oncol 36:S501
54. Nguyen B, Maetens M, Salgado R, Venet D, Vuylsteke P, Polastro L, Wildiers H, Simon P, Lindeman G, Larsimont D, Van de Eynden G, Velgh C, Rothe F, Garaud S, Michiels S, Willard Gallo K, Azi HA, Loi S, Piccart M, Sotoriou C (2018) D-BEYOND: a window of opportunity trial evaluating denosumab, a RANK ligand inhibitor and its biological effects in young pre-menopausal women diagnosed with early breast cancer. Cancer Res 78(13 Suppl):abstarct nr CT101
55. Bakhru P, Zhu ML, Wang HH, Hong LK, Khan I, Mouchess M, Gulati AS, Starmer J, Hou Y, Sailer D, Lee S, Zhoa F, Kirkwood JM, Moschos S, Fong L, Anderson MS, Su M (2017) Combination central tol-

erance and peripheral checkpoint blockade unleashes antimelanoma immunity. Immunology 93265. https://doi.org/10.1172/jci.insight.93265

56. Smyth MJ, Yagita H, McArthur GA (2016) Combination of anti-CTL-4 and anti-RANKL in metastatic melanoma. J Clin Oncol 34:e104–e106. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2013.51.3572
57. Afzal MZ, Shirai K (2018) Immune checkpoint inhibitor (anti-CTLA-4, anti-PD-1) therapy alone versus immune checkpoint inhibitor (anti-CTLA-4, anti-PD-1) therapy in combination with anti-RANKL denosumuab in malignant melanoma: a retrospective analysis at a tertiary care center. Melanoma Res. https://doi.org/10.1097/CMR.0000000000000459. [Epub ahead of print]
58. Ahern E, Harjunpää H, Barkauskas D, Allen S, Takeda K, Yagita H, Wyld D, Dougall WC, Teng MWL, Smyth MJ (2017) Co-administration of RANKL and CTLA4 antibodies enhances lymphocyte-mediated antitumor immunity in mice. Clin Cancer Res 23(19):5789–5801. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-0606
59. Tsubaki M, Takeda T, Yoshizumi M, Ueda E, Itoh T, Imano M, Satou T, Nishida S (2016) RANK-RANKL interactions are involved in cell adhesion-mediated drug resistance in multiple myeloma cell lines. Tumour Biol 37(7):9099–9110. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13277-015-4761-8. Epub 2016 Jan 14
60. Timotheadou E, Kalogeras KT, Koliou GA, Wirtz RM, Zagouri F, Koutras A, Veltrup E, Christodoulou C, Pentheroudakis G, Tsiftsoglou A, Papakostas P, Aravantinos G, Venizelos V, Pectasides D, Kosmidis P, Karanikiotis C, Markopoulos C, Gogas H, Fountzilas G (2017) Evaluation of the prognostic value of RANK, OPG, and RANKL mRNA expression in early breast cancer patients treated with anthracycline-based adjuvant chemotherapy. Transl Oncol 10(4):589–598. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tranon.2017.05.006



Modulation of Cancer Cell Growth and Progression by Caveolin-1 in the Tumor Microenvironment

4

Hyo-Jin Yoon and Young-Joon Surh

Abstract

Caveolin-1 (Cav-1), a major structural component of cell membrane caveolae, is involved in a variety of intracellular signaling pathways as well as transmembrane transport. Cav-1, as a scaffolding protein, modulates signal transduction associated with cell cycle progression, cellular senescence, cell proliferation and death, lipid homeostasis, etc. Cav-1 is also thought to regulate the expression or activity of oncoproteins, such as Src family kinases, H-Ras, protein kinase C, epidermal growth factor, extracellular signal-regulated kinase, and endothelial nitric oxide synthase. Because of its frequent overexpression or mutation in various tumor tissues and cancer cell lines, Cav-1 has been speculated to play a role as an oncoprotein in cancer development and progression. In contrast, Cav-1 may also function as a tumor suppressor, depending on the type of cancer cells and/or surrounding stromal cells in the tumor microenvironment as well as the stage of tumors.

Keywords

Caveolin-1 · Caveolae · Cancer-associated fibroblasts · Cancer progression · Cancer stem-like cells · Epithelial-mesenchymal transition · Metastasis · Stem cells · Stromal cells · Tumor microenvironment

4.1 Introduction

Caveolae represent a flask-shaped invagination of the plasma membrane that play a role in endocytosis and forming vesicles in the cytoplasm. Caveolae are heterogeneous in normal and tumor cells, and they are most abundant in stromal cells, such as adipocytes, fibroblasts, vascular endothelial cells, and smooth muscle cells [1, 2]. A family of integral membrane proteins, called caveolins, are the principal components of caveolae. Caveolins may act by compartmentalizing and concentrating signaling molecules and are involved in receptor-independent endocytosis [3]. Caveolins have amino-terminal and carboxy-terminal domains

H.-J. Yoon
Tumor Microenvironment Global Core Research Center, College of Pharmacy, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Y.-J. Surh (✉)
Tumor Microenvironment Global Core Research Center, College of Pharmacy, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea

Department of Molecular Medicine and Biopharmaceutical Sciences, Graduate School of Convergence Science and Technology, Seoul National University, Seoul, South Korea
e-mail: surh@snu.ac.kr

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_4

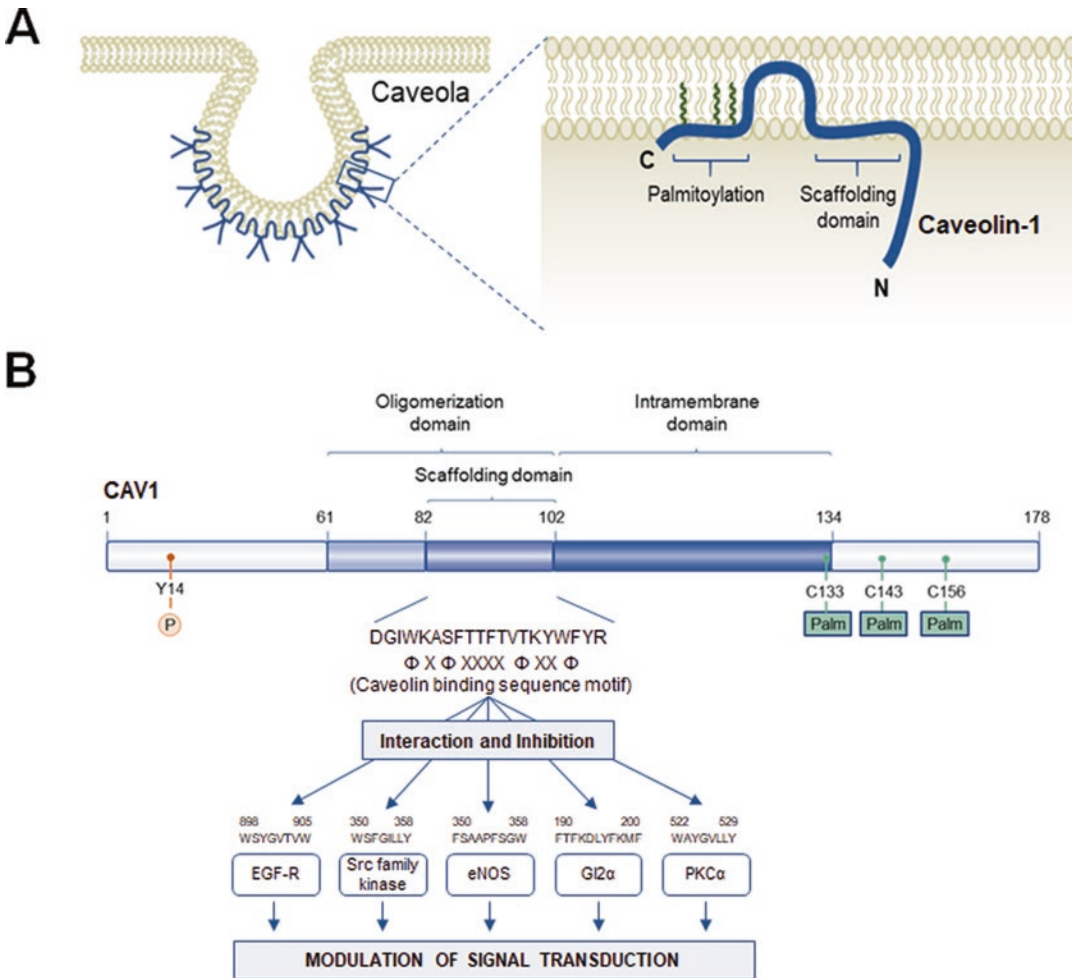


Fig. 4.1 Structures of caveolae and Cav-1. (**a**) The diagrams of caveolae and Cav-1. Cav-1 is inserted into the caveolar membrane, with the N- and C-termini facing the cytoplasm and an intramembrane domain embedded within the membrane bilayer. (**b**) The sequence of the caveolin-scaffolding domain (CSD; residues 82–102) and the caveolin binding sequence motifs within several caveolae-localized signaling molecules are shown. These include epidermal growth factor receptor (EGF-R), Src family tyrosine kinases, endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS), G-protein α subunits (Gi2α), and PKC isoforms (PKCα). In most cases, such interaction is inhibitory, leading to inactivation of the signaling molecules and modulation of downstream signal transduction

localized at the cytoplasmic face of the cell membrane (Fig. 4.1a) [4]. Caveolins also contain the caveolin scaffolding domain required for binding to signaling proteins. Caveolins modulate functions of several signaling molecules, such as Src, G-protein α-subunits, and H-Ras, involved in cell proliferation and growth (Fig. 4.1b) [5]. Caveolins consist of the three core members, Caveolin-1 (Cav-1), Caveolin-2 (Cav-2), and Caveolin-3 (Cav-3). Cav-1 is highly expressed in various cells, such as adipocytes, endothelial cells, fibroblasts, and smooth muscle cells. Cav-2 shares a similar expression profile with Cav-1, as it requires Cav-1 for stabilization. Cav-3 is predominantly expressed in muscle cells [6]. Cav-1 and Cav-3 form homo-oligomers, and oligomerization is essential for caveolae biogenesis. Ablation of Cav-1 and Cav-3 causes a deficiency of caveolae in various cell types [7, 8]. Besides formation of caveolae, caveolins have multiple cellular functions by interacting with signaling molecules, such as receptors, kinases, adhesion

molecules, and G proteins. These include cholesterol homeostasis, vesicle trafficking, and endocytosis [9, 10]. Of three isoforms of caveolin family, Cav-1 is the principal structural component of caveolae, and its expression is essential for driving the formation of morphologically identifiable caveolae [10]. Cav-1, as a scaffolding protein, modulates multiple signal transduction pathways involved in cell cycle progression, cellular senescence, cell proliferation and death, lipid homeostasis, etc.

Over the past years, there has been increasing concern about the involvement of Cav-1 in the development and pathogenesis of human cancer. Cav-1 regulates cancer cell metabolism, proliferation, differentiation, resistance to apoptosis, survival, adhesion, migration, invasion, and metastasis [12–16]. On the other hand, Cav-1 can also act as a tumor suppressor in some circumstances in which its low expression favors tumor progression [17–20]. Besides epithelial Cav-1 in tumors, altered expression of stromal Cav-1 in the tumor microenvironment (TME) is observed in different types of human malignancies [12, 14]. However, the clinical significance of Cav-1 in cancer is still elusive.

This review summarizes the differential roles for Cav-1 in tumor development, migration, metastasis, therapy resistance, and cancer cell survival.

4.2 Cav-1 Expression in Human Cancer

Cav-1 expression has been extensively examined in various tumor specimens from cancer patients as well as in human cancer cell lines [14–18]. In most studies, the association between Cav1 expression levels and clinicopathological significance in terms of prognosis, metastatic status, and/or tumor resistance has been analyzed [14–18]. However, there is a contradictory profile of the Cav-1 expression in human cancer [19]. While some studies suggest the oncogenic function of Cav-1, loss or low expression of Cav-1 has been associated with poor outcomes in various tumor types. In other studies, however, there is no consistent change in Cav-1 expression between cancer cells and their normal adjacent cells. Therefore, the effects of Cav-1 expression on tumorigenicity and aggressiveness appear to vary widely among different cancer types [19].

4.2.1 Oncogenic Function

Cav-1 is frequently overexpressed or mutated in various tumor tissues and cancer cell lines. Aberrant upregulation of Cav-1 has been postulated to favor cancer cell survival and growth. Cav-1 may function as an oncoprotein commonly associated with enhanced malignant behavior, such as metastasis [15, 16, 18] and therapy resistance [14, 15, 17]. The clinicopathologic significance of upregulated Cav-1 is described below.

4.2.1.1 Role in Cancer Cell Invasiveness and Metastasis

In certain tumors, progression into a metastatic or drug-resistant form has been attributable to reexpression of Cav-1 [14–18]. Upregulation of Cav-1 is thought to contribute to cancer cell invasiveness and resistance to anoikis, properties that are essential for metastasis [20]. In non-neoplastic gastric mucosa, Cav-1 was not expressed in the epithelial compartment. However, the expression of Cav-1 was significantly correlated with cancer progression and poor prognosis in gastric cancer. This was associated with an advanced stage and lymph node metastasis [21].

Restoration of Cav-1 expression in lung adenocarcinoma cells is sufficient to promote their filopodia formation, migration, and metastatic potential [22]. Recent studies have indicated that cell invasion during tumor progression may be critically dependent on the acquisition of epithelial-mesenchymal transition (EMT) features. Multiple lines of evidence support that Cav-1 mediate the invasion and metastasis of cancer which are accompanied by EMT. Thus, Cav-1 can promote bladder cancer metastasis by inducing EMT which is linked to activation of phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase-Akt and upregulation of Slug expression [23]. Moreover, overex-

pressed Cav-1 increased vimentin expression, but downregulated E-cadherin. This accompanied the change of EMT, resulting in the increased motility and invasiveness in hepatocellular carcinoma [24]. The reduced levels of Cav-1 in hypoxia stimulate activation of epidermal growth factor receptor and consequently STAT3. This, in turn, results in the downregulation of E-cadherin and upregulation of mesenchymal markers, such as Slug, α-smooth muscle actin, N-cadherin, and vimentin, suggesting that Cav-1 can mediate the EMT and promote invasiveness in gastric cancer [24] (Fig. 4.2).

Matrix metalloproteins (MMPs) are a family of zinc-containing proteolytic enzymes that degrade various components of extracellular matrix [25]. The migration- and invasion-promoting effects of Cav-1 overexpression in hepatocellular carcinoma appear to be mediated by increasing secretion or expression of MMP-2, MMP-9, and MT1-MMP as well as inducing an EMT-like phenotype [26].

Rho-GTPases are involved in tumor metastasis and invasion [27, 28]. Previous studies have indicated the role of Cav-1 in regulating the activity of Rho-GTPases in various metastatic cancers. The interaction between Cav-1 and Rho-GTPases promotes tumor metastasis, which depends on the elevated expression of α5-integrin and the enhanced activation of Src and Ras [29]. The acquisition of the metastatic phenotype requires adhesive interaction between cancer cells and the endothelium, in which focal adhesion kinase (FAK) plays an essential role [30]. The expression of Cav-1 was positively correlated with that of FAK in gastric cancer [21]. Rho/ROCK signaling promotes tumor cell migration and metastasis by regulating focal adhesion dynamics through Cav-1 phosphorylation at the tyrosine 14 residue [31]. Cav-1 tyrosine phosphorylation is dependent on Src kinase and Rho/ROCK signaling. The phosphorylated Cav-1 stabilizes FAK association with focal adhesion and promotes cell migration and invasion [31].

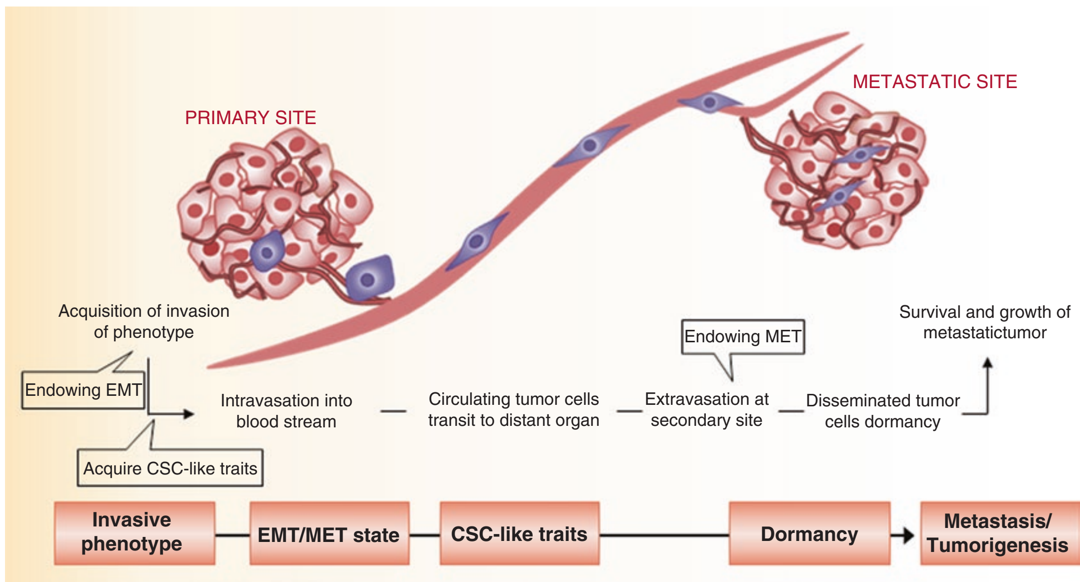


Fig. 4.2 Cancer cells within the primary tumor undergo EMT and acquire stem-like traits (CSCs) and endow invasive capacity, then intravasate into the tumor vasculature in the form of circulating tumor cells (CTCs), which must be able to survive the circulating blood and evade from the innate immune response and other defenses. Once CTCs migrate to a secondary site, the settlement in supportive niches enables them to survive and retain their stem-like tumor-initiating capacity. In the target site, disseminated cancer cells (DTCs) encounter inhibitory signals resulted in the arrested in cell cycle subsequently leading to dormancy from months to decades while they adapt to their new found microenvironment. Cancer cells undergo mesenchymal-to-epithelial transition (MET) in order to acquire feature proliferation to metastatic outgrowth in the target site

4.2.1.2 Role in Therapy Resistance

Increased expression of Cav-1 can promote development of resistance to chemo- or radiotherapy [14, 17]. In cisplatin-resistant ovarian cancer cells, both expression levels of Cav-1 and its mRNA transcript were significantly higher than those in normal ovarian cancer cells [32]. Knockdown of Cav-1 sensitized cisplatin-resistant ovarian cancer cells to apoptosis, which was attributable to downregulation of expression of Notch-1, p-Akt, and p-NF-κB/p65 [32].

4.2.1.3 Role in Cancer Stem Cells (CSCs)

CSCs represent an important subset of TME components. CSCs are responsible for tumor initiation, metastasis, and recurrence as well as resistance to chemo- and radiotherapy, which are associated with poor clinical outcomes. Because CSCs contribute to cancer development and progression, the presence of CSC population in precancerous stage is an early indicator of malignant progression. Some biological mediators (e.g., nitric oxide; NO) found in the TME could promote manifestation of CSC-like phenotypes of human nonsmall-cell lung carcinoma via Cav-1 upregulation [33].

Our recent study revealed that Cav-1 expression is significantly lower in tumorspheres derived from human breast cancer (MDA-MB-231) cells than in adherent cells [34]. In line with this notion, silencing of Cav-1 enhanced stemness of MDA-MB-231 cells as evidenced by the increased proportion of $CD44^{high}$ and $CD24^{low}$ cells. Notably, Src-mediated phosphorylation of Cav-1 at the Tyr 14 residue was found to be essential for its destabilization via the ubiquitin-proteasome degradation system which accounts for the reduced Cav-1 in a breast CSC-like state [34].

4.2.2 Tumor Suppressive Function

In some tissues, Cav-1 has been shown or speculated to function as a tumor suppressor. Several studies have shown that Cav-1 inhibits colony formation and induces apoptosis in transformed cells and cancerous cells [35–37]. In addition, forced reexpression of Cav-1 abrogated anchorage-independent growth of transformed cells [35–39].

In human breast cancer, the *Cav-1* has been considered a tumor suppressor gene associated with inhibition of tumor metastasis. Sagara and colleagues investigated the mRNA and protein expression levels of Cav-1 in 162 cases of breast cancer and found that the Cav-1 expression was suppressed at both transcriptional and translational levels in breast cancer tissues compared with the normal tissues [40]. In this study, the reduced *Cav-1* mRNA level was significantly associated with an increased tumor size, and was correlated with hormonal receptor status [40]. Overexpressed Cav-1 reduced the invasion capacity of metastatic mammary tumor cells by inhibiting the activity of MMP-2 and MMP-9 [41]. In normal breast, Cav-1 was found to be expressed in myoepithelial cells, endothelial cells, and a subset of fibroblasts. In contrast, luminal epithelial cells showed negligible staining [42].

Low levels of Cav-1 and its mRNA transcripts were detected in several colon carcinoma cell lines. Moreover, Cav-1 protein levels were markedly lower in human colon tumor epithelium than in normal colon mucosa. Ectopic expression of Cav-1 in the colon carcinoma cells attenuated tumor formation when these cells were inoculated into nude mice [43]. Moreover, Cav-1 may function as a negative regulator of metastasis by inhibiting MT4-MMP expression in colon cancer [44]. Cav-1 is not expressed in lipid rafts of the highly metastatic colon cancer cell line, but expressed in cytosolic fractions of the parental lower metastatic cell line. Xenografting Cav-1 deficient cells in nude mice induced development of bigger tumors expressing higher levels of proliferating cell nuclear antigen than in mice injected with cells expressing the higher level of Cav-1 [45]. In another study, high Cav-1 expression correlated with good clinical outcomes in head and neck cancer and extrahepatic biliary carcinoma cells [46]. In mucoepidermoid carcinoma of the salivary glands, reduced expression of Cav-1 was associated with a poor prognosis for some patients [45].

Contrary to the previous report on the association between Cav-1 and Rho-GTPases that promotes tumor metastasis [29], Lin and colleague have reported that Cav-1 expression inhibits RhoC GTPase activation and subsequently activates the p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase, leading to suppression of migration and invasion of primary pancreatic cancer cells [47].

In in vivo experiments, Cav-1 knockout mice showed increased development or progression of some cancers. A novel mouse model of colorectal cancer was generated by crossing C57BL/6 *Apc*$^{min/+}$ with B6129 Cav-1 knockout (*Cav1*$^{-/-}$) mice. Absence of Cav-1 accelerated colorectal tumorigenesis in *Apc*$^{min/+}$ mice, which was accompanied by upregulation of Wnt signaling [48].

Cav-1 null mice are much more susceptible to chemically induced skin carcinogenesis as well as epidermal hyperplasia than wild-type littermates [49]. In addition, cyclin D1 expression was upregulated during epidermal hyperplasia, which may account for the increased susceptibility of Cav-1 null mice to skin paillomagenesis [49]. Further, orthotopic implantation of B16F10 melanoma cells in the skin of Cav-1 null mice increased tumor growth [50].

Lewis lung carcinoma cells implanted into Cav-1 knockout mice had increased tumor vascular permeability compared with tumors implanted into wild-type mice. Cav-1 deficient mice also had significantly higher tumor growth rates, and this was attributable to increased tumor angiogenesis and decreased tumor cell death [51].

4.3 Stromal Versus Tumoral Cav-1 in TME

There has been increasing concern about the tumor-host interactions, which influence tumor growth, metastasis, therapy resistance, and cell survival. Understanding such tumor-stroma communication interactions may hence offer a novel therapeutic strategy to avoid or minimize therapy resistance and improve clinical outcomes [14].

Multiple lines of compelling evidence support that the heterogeneous tumor stroma in TME contributes to manifestation of a malignant phenotype of epithelial tumors, tumor recurrence, metastasis, and therapy resistance, resulting in poor clinical outcome. In this context, Cav-1 in the stroma of TME is also likely to be an important prognostic indicator of breast cancer [12, 14]. An absence or reduced stromal Cav-1 expression accounts for poor clinical outcome or therapy resistance in many different types of cancers [12, 13, 52–54].

4.3.1 Cav-1 in Cancer-Associated Fibroblasts

The stroma which constitutes at least half of the tumor mass consists of cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), macrophages and other immune cells, and endothelial cells. Of the stromal cells, CAFs play a key role in tumor-stromal interaction. Loss of Cav-1 expression in CAFs results in an activated TME, thereby driving early tumor recurrence, metastasis, and poor clinical outcome in various malignancies [12]. The loss of Cav-1 in fibroblasts is sufficient to induce a CAF phenotype. In addition to CAFs, metastasis-associated macrophages in TME also express abundant levels of Cav-1, which is critical for metastasis and not for primary tumor growth [55]. The decreased expression of Cav-1 in CAFs resulted in a growth advantage and the chemoresistance of cancer cells when they were co-injected into immunodeficient mice to develop mixed fibroblast/cancer cell xenografts [56]. In this study, however, Cav-1 downregulation in cancer cells had no effect on chemoresistance and growth gain in vivo. Thus, it is likely that relative expression of tumor vs. stromal Cav-1 in TME has more precise prognostic significance than that of each alone. In this context, it is interesting to note that low expression of stromal Cav-1 was negatively associated with cytoplasmic Cav-1 expression in total tumor tissues [57]. As the colon tumor becomes more aggressive and metastatic, it looses the stromal Cav-1 and gains the cellular Cav-1 as well as the abnormal β-catenin expression [58]. In line with this notion, the high tumor/low stromal expression of Cav-1 was closely associated with poor

prognostic outcomes in primary human prostate cancer patients [59].

Sotgia and colleagues have proposed paracrine signaling mechanisms by which the loss of stromal Cav-1 promotes tumor progression to fuel the growth of adjacent tumor cells [12]. It appears that oxidative stress is the root cause of initiation of the loss of stromal Cav-1 via autophagy [12]. It is noteworthy that loss of stromal Cav-1 correlates with high epithelial Cav-1 levels and activated Akt [60]. Low stromal expression of Cav-1 increased TGF-β1 expression and induced phosphorylation and activation of Akt in human dermal fibroblasts [61].

Though the majority of studies suggest stromal Cav-1, especially of CAF origin, has tumor suppressive functions, Cav-1 expression of CAFs has been shown to be associated with patients' poor prognosis [62, 63]. Moreover, tumors with Cav-1-positive CAFs had vascular and pleural invasion significantly more frequently than those with Cav-1-negative CAF [64].

4.3.2 Cav-1 in Other Stromal Cells

Besides CAFs, Cav-1 may also functions in some other stromal cells in TME. Cav-1 is abundant in endothelial cells, adipocytes, and smooth muscle cells as well as in fibroblasts and epithelial cells. Several studies have suggested that Cav-1 may function in the main types of vascular cells in TME [51, 65–67], including pericytes, endothelial cells, and smooth muscle cells which are associated with vascular permeability and morphogenesis in tumor. Endothelial cells play a central role in angiogenesis, a process by which new vasculature is derived from preexisting blood vessels. Several studies have proposed a role for Cav-1 in the regulation of vascular development and angiogenesis [51, 65–67].

Under physiological condition, the main function of Cav-1 is to inhibit endothelial permeability. Cav-1 knockout mice were observed to exhibit a hyperpermeable vascular endothelium [66]. Likewise, tumors grown in *Cav1*$^{-/-}$ mice became leaky as evidenced by increased tumor vascular permeability, and grew faster, compared with tumors implanted into wild-type mice [51]. Cav-1 deficient mice also displayed elevated tumor angiogenesis and decreased tumor cell death, which may account for significantly higher tumor growth rates [51]. As Cav-1 is an endogenous inhibitor of endothelial NO synthase (eNOS), the loss of Cav-1 may result in hyperactivation of eNOS, and resultant NO overproduction is speculated to increase tumor vascular permeability, survival, and ultimately tumor growth [51]. Besides inhibition of endothelial NO production, there might be an alternative mechanism by which Cav-1 modulates the microvascular permeability and angiogenesis. Cav-1 has been found to interact with many intracellular signaling molecules including receptors, thereby altering their activity. For instance, Cav-1 suppresses vascular endothelial cell growth factor receptor (VEGFR)-2 signaling by inhibiting tyrosine phosphorylation of this receptor mediated by adherens junction protein, VE cadherin [51]. Therefore, the enhanced tumor permeability and growth as a consequence of loss of Cav-1 may be attributed to augmented proangiogenic signaling through inhibition of phosphorylation-dependent VEGFR-2 activation [51].

Soon after microvessels are formed, they come in close contact with mural cells of the smooth muscle cell lineage, referred to as pericytes or vascular smooth muscle cells. Such association of pericites (smooth muscle cells) with endothelial cells lining newly formed blood vessels is essential for vascular development and stability [68]. Cav-1 was found to be enriched in the lipid raft fraction of pericytes [69]. Cav-1 impaired the migration of pericytes [66]. Therefore, a decrease in Cav-1 abundance appears to stimulate the angiogenesis and prevent its termination by mural cell recruitment [66]. In another study, a cell-permeable peptide derived from the Cav-1 scaffolding domain inhibited the proliferation of pericytes, but not their survival or migration [67].

There is paucity of information on the role of Cav-1, derived from other stromal cells of TME, in cancer development and progression. Cav-1 promotes differentiation of monocytes to macrophages [70]. Downregulated Cav-1 expres-

sion in circulating monocytes has been implicated in the pathogenesis of psoriasis [71]. However, the functional role of Cav-1 in stromal macrophages in TME has been poorly understood. It has been reported that Cav-1 functions as an anti-metastatic regulator in mouse models of lung and breast cancer pulmonary metastasis [54]. Among all the recruited inflammatory cell populations, metastasis-associated macrophages (MAMs) uniquely express high levels of Cav-1. Loss of Cav-1 did not affect MAM recruitment to the metastatic site, but rather favored lung metastatic growth through increased angiogenesis [54].

4.4 Role of Cav-1 in the Cancer Cell Metabolism and Metabolic Reprogramming of the Tumor Stroma

Recent studies have highlighted the importance of Cav-1, especially of stromal origin, in metabolic alterations in cancer cells in relation to their survival advantage. Cav-1 influences tumor development or progression by modulating such metabolic pathways as glycolysis, mitochondrial bioenergetics, glutaminolysis, fatty acid metabolism, etc. [13]. Catabolic CAFs represent a key metabolic "fuel source," required for cancer cell propagation, survival, and systemic dissemination during metastasis [52]. A loss of Cav-1 has been shown to drive the metabolic reprogramming of stromal cells to support the growth of adjacent epithelial tumor cells. Stromal cells could function as providers of energy metabolites for tumor cells by undergoing the "reverse Warburg effect" [53]. The interaction between the tumoral microvesicles (TMVs) and stroma in the tumor microenvironment plays a critical role in facilitating cancer progression. After being incubated with tumoral microvesicles, normal human gingival fibroblasts acquired a phenotype switch to CAFs which was accompanied by degradation of Cav-1 [72]. Notably, Cav-1-deficient CAFs undergo autophagy to secrete energy-rich metabolites and chemical building blocks that can sustain and support the growth of tumor cells [12].

Some studies also revealed the critical role of oxidative stress in a loss of stromal Cav-1 and the metabolic reprogramming of CAFs [73]. Although Cav-1 loss is caused by elevated ROS levels, Cav-1 downregulation may result in increased oxidative stress, which represents a feed-forward mechanism [12]. Oncogenes drive the onset of the CAF phenotype in adjacent normal fibroblasts by provoking oxidative stress. This oncogene-triggered fibroblast activation is "mirrored" by a loss of stromal Cav-1. These fibroblasts exhibit elevated ROS production and elevated glucose uptake, indicative of a shift toward a glycolytic metabolism [52].

4.5 Conclusion

As a main component of caveolae, Cav-1 is involved in many biological processes that include substance uptake and transmembrane signaling. In addition, Cav-1 can modulate cancer cell proliferation, differentiation, migration, invasion, metastasis, and resistance to anticancer therapy.

Although the role of Cav-1 in cancer is still elusive, the majority of reports suggest that Cav-1 represents an important prognostic marker of tumor development and progression, and independently serves as a predictor of overall survival rate. In addition, through interaction with other biological molecules, Cav-1 modulates stem-like traits. On the other hand, a functional loss of Cav-1 in several tumor cells induces a hyperproliferative state, promoting cell proliferation, survival, and invasiveness as well as acquisition of resistance to cancer therapy [14].

Based on these findings, the roles for Cav-1 in human cancer and its suitability as a prognostic marker are controversial. Cav-1 is likely to function both as a tumor suppressor and as an oncoprotein, depending on the stage of neoplastic transformation and extent of tumor progression (Fig. 4.3). Though Cav-1 appears to be downregulated in early transformed cells, a reexpression or rather upregulation and stabilization through

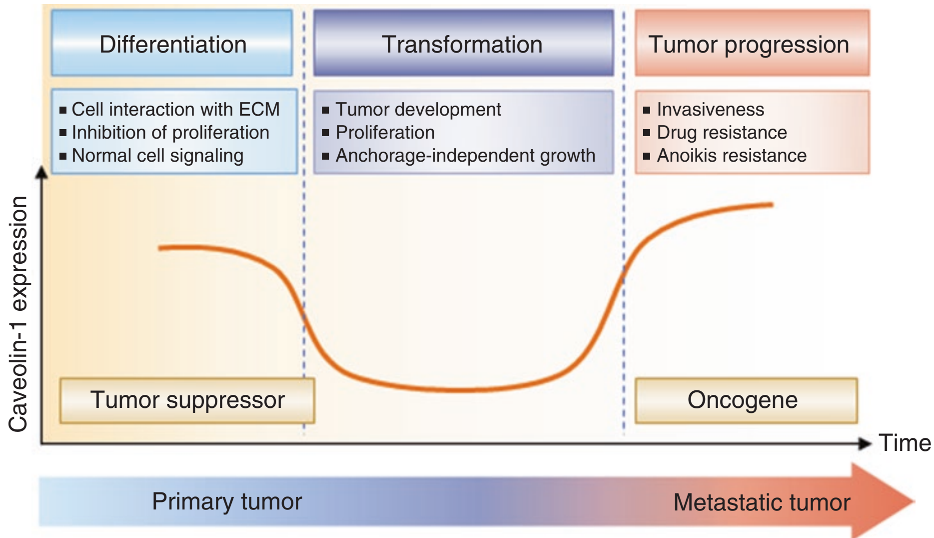


Fig. 4.3 Dual role of Cav-1 in cancer. Cav-1 may function both as a tumor suppressor and as an oncoprotein, depending on the stage of oncogenic transformation and extent of tumor progression. Cav-1 is expressed at relatively high levels in many differentiated cells. During oncogenic transformation, Cav-1 is downregulated, in certain tumors, further progression into a metastatic or drug-resistant form is associated with reexpression of Cav-1. Upregulation of Cav-1 in these tumors is thought to contribute to tumor cell invasiveness and resistance to anoikis, properties that are essential for tumor cell metastasis. Increased Cav-1 has also been associated with the development of drug resistance in tumors

phosphorylation of Cav-1, in later tumor stages, may confer invasiveness, resistance, and survival advantage of multidrug-resistant tumor cells [14].

The differential effects of Cav-1 in tumor development and progression may be related to a different profile of TME components involved in each stage of cancer, particularly in the context of tumor vs. stromal form of Cav-1. Loss of stromal Cav-1 in TME has been frequently associated with poor patient outcomes in diverse malignancies. A characteristic shift in stromal-epithelial Cav-1 in advanced and metastatic tumor stages with a loss of stromal Cav-1 and a concomitant increase in expression of epithelial isoform highlights Cav-1 as being a tissue and stage-specific tumor modulator [14]. A molecular mechanism by which Cav-1 expression is upregulated/restored in more advanced stages of cancer and how Cav-1 deficient CAFs promote this process merit further investigation. Identification and characterization of CAF-derived signaling molecules that mediate the shift in stromal-tumor Cav-1 accumulation during cancer progression will be of particular interest. Another interesting research subject would be elucidation of how metabolic reprogramming of Cav-1 deficient CAFs by CAF-addicted cancer cells is achieved.

Further studies are required to unveil the clinical value of Cav-1 as a prognostic marker and a candidate target for cancer therapy.

Acknowledgment This study was supported by the Global Core Research Center (GCRC) grant (No. 2011-0030001) from the National Research Foundation (NRF) of Republic of Korea.

References

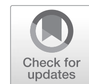
1. Anderson RG (1998) The caveolae membrane system. Annu Rev Biochem 67:199–225
2. Lamaze C, Torrino S (2015) Caveolae and cancer: a new mechanical perspective. Biom J 38:367–379
3. Bender F, Montoya M, Monardes V, Leyton L, Quest AF (2002) Caveolae and caveolae-like membrane domains in cellular signaling and disease: identification of downstream targets for the tumor suppressor protein caveolin-1. Biol Res 35:151–167

4. Couet J, Li S, Okamoto T, Ikezu T, Lisanti MP (1997) Identification of peptide and protein ligands for the caveolin-scaffolding domain. Implications for the interaction of caveolin with caveolae-associated proteins. J Biol Chem 272:6525–6533
5. Li S, Couet J, Lisanti MP (1996) Src tyrosine kinases, Galpha subunits, and H-Ras share a common membrane-anchored scaffolding protein, caveolin. Caveolin binding negatively regulates the auto-activation of Src tyrosine kinases. J Biol Chem 271:29182–29190
6. Tang Z, Scherer PE, Okamoto T, Song K, Chu C, Kohtz DS, Nishimoto I, Lodish HF, Lisanti MP (1996) Molecular cloning of caveolin-3, a novel member of the caveolin gene family expressed predominantly in muscle. J Biol Chem 271:2255–2261
7. Drab M, Verkade P, Elger M, Kasper M, Lohn M, Lauterbach B, Menne J, Lindschau C, Mende F, Luft FC, Schedl A, Haller H, Kurzchalia TV (2001) Loss of caveolae, vascular dysfunction, and pulmonary defects in caveolin-1 gene-disrupted mice. Science 293:2449–2452
8. Galbiati F, Engelman JA, Volonte D, Zhang XL, Minetti C, Li M, Hou H Jr, Kneitz B, Edelmann W, Lisanti MP (2001) Caveolin-3 null mice show a loss of caveolae, changes in the microdomain distribution of the dystrophin-glycoprotein complex, and t-tubule abnormalities. J Biol Chem 276:21425–21433
9. Razani B, Combs TP, Wang XB, Frank PG, Park DS, Russell RG, Li M, Tang B, Jelicks LA, Scherer PE, Lisanti MP (2002) Caveolin-1-deficient mice are lean, resistant to diet-induced obesity, and show hypertriglyceridemia with adipocyte abnormalities. J Biol Chem 277:8635–8647
10. Rothberg KG, Heuser JE, Donzell WC, Ying YS, Glenney JR, Anderson RG (1992) Caveolin, a protein component of caveolae membrane coats. Cell 68:673–682
11. Quest AF, Lobos-Gonzalez L, Nunez S, Sanhueza C, Fernandez JG, Aguirre A, Rodriguez D, Leyton L, Torres V (2013) The caveolin-1 connection to cell death and survival. Curr Mol Med 13:266–281
12. Sotgia F, Martinez-Outschoorn UE, Howell A, Pestell RG, Pavlides S, Lisanti MP (2012) Caveolin-1 and cancer metabolism in the tumor microenvironment: markers, models, and mechanisms. Annu Rev Pathol 7:423–467
13. Nwosu ZC, Ebert MP, Dooley S, Meyer C (2016) Caveolin-1 in the regulation of cell metabolism: a cancer perspective. Mol Cancer 15:71
14. Ketteler J, Klein D (2018) Caveolin-1, cancer and therapy resistance. Int J Cancer 143:2092–2104
15. Qian XL, Pan YH, Huang QY, Shi YB, Huang QY, Hu ZZ, Xiong LX (2019) Caveolin-1: a multifaceted driver of breast cancer progression and its application in clinical treatment. Onco Targets Ther 12:1539–1552
16. Nunez-Wehinger S, Ortiz RJ, Diaz N, Diaz J, Lobos-Gonzalez L, Quest AF (2014) Caveolin-1 in cell migration and metastasis. Curr Mol Med 14:255–274
17. Wang Z, Wang N, Liu P, Peng F, Tang H, Chen Q, Xu R, Dai Y, Lin Y, Xie X, Peng C, Situ H (2015) Caveolin-1, a stress relatedoncotarget, in drug resistance. Oncotarget 6:37135–37150
18. Williams TM, Lisanti MP (2005) Caveolin-1 in oncogenic transformation, cancer, and metastasis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 288:C494–C506
19. Ravid D, Maor S, Werner H, Liscovitch M (2006) Caveolin-1 inhibits anoikis and promotes survival signaling in cancer cells. Adv Enzym Regul 46:163–175
20. Goetz JG, Lajoie P, Wiseman SM, Nabi IR (2008) Caveolin-1 in tumor progression: the good, the bad and the ugly. Cancer Metastasis Rev 27:715–735
21. Nam KH, Lee BL, Park JH, Kim J, Han N, Lee HE, Kim MA, Lee HS, Kim WH (2013) Caveolin 1 expression correlates with poor prognosis and focal adhesion kinase expression in gastric cancer. Pathobiology 80:87–94
22. Ho CC, Huang PH, Huang HY, Chen YH, Yang PC, Hsu SM (2002) Up-regulated caveolin-1 accentuates the metastasis capability of lung adenocarcinoma by inducing filopodia formation. Am J Pathol 161:1647–1656
23. Liang W, Hao Z, Han JL, Zhu DJ, Jin ZF, Xie WL (2014) CAV-1 contributes to bladder cancer progression by inducing epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition. Urol Oncol 32:855–863
24. Kannan A, Krishnan A, Ali M, Subramaniam S, Halagowder D, Sivasithamparam ND (2014) Caveolin-1 promotes gastric cancer progression by up-regulating epithelial to mesenchymal transition by crosstalk of signalling mechanisms under hypoxic condition. Eur J Cancer 50:204–215
25. Annabi B, Lachambre M, Bousquet-Gagnon N, Page M, Gingras D, Beliveau R (2001) Localization of membrane-type 1 matrix metalloproteinase in caveolae membrane domains. Biochem J 353:547–553
26. Cokakli M, Erdal E, Nart D, Yilmaz F, Sagol O, Kilic M, Karademir S, Atabey N (2009) Differential expression of Caveolin-1 in hepatocellular carcinoma: correlation with differentiation state, motility and invasion. BMC Cancer 9:65
27. Buongiorno P, Bapat B (2005) Rho GTPases and cancer. Prog Mol Subcell Biol 40:29–53
28. Narumiya S, Tanji M, Ishizaki T (2009) Rho signaling, ROCK and mDia1, in transformation, metastasis and invasion. Cancer Metastasis Rev 28:65–76
29. Arpaia E, Blaser H, Quintela-Fandino M, Duncan G, Leong HS, Ablack A, Nambiar SC, Lind EF, Silvester J, Fleming CK, Rufini A, Tusche MW, Brustle A, Ohashi PS, Lewis JD, Mak TW (2012) The interaction between caveolin-1 and Rho-GTPases promotes metastasis by controlling the expression of alpha5-integrin and the activation of Src, Ras and Erk. Oncogene 31:884–896
30. Zhao J, Guan JL (2009) Signal transduction by focal adhesion kinase in cancer. Cancer Metastasis Rev 28:35–49
31. Joshi B, Strugnell SS, Goetz JG, Kojic LD, Cox ME, Griffith OL, Chan SK, Jones SJ, Leung SP,

Masoudi H, Leung S, Wiseman SM, Nabi IR (2008) Phosphorylated caveolin-1 regulates Rho/ROCK-dependent focal adhesion dynamics and tumor cell migration and invasion. Cancer Res 68:8210–8220

32. Zou W, Ma X, Hua W, Chen B, Cai G (2015) Caveolin-1 mediates chemoresistance in cisplatin-resistant ovarian cancer cells by targeting apoptosis through the Notch-1/Akt/NF-κB pathway. Oncol Rep 34:3256–3263
33. Yongsanguanchai N, Pongrakhananon V, Mutirangura A, Rojanasakul Y, Chanvorachote P (2015) Nitric oxide induces cancer stem cell-like phenotypes in human lung cancer cells. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 308:C89–C100
34. Yoon HJ, Kim DH, Kim SJ, Jang JH, Surh YJ (2019) Src-mediated phosphorylation, ubiquitination and degradation of Caveolin-1 promotes breast cancer cell stemness. Cancer Lett 449:8–19
35. Engelman JA, Wykoff CC, Yasuhara S, Song KS, Okamoto T, Lisanti MP (1997) Recombinant expression of caveolin-1 in oncogenically transformed cells abrogates anchorage-independent growth. J Biol Chem 272:16374–16381
36. Fiucci G, Ravid D, Reich R, Liscovitch M (2002) Caveolin-1 inhibits anchorage-independent growth, anoikis and invasiveness in MCF-7 human breast cancer cells. Oncogene 21:2365–2375
37. Koleske AJ, Baltimore D, Lisanti MP (1995) Reduction of caveolin and caveolae in oncogenically transformed cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92:1381–1385
38. Lee SW, Reimer CL, Oh P, Campbell DB, Schnitzer JE (1998) Tumor cell growth inhibition by caveolin re-expression in human breast cancer cells. Oncogene 16:1391–1397
39. Park DS, Razani B, Lasorella A, Schreiber-Agus N, Pestell RG, Iavarone A, Lisanti MP (2001) Evidence that Myc isoforms transcriptionally repress caveolin-1 gene expression via an INR-dependent mechanism. Biochemistry 40:3354–3362
40. Sagara Y, Mimori K, Yoshinaga K, Tanaka F, Nishida K, Ohno S, Inoue H, Mori M (2004) Clinical significance of Caveolin-1, Caveolin-2 and HER2/neu mRNA expression in human breast cancer. Br J Cancer 91:959–965
41. Williams TM, Medina F, Badano I, Hazan RB, Hutchinson J, Muller WJ, Chopra NG, Scherer PE, Pestell RG, Lisanti MP (2004) Caveolin-1 gene disruption promotes mammary tumorigenesis and dramatically enhances lung metastasis in vivo. Role of Cav-1 in cell invasiveness and matrix metalloproteinase (MMP-2/9) secretion. J Biol Chem 279:51630–51646
42. Savage K, Lambros MB, Robertson D, Jones RL, Jones C, Mackay A, James M, Hornick JL, Pereira EM, Milanezi F, Fletcher CD, Schmitt FC, Ashworth A, Reis-Filho JS (2007) Caveolin 1 is overexpressed and amplified in a subset of basal-like and metaplastic breast carcinomas: a morphologic, ultrastructural, immunohistochemical, and in situ hybridization analysis. Clin Cancer Res 13:90–101
43. Bender FC, Reymond MA, Bron C, Quest AF (2000) Caveolin-1 levels are down-regulated in human colon tumors, and ectopic expression of caveolin-1 in colon carcinoma cell lines reduces cell tumorigenicity. Cancer Res 60:5870–5878
44. Nimri L, Barak H, Graeve L, Schwartz B (2013) Restoration of caveolin-1 expression suppresses growth, membrane-type-4 metalloproteinase expression and metastasis-associated activities in colon cancer cells. Mol Carcinog 52:859–870
45. Shi L, Chen XM, Wang L, Zhang L, Chen Z (2007) Expression of caveolin-1 in mucoepidermoid carcinoma of the salivary glands: correlation with vascular endothelial growth factor, microvessel density, and clinical outcome. Cancer 109:1523–1531
46. Zhang H, Su L, Muller S, Tighiouart M, Xu Z, Zhang X, Shin HJ, Hunt J, Sun SY, Shin DM, Chen ZG (2008) Restoration of caveolin-1 expression suppresses growth and metastasis of head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Br J Cancer 99:1684–1694
47. Lin M, DiVito MM, Merajver SD, Boyanapalli M, van Golen KL (2005) Regulation of pancreatic cancer cell migration and invasion by RhoC GTPase and caveolin-1. Mol Cancer 4:21
48. Friedrich T, Richter B, Gaiser T, Weiss C, Janssen KP, Einwachter H, Schmid RM, Ebert MP, Burgermeister E (2013) Deficiency of caveolin-1 in *Apc*$^{min/+}$ mice promotes colorectal tumorigenesis. Carcinogenesis 34:2109–2118
49. Capozza F, Williams TM, Schubert W, McClain S, Bouzahzah B, Sotgia F, Lisanti MP (2003) Absence of caveolin-1 sensitizes mouse skin to carcinogen-induced epidermal hyperplasia and tumor formation. Am J Pathol 162:2029–2039
50. Capozza F, Trimmer C, Castello-Cros R, Katiyar S, Whitaker-Menezes D, Follenzi A, Crosariol M, Llaverias G, Sotgia F, Pestell RG, Lisanti MP (2012) Genetic ablation of Cav1 differentially affects melanoma tumor growth and metastasis in mice: role of Cav1 inShh heterotypic signaling and transendothelial migration. Cancer Res 72:2262–2274. Trimmer C, Bonuccelli G, Katiyar S, Sotgia F, Pestell RG, Lisanti MP, Capozza E (2013) Cav1 suppresses tumor growth and metastasis in a murine model of cutaneous SCC through modulation of MAPK/AP-1 activation. Am J Pathol 182:992–1004
51. Lin MI, Yu J, Murata T, Sessa WC (2007) Caveolin-1-deficient mice have increased tumor microvascular permeability, angiogenesis, and growth. Cancer Res 67:2849–2856
52. Lisanti MP, Martinez-Outschoorn UE, Sotgia F (2013) Oncogenes induce the cancer-associated fibroblast phenotype: metabolic symbiosis and "fibroblast addiction" are new therapeutic targets for drug discovery. Cell Cycle 12:2723–2732
53. Pavlides S, Whitaker-Menezes D, Castello-Cros R, Flomenberg N, Witkiewicz AK, Frank PG, Casimiro MC, Wang C, Fortina P, Addya S, Pestell RG, Martinez-Outschoorn UE, Sotgia F, Lisanti MP (2009) The reverse Warburg effect: aerobic glycolysis

in cancer associated fibroblasts and the tumor stroma. Cell Cycle 8:3984–4001
54. Celus W, Di Conza G, Oliveira AI, Ehling M, Costa BM, Wenes M, Mazzone M (2017) Loss of caveolin-1 in metastasis-associated macrophages drives lung metastatic growth through increased angiogenesis. Cell Rep 21:2842–2854
55. Qian N, Ueno T, Kawaguchi-Sakita N, Kawashima M, Yoshida N, Mikami Y, Wakasa T, Shintaku M, Tsuyuki S, Inamoto T, Toi M (2011) Prognostic significance of tumor/stromal caveolin-1 expression in breast cancer patients. Cancer Sci 102:1590–1596
56. Kamposioras K, Tsimplouli CV, Anthoney A, Daoukopoulou A, Papandreou CN, Sakellaridis N, Vassilopoulos G, Potamianos SP, Liakouli V, Migneco G, Del Galdo F, Dimas K (2019) Silencing of caveolin-1 in fibroblasts as opposed to epithelial tumor cells results in increased tumor growth rate and chemoresistance in a human pancreatic cancer model. Int J Oncol 54:537–549
57. Liang YN, Liu Y, Wang L, Yao G, Li X, Meng X, Wang F, Li M, Tong D, Geng J (2018) Combined caveolin-1 and epidermal growth factor receptor expression as a prognostic marker for breast cancer. Oncol Lett 15:9271
58. Alshenawy HA, Ali MA (2013) Differential caveolin-1 expression in colon carcinoma and its relation to E-cadherin-β-catenin complex. Ann Diagn Pathol 17:476–482
59. Di Vizio D, Morello M, Sotgia F, Pestell RG, Freeman MR, Lisanti MP (2009) An absence of stromal caveolin-1 is associated with advanced prostate cancer, metastatic disease and epithelial Akt activation. Cell Cycle 8:2420–2424
60. Kim S, Lee Y, Seo JE, Cho KH, Chung JH (2008) Caveolin-1 increases basal and TGF-beta1-induced expression of type I procollagen through PI-3 kinase/Akt/mTOR pathway in human dermal fibroblasts. Cell Signal 20:1313–1319
61. Wang S, Wang N, Zheng Y, Zhang J, Zhang F, Wang Z (2017) Caveolin-1: an oxidative stress-related target for cancer prevention. Oxid Med Cell Longev 2017:7454031
62. Yamao T, Yamashita YI, Yamamura K, Nakao Y, Tsukamoto M, Nakagawa S, Okabe H, Hayashi H, Imai K, Baba H (2019) Cellular senescence, represented by expression of caveolin-1, in cancer-associated fibroblasts promotes tumor invasion in pancreatic cancer. Ann Surg Oncol 26:1552–1559
63. Eliyatkin N, Aktas S, Diniz G, Ozgur HH, Ekin ZY, Kupelioglu A (2018) Expression of stromal caveolin-1 may be a predictor for aggressive behaviour of breast cancer. Pathol Oncol Res 24:59–65
64. Shimizu K, Kirita K, Aokage K, Kojima M, Hishida T, Kuwata T, Fujii S, Ochiai A, Funai K, Yoshida J, Tsuboi M, Ishii G (2017) Clinicopathological significance of caveolin-1 expression by cancer-associated fibroblasts in lung adenocarcinoma. J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 143:321–328
65. Frank PG, Woodman SE, Park DS, Lisanti MP (2003) Caveolin, caveolae, and endothelial cell function. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 23:1161–1168
66. DeWever J, Frerart F, Bouzin C, Baudelet C, Ansiaux R, Sonveaux P, Gallez B, Dessy C, Feron O (2007) Caveolin-1 is critical for the maturation of tumor blood vessels through the regulation of both endothelial tube formation and mural cell recruitment. Am J Pathol 171:1619–1628
67. Xu H, Zhang L, Chen W, Xu J, Zhang R, Liu R, Zhou L, Hu W, Ju R, Lee C, Lu W, Kumar A, Li X, Tang Z (2017) Inhibitory effect of caveolin-1 in vascular endothelial cells, pericytes and smooth muscle cells. Oncotarget 8:76165–76173
68. Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang ZM, Messi ML, Olson JD, Mintz A, Delbono O (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307:C25–C38
69. Sundberg C, Friman T, Hecht LE, Kuhl C, Solomon KR (2009) Two different PDGF-receptor cohorts in human pericytes mediate distinct biological endpoints. Am J Pathol 175:171–189
70. Fu Y, Moore XL, Lee MK, Fernández-Rojo MA, Parat MO, Parton RG, Meikle PJ, Sviridov D, Chin-Dusting JP (2012) Caveolin-1 plays a critical role in the differentiation of monocytes into macrophages. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 32:e117–e125
71. Takamura N, Yamaguchi Y, Watanabe Y, Asami M, Komitsu N, Aihara M (2019) Downregulated Caveolin-1 expression in circulating monocytes may contribute to the pathogenesis of psoriasis. Sci Rep 9:125
72. Jiang E, Xu Z, Wang M, Yan T, Huang C, Zhou X, Liu Q, Wang L, Chen Y, Wang H, Liu K, Shao Z, Shang Z (2019) Tumoral microvesicle-activated glycometabolic reprogramming in fibroblasts promotes the progression of oral squamous cell carcinoma. FASEB J 33:5690–5703
73. Sotgia F, Martinez-Outschoorn UE, Pavlides S, Howell A, Pestell RG, Lisanti MP (2011) Understanding the Warburg effect and the prognostic value of stromal caveolin-1 as a marker of a lethal tumor microenvironment. Breast Cancer Res 13:213



5 Exosomes: Novel Players of Therapy Resistance in Neuroblastoma

Heather Richard, Arya Pokhrel, Srinivas Chava, Anup Pathania, Santharam S. Katta, and Kishore B. Challagundla

Abstract

Neuroblastoma is a solid tumor (a lump or mass), often found in the small glands on top of the kidneys, and most commonly affects infants and young children. Among neuroblastomas, high-risk neuroblastomas are very aggressive and resistant to most kinds of intensive treatment. Immunotherapy, which uses the immune system to fight against cancer, has shown great promise in treating many types of cancer. However, high-risk neuroblastoma is often resistant to this approach as well. Recent studies revealed that small vesicles known as exosomes, which are envelopes, could deliver a cargo of small RNA molecules and provide communication between neuroblastoma cells and the surrounding cells and trigger metastasis and resistance to immunotherapy. In this chapter, we describe the role of exosomes and small RNA molecules in the metastasis and regression of neuroblastoma and the potential therapeutic approaches to combat this menace.

Keywords

Neuroblastoma · Exosomes · Non-coding RNAs · MYCN · Metastasis · Extracellular vesicles · Multivesicular bodies · Exosome biogenesis · Tumor microenvironment · Tumor-associated monocytes · Pericytes · Disialoganglioside · Antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity · Chemotherapy · Immunotherapy

Heather Richard and Arya Pokhrel contributed equally.

H. Richard · A. Pokhrel
High School Alliance Health Sciences Enrichment Program, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

S. Chava · A. Pathania
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology & The Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

S. S. Katta
REVA University, Rukmini Knowledge Park Kattigenahalli, Yelahanka, Bangalore, Karnataka, India

K. B. Challagundla (✉)
Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology & The Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA

The Children's Health Research Institute, University of Nebraska Medical Center, Omaha, NE, USA
e-mail: kishore.challagundla@unmc.edu

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_5

Abbreviations

3′-UTR	Three prime untranslated region
ADCC	Antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity
AURKA	Aurora kinase A
EFS	Event-free survival
ESCRT	Endosomal-sorting complex required for transport
GD2	Disialoganglioside
IL-15	Interleukin-15
IL-2	Interleukin-2
ILV	Intraluminal vesicle
MAb	Monoclonal antibody
miRNA	MicroRNA
mRNA	Messenger RNA
MSCs	Mesenchymal stem/stromal cells
MVBs	Multivesicular bodies
MYCN	v-myc myelocytomatosis viral-related oncogene, neuroblastoma-derived
NEDD4	Neuronal precursor cell-expressed developmentally downregulated 4
NF-κB	Nuclear factor-kappa B
NK	Natural killer
PCR	Polymerase chain reaction
PNTs	Peripheral neuroblastic tumors
RNA	Ribonucleic acid
TERF1	Telomeric repeat-binding factor 1
TGFβ 1	Transforming growth factor beta 1
TGFβR1	Transforming growth factor beta receptor 1
TGFβR2	Transforming growth factor beta receptor 2
TLR8	Toll-like receptor 8

5.1 Neuroblastoma

Neuroblastoma is an embryonal tumor of the autonomic nervous system. This means that the origin of a cell is preceded to be developing immaturely in the neural-crest tissues [26, 29]. Neuroblastoma is the most common solid tumor found in infants and children. They account for almost 8–10% of all childhood tumors. The median age of diagnosis with neuroblastoma is 17 months [22]. Almost 15% of all deaths that are related to this cancer are in pediatrics [26, 29]. Almost 500 new cases are reported every year [26, 29]. 90% of cases are usually diagnosed before the age of five, and 30% of those are within the first year of life [11]. Neuroblastoma has been found to be more prevalent in males compared to females [26, 29], and the occurrence of neuroblastoma is unusual in adolescents and adults. 95% of all neuroblastomas occur in children under five years of age [11]. However, cases have been detected pre-birth, during an ultrasound examination. Many patients diagnosed with neuroblastoma have shown to undergo immense relapse of neuroblastoma. In infants, the prognosis is very good, while it is somewhat at a disadvantage in older children. The patient outcome with the diagnosis of neuroblastoma has improved over the last 30 years. The 5-year survival rates in low- and medium-risk patients vary from 52% to 74% [26]. There is a prediction that around 50–60% of patients diagnosed with high-risk neuroblastoma will relapse [26]. The tumors begin in tissues of the sympathetic nervous system. This may cause a mass in the neck, chest, abdomen, or pelvis. A mass can either cause no symptoms or may progress into a tumor that causes severe illness. The diagnosis of neuroblastoma is 10.2 cases per million children under 15 years of age, and it is the most common cancer diagnosed during the first year of life [21, 26].

5.2 Exosomes

Exosomes are small extracellular vesicles secreted from cells and have lately attracted the attention of researchers worldwide owing to their critical role in intercellular signaling and disease. These are nanoparticles ranging from approximately 30–100 nm in size [41]. Exosomes are released out of the cell into the extracellular surrounding after multivesicular bodies (MVBs) fuse with the cellular membrane. All biological fluids tested have been shown to contain vesicles, including in vitro grown cell lines, which have also been shown to release vesicles to different extents. Canonical exosomes display a particular

biconcave or cup-like shape when produced by artificially drying during preparation, while they appear spheroid in solution under a transmission electron microscope [31]. Typically, they have a density range from 1.13 g/mL (B cell-derived exosomes) [31] up to 1.19 g/mL (epithelial cell-derived exosomes) [31] on sucrose gradients.

Exosome biogenesis begins within the endosomal system. The early endosomes grow into multivesicular bodies (MVBs). During this process, the endosomal membrane encloses to generate intraluminal vesicles (ILVs) in the lumen of the organelles [15, 21]. The protein sorting of ILVs is a highly regulated mechanism that is dependent on the endosomal sorting complex required for transport (ESCRT) machinery [24] or ESCRT-independent mechanism [16]. Both pathways are not entirely separated. ESCRT has four different protein complexes: ESCRT-0, ESCRT-1, ESCRT-2, and ESCRT-3 [32].

The ESCRT mechanism is initiated by recognition and sequestration of ubiquitinated proteins to specific domains of the endosomal membrane via ubiquitin binding subunits of ESCRT-0. After interaction with ESCRT-I and -II complexes, the total complex will then combine with ESCRT-III, a protein complex that is involved in promoting the budding processes. Finally, following cleaving the buds to form ILVs, the ESCRT-III complex separates from the MVB membrane with energy supplied by the sorting protein Vps4 [32]. Despite the controversy of whether exosome release is an ESCRT-regulated mechanism, different ESCRT components and ubiquitinated proteins have already been identified in exosomes isolated from various cell types. Additionally, the typical exosomal protein Alix, which is associated with several ESCRT (TSG101 and CHMP4) proteins, has been reported to participate in endosomal membrane budding and abscission, as well as exosomal cargo selection via interaction with syntenin [32]. These observations led to a hypothesis implicating ESCRT function in exosomal biogenesis. ESCRT-independent manner depends on raft-based microdomains for the lateral segregation of cargo within the endosomal membrane. These microdomains are thought to be highly enriched in sphingomyelinases, from which ceramides can be formed by hydrolytic removal of the phosphocholine moiety [32]. Ceramides are known to induce lateral phase separation and coalescence of microdomains in model membranes. Moreover, the cone-shaped structure of ceramide might cause a spontaneous negative curvature of the endosomal membrane, thereby promoting domain-induced budding.

Consequently, this ceramide-dependent mechanism emphasizes the key role of exosomal lipids in exosome biogenesis [32]. Proteins, such as tetraspanins, also participate in exosome biogenesis and protein loading. Tetraspanin-enriched microdomains (TEMs) are ubiquitous specialized membrane platforms for compartmentalization of receptors and signaling proteins in the plasma membrane [32]. It has been shown that TEMs, together with tetraspanin CD81, plays a key role in sorting target receptors and intracellular components toward exosomes [32]. Exosomes play a critical role in physiological and pathological settings, strategies that interfere with the release of exosomes; and the impairment of exosome-mediated cell-to-cell communication could potentially be used in the future [32]. The general structure of the exosome molecule is given in Fig. 5.1.

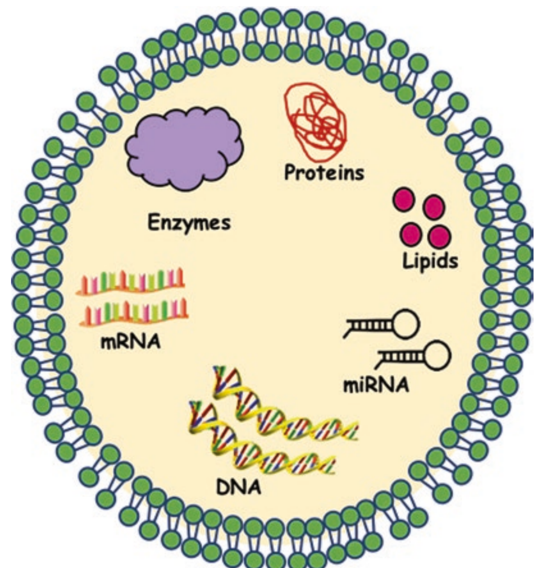


Fig. 5.1 General structure of exosome molecule

5.3 Neuroblastoma and Exosomes

The majority of neuroblastoma deaths occur within two years of diagnosis due to the aggressiveness of the cancer. Exosomes are released by many cell types and transfer their molecular cargo to the target cells, thereby modulating the signaling pathways in the recipient cells. Fibroblasts, endothelial cells, and infiltrating immune cells are the major cell types within a tumor microenvironment that interacts with tumor cells by exosome signaling [7]. The consequences of these interactions depend on the origin of the exosomes determining the exosome cargo. Stressful conditions such as hypoxia, starvation, and acidosis increase exosome release from malignant cells leading to tumor microenvironment alteration and expansion, which subsequently results in tumor progression. Several pieces of evidence show that the major mechanism involved in tumor progression is the role of tumor-derived exosomes in cellular communication. Cancer cell-derived exosomes operate numerous functions. These include angiogenesis, anti-tumor immune responses, and metastatic ability, whereas the non-cancer cell-derived exosomes function by promoting the inhibition of malignant cells [5, 25, 27]. A transmission electron microscopy image of the exosome, showing 95-nm size, enclosed by a lipid bilayer, isolated from neuroblastoma (CHLA-255) cell culture supernatant is given in Fig. 5.2.

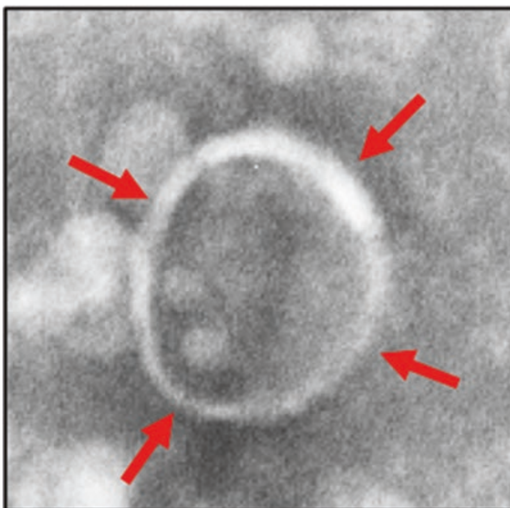


Fig. 5.2 A transmission electron microscopy image of the exosome, showing 95-nm size, enclosed by a lipid bilayer, isolated from neuroblastoma (CHLA-255) cell culture supernatant. Scale: 100 nm

Nearly 20–30% of neuroblastoma cases are associated with the amplification of N-Myc oncogene, which are considered as high risk. Even though it is known that exosomes secreted from N-Myc-amplified neuroblastoma cells contain a tumor-specific signature, it is not known whether exosomes derived from N-Myc-amplified neuroblastoma cells can transfer the aggressive phenotype including chemoresistance between the cells. To test this, exosomes were isolated from derived N-Myc-amplified cancer cells and added to the non-Myc-amplified cell culture, and their properties studied. Addition of exosomes to the non-N-Myc-amplified cells induced migration, colony-forming abilities, and protected the cells against doxorubicin-induced apoptosis. This suggests that exosomes derived from N-Myc-amplified cancer cells can transfer the aggressive phenotype to the neighboring cells, thereby aiding in cancer progression. Proteomic analysis of N-Myc-amplified cancer cell exosomes showed enrichment of TGS101, FlOT1, and VPS35. In addition, exosomes of N-Myc-amplified cells are also enriched in signaling proteins such as NEDD4, β-catenin, and RhoA [10, 14].

In addition to proteins, exosomes carry various molecules, including mRNAs, DNA, and microRNAs (miRNAs). MiRNAs play a significant role in the regulation of genes. MiRNAs work by inhibiting the translation of messenger-RNAs (mRNAs) or inducing mRNA breakdown by binding to the 3′-untranslated region (UTR) of the mRNAs [6]. The primary function of the miRNAs is the downregulation of gene expression. Recent studies on NB cell line exosomes explored the several miRNAs in them, and functional studies of these miRNAs revealed their profound influence on the target cells. Challagundla et al. purified exosomes from neuroblastoma cell lines (SK-N-B(E)2, CHLA-255, and IMR-32) and quantified the content of miR-

21, miR-29a, and miR-155 by quantitative real-time PCR. Among these miRs, miR-21 and miR-29a are implicated in inflammatory reactions in lung cancer; miR-155 is induced during macrophage inflammatory response. In NBL cell line exosomes, miR-21P has been shown to be the top represented miRNA [7]. Monocytes on co-culture with the neuroblastoma cell lines revealed that miR-21 is transferred to human monocytes through exosomes. In monocytes, miR-21 induces upregulation of miR-155 levels in a Toll-like receptor-8 (TLR8)-dependent manner, and miR-155 is transferred from monocytes to neuroblastoma cells through exocytic vesicles. Exosomal targeting of miR-155 in NBL cell lines leads to the downregulation of TERF1 mRNA, an inhibitor of telomerase, thereby leading to increased telomerase activity. Higher telomerase activity is commonly associated with chemotherapy resistance in neuroblastoma patients through a novel exosomic miR-21/TLR8-NF-κB/miR-155/TERF1 signaling pathway [7]. The functional transfer of exosomal miRNAs from neuroblastoma cell to the surrounding monocyte and the development of chemotherapy resistance are given in Fig. 5.3.

Pericytes are a type of fibroblast-like cells, capable of tumor homing and constitute one of the main components of the tumor microenvironment. Pericytes were first named as adventitial cells by Rouget in the nineteenth century and named as pericyte by Zimmermann in 1923. Pericytes are located within the basement membrane of the on-blood vessel walls, thus regulating blood flow, blood vessel permeability, and stabilization of the vascular wall. However, how many types of pericytes present and their role on the development of angiogenesis are not known until Birbrair et al. discovered a mechanistic approach in 2014 using a series of in vitro and in vivo experimentation involving a double transgenic Nestin-GFP/NG2-DsRed mice [4]. The authors identified two pericyte populations: type 1 pericytes expressing Nestin-GFP(-)/NG2-DsRed(+)] and type 2 pericytes expressing Nestin-GFP(+)/NG2-DsRed(+). These pericyte populations were functionally characterized using several in vitro assays and confirmed that type 2 pericytes, but not type 1, exhibit angio-

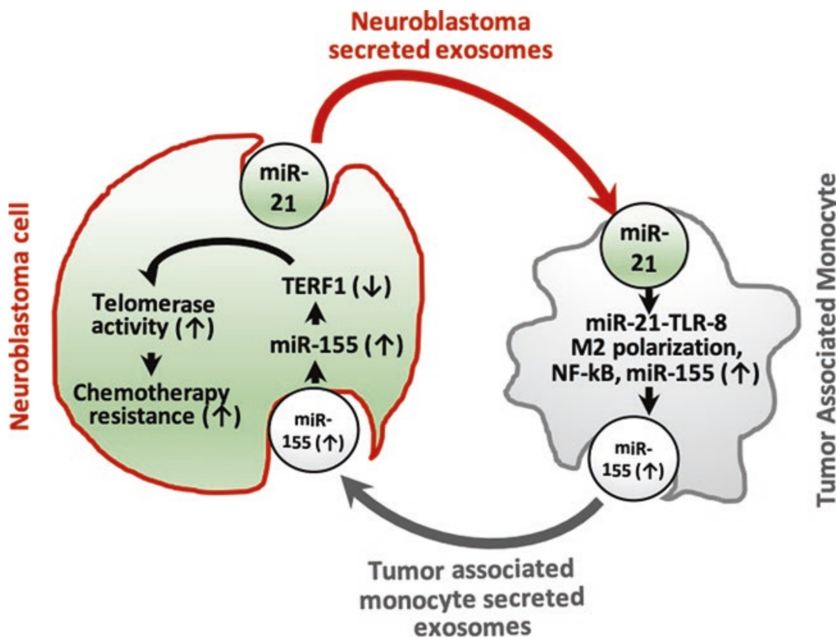


Fig. 5.3 A model depicting the transfer of exosomal miRNAs from neuroblastoma cell to the surrounding monocyte and the development of chemotherapy resistance

genic potential and were recruited during tumor angiogenesis, raising more questions on the potential role of exosomes secreted from pericytes within the tumor microenvironment [4].

In neuroblastoma, cancer cells modulate the tumor microenvironment and play a role in immune escape mechanisms and drug resistance. Neviani et al. have shown that interleukin-15 (IL-15)-activated natural killer (NK) cells secrete exosomes, which exhibit cytotoxicity against MYCN-amplified neuroblastoma cells. The cytotoxic potential of these exosomes was partly dependent upon the expression of miR-186. Interestingly, authors have shown that miR-186 has been shown to be downregulated in high-risk neuroblastoma patients, and its lower levels are a poor prognostic factor. MiR-186 ectopic expression has been shown to downregulate the expression of neuroblastoma oncogenes – MYCN, AURKA, TGFβR1, and TGFβR2. In addition, ectopic expression of miR-186 in MYCN-amplified neuroblastoma cell lines inhibits its growth and migration. Targeted delivery of miR-186 to MYCN-amplified neuroblastoma or NK cells resulted in inhibition of neuroblastoma tumorigenic potential and prevented the TGFβ1-dependent inhibition of NK cells. Neviani et al. have shown targeted delivery of miR-186 in high-risk neuroblastoma is practicable and may lead to an inhibition of tumor growth and spreading [28]. The discovery that NK exosomes are cytotoxic and have their own killing ability even in an immunosuppressive microenvironment supports the belief of including ex vivo derived NK exosomes as a potential future benefit alongside the NK cell-based immunotherapy [28]. A schematic model of releasing exosomes into extracellular space is given in Fig. 5.4.

Most of the studies on exosomes' role in neuroblastoma are based on cell culture experiments, but studies on human neuroblastoma patient exosomes were lacking. To investigate the functions of tumor-derived exosomal miRNAs in neuroblastoma patients in progression and migration of neuroblastoma cells, Ma et al. utilized plasma-derived exosomes and carried out differential exosomal miRNA expression profiles [23]. Ma et al. identified that the expression of hsa-miR199a-3p is significantly upregulated, and strongly correlates with the severity in neuroblastoma patients. Exosomal hsa-miR199a-3p promotes tumor proliferation and migration via decreasing neuronal precursor cell-expressed developmentally downregulated 4 (NEDD4) expression in neuroblastoma. Ma et al. have shown that hsa-miR199a-3p may inhibit NEDD4 expression by binding to the 366–373 site of the 3′-UTR of NEDD4 mRNA in neuroblastoma cells, thereby miR-199a-3p promotes proliferation and facilitates migration of NB cells by regulating NEDD4 expression [23]. This work has shown that exosomal hsa-miR-199a-3p can be utilized as a fast, easy, and non-invasive detection biomarker and contribute to the development of novel therapeutic strategies for neuroblastoma in the future. Thus, the content analysis of the exosomes reveals their function in tumor microenvironment progression in malignancies, and this will further lead to developing more efficient micro vesicle-based strategies for cancer prognosis and therapy.

5.4 Treatment Options for Neuroblastoma

Treatment for neuroblastoma depends on the classification of the tumor. There are three broad categories: Low-risk, intermediate-risk, and high-risk [7–9]. Low-risk patients include those with localized tumors and tumors that show characteristics that indicate the tumor is not likely to come back. Low-risk patients are subject to minimal treatment or none at all [9]. Surgery may be the best option for these patients if the tumor is small enough to remove easily. Chemotherapy may be used as a treatment post-surgery, but most often, the patients are monitored for recurrence [9]. Chemotherapy used in low-risk patients includes a mixture of carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and etoposide most often [9]. Infants with very small tumors are usually monitored because these tumors are likely to disappear on their own without treatment [9].

Patients are classified as having intermediate risk if the tumor shows different characteristics,

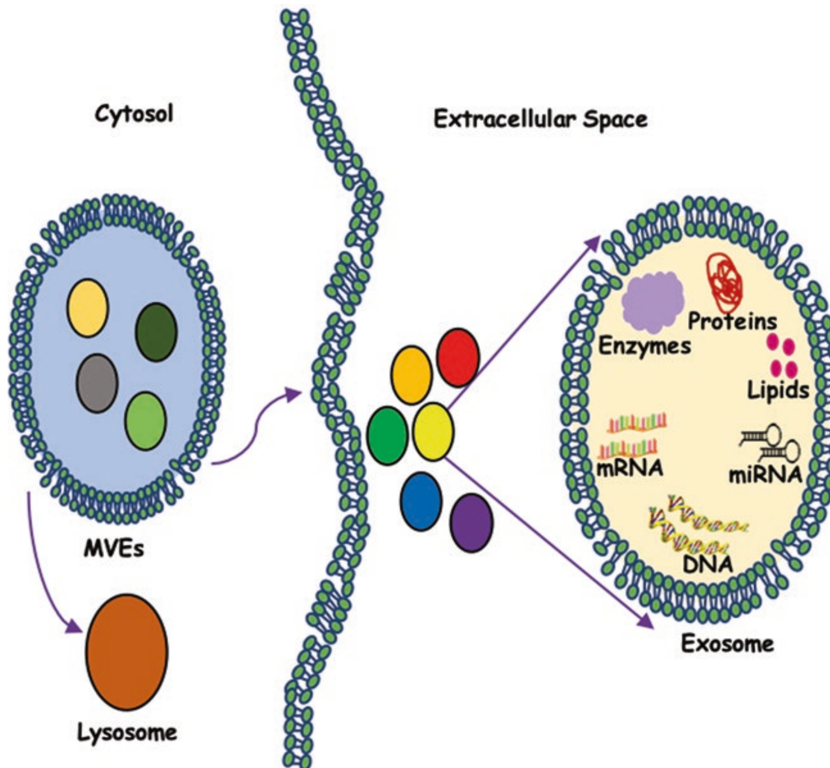


Fig. 5.4 A schematic model showing the release of exosomes into extracellular space

if the tumor is too large to fully resect, or if the tumor is causing damage to other organs [3]. These patients are given cycles of chemotherapy to initially shrink the size of the tumor. The amount of cycles depends on the size and severity of the tumor [3]. The typical combination of chemotherapy in this group is similar to low-risk patients. Carboplatin, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and etoposide are generally used [30]. Once the tumor size has been decreased, surgery is the next step. In some cases, surgery is done prior to chemotherapy, to target the remaining tumor not resected in surgery [30]. Radiation is rarely used in the intermediate-risk group [3].

High-risk neuroblastoma patients have characteristics of metastasis or aggressive features of cancer cells [12, 17]. There are many ways to treat this category of neuroblastoma, and the most effective way has yet to be determined [12, 17]. The most common protocols include multiple phases of treatment: induction, surgery, consolidation, and maintenance [12, 17]. The induction phase focuses on reducing the size of the tumor and removing as much of the tumor as it is able in a quick manner [12, 17]. High dosages of chemotherapy are used, and the most common medications include cisplatin, etoposide, vincristine, cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and topotecan in a variety of alternating combinations [35]. Surgery is performed next to remove large amounts of the tumor [35]. After the surgery is performed, the next round of treatment begins to eliminate the body of any remaining cancer cells. Consolidation involves both chemotherapy and stem cell transplants. Research has shown that patients who are given high-dose chemotherapy followed by a stem cell transplant, have better results than straight chemotherapy [34, 35]. Stem cell transplant is autologous, so stem cells are harvested during the induction phase of therapy [34]. Also, stem cell transplants given back to back have shown promising results [34]. Once chemotherapy and the stem cell transplant are complete, radiation is done to the pri-

mary tumor site as well as any places of previous metastasis [35]. This ensures any left behind remnants are eliminated. The final phase in the treatment is maintenance, which is performed to prevent patients from relapse [35]. Treatments in this phase include medications to stimulate the immune system or to mature tumor cells [35]. Retinoid therapy using 13-cis-retinoic acid (isotretinoin) is most common, along with other immunotherapies [35]. Retinoid therapy causes cancer cells to differentiate into mature cells. Maintenance includes heavy monitoring of tumor relapse. Relapse occurs in approximately 50% of high-risk patients and 5–15% in low- and intermediate-risk patients. Normally, relapse occurs within the first few years after the initial treatment [35].

5.5 Neuroblastoma and Immunotherapy

Several studies have shown that the neuroblastoma microenvironment is immunosuppressive and tumor growth promoting. In recent times, many strategies are devised and tested to overcome this, and they are being developed to promote anti-tumor immunotherapy. The understanding of the biology of immunotherapy of neuroblastoma has increased a lot over the past 40 years [7, 8, 33]. Monoclonal antibody (MAb)-based immunotherapy, along with the discoveries in immune biology, has revolutionized the immunotherapeutic field to design more effective therapies for the treatment of high-risk neuroblastoma. These will be combined with new cytotoxic drugs and radiation therapies to improve survival and quality of life for patients with high-risk neuroblastoma [7, 8, 33].

Current therapy options for neuroblastoma are separated into three sections: induction, consolidation, and post-consolidation or maintenance therapy [33]. Treatment includes chemotherapy, surgical resection, and high-dose chemotherapy. Also included are stem cell rescue, radiation therapy, immunotherapy, and isotretinoin. The current treatment lasts approximately 18 months. The induction phase includes chemotherapy, stem cell collection, and surgery. The consolidation phase includes high dosages of chemotherapy and radiation therapy. The maintenance phase includes immunotherapy and retinoid therapy.

In immunotherapy, the patient's immune cells are used to recognize and destroy cancer cells. Monoclonal antibodies are used to recognize and attack a very particular neuroblastoma target cell [30]. Anti-GD2 (disialoganglioside) mAbs are a part of standard immunotherapy for high-risk neuroblastoma [38]. Dinutuximab (Unituxin) is a humanized monoclonal antibody that recognizes and binds to GD2 on neuroblastoma membranes; these antibodies in turn bind to Fc-receptors on the surface of granulocytes and NK cells and eliminate neuroblastoma cells through antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC) and cell-mediated toxicity. Dinutuximab is administered along with cytokine, interleukin-2 (IL-2). These will help the child's immune system seek out and demolish neuroblastoma cells. This is a new and advanced form of immunotherapy for children diagnosed with high-risk neuroblastoma. This antibody is usually given after all treatment options are exhausted, and a stem cell transplant has been done.

When diagnosed with high-risk neuroblastoma, it requires intensive treatment to achieve the current survival rate of slightly less than 50% [7, 8, 33]. With further research and a more robust understanding of the biology of neuroblastoma, there will be a way to identify factors that change the outcomes of patients who are diagnosed with this disease. Current research is focusing on further intensification of therapy to improve outcomes and evaluating the role of precision medicine in this patient population. With groundbreaking clinical trials and intense research into neuroblastoma, all possible options for treating patients who are diagnosed with this cancer are being explored, and the immunotherapy options are allowing for better hope for children diagnosed with this cancer.

5.6 Exosome-Mediated Therapeutics

Mesenchymal stem and stromal cells (MSCs) that have originated from multiple organs such as the bone marrow, umbilical cord (in-utero), adipose tissues, or placentas have shown to carry a therapeutic capacity of exosomes [36]. These were tested in numerous models of diseases. Exosome treatment has been compared to MSC treatment and has shown similar and even substantially better results [2]. When tested, MSC exosomes have exhibited favorable results that promote functional recovery and neurovascular plasticity. Some examples of these are subject, but not limited, to traumatic brain injury [40], the reduction in myocardial infarction size [1, 19], amelioration hypoxia-induced pulmonary hypertension [20], helping with the reparation of an injury to a kidney [13, 39], and the arrangement of neurological protection with the transfer of miRNA [18, 37].

Therapies that are exosome based portray a strong promise for the upcoming future in providing care for patients with various types of diseases. Patients with inflammatory diseases will especially benefit from exosome-based therapies [36]. The test for effectiveness in MSC-exosome treatments has been examined in multiple preclinical models. Safety concerns for the effectiveness of MSC-exosome treatment are of primary focus. All in all, though, cell-free exosome-based clinical trials are shown to have a slighter side-effect efficacy compared to live cell MSC trials [36].

5.7 Translational Advances

Exosomes could potentially play a role in the treatment of cancers. Exosomal vesicles can be used in a variety of ways to target different aspects of cancer, including diagnosis and treatment. Specifically, exosomes can be used as biomarkers for cancer diagnosis. Cancer cells are known to secrete more exosomes than healthy cells, which leads researchers to use this as a marker. The process of obtaining exosome samples from patients is fairly non-invasive, so this would be a clinically applicable way to help diagnose cancer. Not only can the exosomes be used as biomarkers, but also the proteins within the exosomes can be used to indicate cancer. Exosomes carry various molecules throughout the body, including proteins, miRNA, mRNA, etc. The overexpression of these molecules could be used as a potential prognostic factor for cancer. As well as a marker for cancer, exosomes could be used for treatment. Exosomes primarily function in cell communication, showing that they can interact with cell membranes to deliver their signals. This leads researchers to determine if exosomes could deliver drug therapy. Exosomes could be used as a method of delivering chemotherapy to malignant cells in the body. Also, it is thought that exosomes could be used to stimulate cytotoxic T cells into a response against cancer cells. The target of exosomes to stop tumor growth is also a consideration. Many studies have shown that exosomes display oncogenic and tumor-promoting effects. Therefore, the targeting of exosomes could be a key element to inhibiting tumor growth. Similarly, inhibiting the ability of cells to receive signals from the exosomes would also inhibit tumor progression. Although there are many possibilities of using exosome in cancer diagnosis and treatment, many mechanisms of exosomes are still undetermined. Further research into this field needs to be conducted.

5.8 Conclusion

Neuroblastoma is the most frequent solid tumor that is diagnosed in children under the age of 5. It develops in the immature nerve cells of the sympathetic nervous system during embryonic development. These tumors are most often found on the adrenal glands. Lumps in the abdomen or neck, bruising around the eyes, pain, fatigue, and weight loss are all common signs and symptoms of neuroblastoma. The current treatments for neuroblastoma involve a mixture of surgery, chemotherapy, radiation, retinoid therapy, and immunotherapy. Exosomes play an important role in the progression of this cancer. Exosomes

are small vesicles that are secreted by cells. They regulate cell communication, and transfer molecules between many cells in the body. Exosomes have been shown to progress tumor development, cause resistance to chemotherapy, and serve as a biomarker for tumors. Recent advances made in understanding the function of exosomes hold a promise to develop anti-cancer therapies.

Acknowledgments Dr. Challagundla's laboratory is supported in whole or part from the NIH/NCI grant (K22CA197074-01); Leukemia Research Foundation (LRF) grant, the Nebraska State DHHS (LB506); UNMC Pediatric Cancer Research Center; Fred and Pamela Buffett Cancer Center's pilot grant (P30 CA036727) in conjunction with the UNMC Pediatric Cancer Research Center; and the Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology start-up. Heather Richard and Arya Pokhrel are thankful to Terri L. Gulick, Jaynie E. Bird, Michele Merrill, and Heidi N. Kaschke and acknowledge the support of the UNMC High School Alliance Health Sciences Enrichment Program.

Conflict of Interest The authors declare no conflict of interest.

References

1. Arslan F, Lai RC, Smeets MB, Akeroyd L, Choo A, Aguor EN et al (2013) Mesenchymal stem cell-derived exosomes increase ATP levels, decrease oxidative stress and activate PI3K/Akt pathway to enhance myocardial viability and prevent adverse remodeling after myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury. Stem Cell Res 10(3):301–312. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scr.2013.01.002
2. Aslam M, Baveja R, Liang OD, Fernandez-Gonzalez A, Lee C, Mitsialis SA et al (2009) Bone marrow stromal cells attenuate lung injury in a murine model of neonatal chronic lung disease. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 180(11):1122–1130. https://doi.org/10.1164/rccm.200902-0242OC
3. Baker DL, Schmidt ML, Cohn SL, Maris JM, London WB, Buxton A et al (2010) Outcome after reduced chemotherapy for intermediate-risk neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med 363(14):1313–1323. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa1001527
4. Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang ZM, Messi ML, Olson JD, Mintz A et al (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307(1):C25–C38. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpcell.00084.2014
5. Bobrie A, Colombo M, Raposo G, Thery C (2011) Exosome secretion: molecular mechanisms and roles in immune responses. Traffic 12(12):1659–1668. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1600-0854.2011.01225.x
6. Brummer A, Hausser J (2014) MicroRNA binding sites in the coding region of mRNAs: extending the repertoire of post-transcriptional gene regulation. BioEssays 36(6):617–626. https://doi.org/10.1002/bies.201300104
7. Challagundla KB, Wise PM, Neviani P, Chava H, Murtadha M, Xu T et al (2015) Exosome-mediated transfer of microRNAs within the tumor microenvironment and neuroblastoma resistance to chemotherapy. J Natl Cancer Inst 107(7). https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/djv135
8. Chava S, Reynolds CP, Pathania AS, Gorantla S, Poluektova LY, Coulter DW et al (2020) miR-15a-5p, miR-15b-5p, and miR-16-5p inhibit tumor progression by directly targeting MYCN in neuroblastoma. Mol Oncol 14(1):180–196. https://doi.org/10.1002/1878-0261.12588
9. Cohn SL, Pearson AD, London WB, Monclair T, Ambros PF, Brodeur GM et al (2009) The International Neuroblastoma Risk Group (INRG) classification system: an INRG Task Force report. J Clin Oncol 27(2):289–297. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2008.16.6785
10. Colletti M, Petretto A, Galardi A, Di Paolo V, Tomao L, Lavarello C et al (2017) Proteomic analysis of neuroblastoma-derived exosomes: new insights into a metastatic signature. Proteomics 17(23–24). https://doi.org/10.1002/pmic.201600430
11. Colon NC, Chung DH (2011) Neuroblastoma. Adv Pediatr Infect Dis 58(1):297–311. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yapd.2011.03.011
12. Daudigeos-Dubus E, Led L, Rouffiac V, Bawa O, Leguerney I, Opolon P et al (2014) Establishment and characterization of new orthotopic and metastatic neuroblastoma models. In Vivo 28(4):425–434
13. Dorronsoro A, Robbins PD (2013) Regenerating the injured kidney with human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cell-derived exosomes. Stem Cell Res Ther 4(2):39. https://doi.org/10.1186/scrt187
14. Fonseka P, Liem M, Ozcitti C, Adda CG, Ang CS, Mathivanan S (2019) Exosomes from N-Myc amplified neuroblastoma cells induce migration and confer chemoresistance to non-N-Myc amplified cells: implications of intra-tumour heterogeneity. J Extracell Vesicles 8(1):1597614. https://doi.org/10.1080/20013078.2019.1597614
15. Heijnen HF, Schiel AE, Fijnheer R, Geuze HJ, Sixma JJ (1999) Activated platelets release two types of membrane vesicles: microvesicles by surface shedding and exosomes derived from exocytosis of multivesicular bodies and alpha-granules. Blood 94(11):3791–3799
16. Hessvik NP, Llorente A (2018) Current knowledge on exosome biogenesis and release. Cell Mol Life Sci 75(2):193–208. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00018-017-2595-9
17. Huang M, Weiss WA (2013) Neuroblastoma and MYCN. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med

3(10):a014415. https://doi.org/10.1101/cshperspect.a014415
18. Kalani A, Tyagi N (2015) Exosomes in neurological disease, neuroprotection, repair and therapeutics: problems and perspectives. Neural Regen Res 10(10):1565–1567. https://doi.org/10.4103/1673-5374.165305
19. Lai RC, Arslan F, Lee MM, Sze NS, Choo A, Chen TS et al (2010) Exosome secreted by MSC reduces myocardial ischemia/reperfusion injury. Stem Cell Res 4(3):214–222. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scr.2009.12.003
20. Lee C, Mitsialis SA, Aslam M, Vitali SH, Vergadi E, Konstantinou G et al (2012) Exosomes mediate the cytoprotective action of mesenchymal stromal cells on hypoxia-induced pulmonary hypertension. Circulation 126(22):2601–2611. https://doi.org/10.1161/CIRCULATIONAHA.112.114173
21. Legler JM, Ries LA, Smith MA, Warren JL, Heineman EF, Kaplan RS et al (1999) Cancer surveillance series [corrected]: brain and other central nervous system cancers: recent trends in incidence and mortality. J Natl Cancer Inst 91(16):1382–1390. https://doi.org/10.1093/jnci/91.16.1382
22. London WB, Castleberry RP, Matthay KK, Look AT, Seeger RC, Shimada H et al (2005) Evidence for an age cutoff greater than 365 days for neuroblastoma risk group stratification in the Children's Oncology Group. J Clin Oncol 23(27):6459–6465. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2005.05.571
23. Ma J, Xu M, Yin M, Hong J, Chen H, Gao Y et al (2019) Exosomal hsa-miR199a-3p promotes proliferation and migration in neuroblastoma. Front Oncol 9:459. https://doi.org/10.3389/fonc.2019.00459
24. Maas SLN, Breakefield XO, Weaver AM (2017) Extracellular vesicles: unique intercellular delivery vehicles. Trends Cell Biol 27(3):172–188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tcb.2016.11.003
25. Maia J, Caja S, Strano Moraes MC, Couto N, Costa-Silva B (2018) Exosome-based cell-cell communication in the tumor microenvironment. Front Cell Dev Biol 6:18. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcell.2018.00018
26. Maris JM (2010) Recent advances in neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med 362(23):2202–2211. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMra0804577
27. Nakata R, Shimada H, Fernandez GE, Fanter R, Fabbri M, Malvar J et al (2017) Contribution of neuroblastoma-derived exosomes to the production of pro-tumorigenic signals by bone marrow mesenchymal stromal cells. J Extracell Vesicles. 6(1):1332941. https://doi.org/10.1080/20013078.2017.1332941
28. Neviani P, Wise PM, Murtadha M, Liu CW, Wu CH, Jong AY et al (2019) Natural killer-derived Exosomal miR-186 inhibits neuroblastoma growth and immune escape mechanisms. Cancer Res 79(6):1151–1164. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-18-0779
29. Park JR, Eggert A, Caron H (2008) Neuroblastoma: biology, prognosis, and treatment. Pediatr Clin N Am 55(1):97–120, x. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pcl.2007.10.014
30. Pinto NR, Applebaum MA, Volchenboum SL, Matthay KK, London WB, Ambros PF et al (2015) Advances in risk classification and treatment strategies for neuroblastoma. J Clin Oncol 33(27):3008–3017. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2014.59.4648
31. Raposo G, Stoorvogel W (2013) Extracellular vesicles: exosomes, microvesicles, and friends. J Cell Biol 200(4):373–383. https://doi.org/10.1083/jcb.201211138
32. Schmidt O, Teis D (2012) The ESCRT machinery. Curr Biol 22(4):R116–R120. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cub.2012.01.028
33. Seeger RC (2011) Immunology and immunotherapy of neuroblastoma. Semin Cancer Biol 21(4):229–237. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.semcancer.2011.09.012
34. Speleman F, Park JR, Henderson TO (2016) Neuroblastoma: a tough nut to crack. Am Soc Clin Oncol Educ Book 35:e548–e557. https://doi.org/10.14694/EDBK_159169. https://doi.org/10.1200/EDBK_159169
35. Szakacs G, Paterson JK, Ludwig JA, Booth-Genthe C, Gottesman MM (2006) Targeting multidrug resistance in cancer. Nat Rev Drug Discov 5(3):219–234. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrd1984
36. Willis GR, Kourembanas S, Mitsialis SA (2017) Toward exosome-based therapeutics: isolation, heterogeneity, and fit-for-purpose potency. Front Cardiovasc Med 4:63. https://doi.org/10.3389/fcvm.2017.00063
37. Xin H, Li Y, Buller B, Katakowski M, Zhang Y, Wang X et al (2012) Exosome-mediated transfer of miR-133b from multipotent mesenchymal stromal cells to neural cells contributes to neurite outgrowth. Stem Cells 30(7):1556–1564. https://doi.org/10.1002/stem.1129
38. Yu AL, Gilman AL, Ozkaynak MF, London WB, Kreissman SG, Chen HX et al (2010) Anti-GD2 antibody with GM-CSF, interleukin-2, and isotretinoin for neuroblastoma. N Engl J Med 363(14):1324–1334. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0911123
39. Zhang G, Wang D, Miao S, Zou X, Liu G, Zhu Y (2016) Extracellular vesicles derived from mesenchymal stromal cells may possess increased therapeutic potential for acute kidney injury compared with conditioned medium in rodent models: A meta-analysis. Exp Ther Med 11(4):1519–1525. https://doi.org/10.3892/etm.2016.3076
40. Zhang Y, Chopp M, Meng Y, Katakowski M, Xin H, Mahmood A et al (2015) Effect of exosomes derived from multipluripotent mesenchymal stromal cells on functional recovery and neurovascular plasticity in rats after traumatic brain injury. J Neurosurg 122(4):856–867. https://doi.org/10.3171/2014.11.JNS14770
41. Zhang Y, Liu Y, Liu H, Tang WH (2019) Exosomes: biogenesis, biologic function and clinical potential. Cell Biosci 9:19. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13578-019-0282-2

6 COX-2 Signaling in the Tumor Microenvironment

Yuan Zhang, Sean Tighe, and Ying-Ting Zhu

Abstract

Tumorigenesis is a multistep, complicated process, and many studies have been completed over the last few decades to elucidate this process. Increasingly, many studies have shifted focus toward the critical role of the tumor microenvironment (TME), which consists of cellular players, cell–cell communications, and extracellular matrix (ECM). In the TME, cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) has been found to be a key molecule mediating the microenvironment changes. COX-2 is an inducible form of the enzyme that converts arachidonic acid into the signal transduction molecules (thromboxanes and prostaglandins). COX-2 is frequently expressed in many types of cancers and has been closely linked to its occurrence, progression, and prognosis. For example, COX-2 has been shown to (1) regulate tumor cell growth, (2) promote tissue invasion and metastasis, (3) inhibit apoptosis, (4) suppress antitumor immunity, and (5) promote sustainable angiogenesis. In this chapter, we summarize recent advances of studies that have evaluated COX-2 signaling in TME.

Keywords

Cyclooxygenase-2 · Structure · Prostaglandin · Arachidonic acid · Tumor · Tumorigenesis · Microenvironment · Regulation · Cell growth · Invasion · Metastasis · Apoptosis · Immunity · Angiogenesis · NSAID

6.1 Introduction

Tumorigenesis is a multistep and complicated process, in which oncogenes and tumor-suppressor genes are going through successive mutations and eventually lead to enhanced proliferation and resistance to apoptosis. Currently, several major hallmarks of human tumor have been universally reported, including evading growth suppressors, gaining genome instability, promoting replicative immortality, resisting cell death, eliminating cell energy limitation, promoting metastasis, inducing angiogenesis, sustaining proliferative signals, evading immune destruction, and aggregating inflammation [1, 2].

During the past few decades, the understanding of tumorigenesis has greatly increased [3] and the focus of studies has shifted from the malignant cells themselves to the tumor microenvironment (TME) and the interactions between them. TME, which consists of extracellular

Y. Zhang · S. Tighe · Y.-T. Zhu (✉)
Research and Development Department, Tissue Tech, Inc., Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: yzhu@tissuetechinc.com

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_6

matrix (ECM) and cellular players such as fibroblasts, endothelial cells, neuroendocrine cells, adipose cells, leukocytes and so on, and their interactions [4], helps tumors to acquire their invasive characters. In detail, the tumoral niche has increasingly been reported to dictate abnormal tissue functions and play an important role in the subsequent evolution of malignancies [5]. Scientists have also found that a healthy microenvironment could help maintain the healthy cellular status and protect against tumorigenesis and metastasis [3]. Many studies have shown tumors are not only a mass of proliferative malignant cells, but they also attract other stromal cells [6], vascular cells [7], and immune cells [8] by secreting cytokines, chemokines, and stimulatory growth factors. These factors released by tumor cells may recruit other cells to rebuild the new microenvironment. Such communication between tumor cells and their microenvironment may enhance metastatic capability and immortal proliferation, causing eventual death [1, 2].

One of the key factors in the TME that has been characterized is cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2). COX proteins are membrane-bound proteins, located on the nuclear envelope, and luminal side of the endoplasmic reticulum is an important mediator of angiogenesis and inflammation. It has three isoforms: COX-1, COX-2, and COX-3 [9, 10]. COX-1, which is expressed in most tissues, is a housekeeping enzyme to maintain the basal level of prostaglandins (PGs) [11]. It also helps maintain the internal homeostasis by regulating the processes such as vascular smooth muscle functioning, cytoprotection of the gastric mucosa, platelet aggregation, and renal function [9]. COX-3 is reported as a variant of COX-1, and it is mainly present in the central nervous system [12, 13]. By contrast, COX-2 is an inducible form, usually undetected in normal tissues and cells [14] in which its basal expression only can be found in the central nervous system, kidney, stomach [15], and female reproductive organs [16]. By contrast, it is usually constantly expressed in many types of tumor tissues [14, 17], such as squamous cell carcinoma, adenocarcinoma, transitional cell carcinoma, cholangiocarcinoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, and endometrial carcinoma [18, 19].

As TME actively participates in the tumor metastasis and progression, and COX-2 is one of the critical inflammatory mediators deregulated in many tumors, therapeutic strategies targeting the COX-2 in TME may have great potential and be highly selective. Below, we will highlight the role of COX-2 signaling in the regulation of tumor progression in the TME and discuss its potential value in tumor therapy.

6.2 Structure of COX-2

Human COX-2 is a homodimer of 581 amino acids, which encoded by COX-2 gene locates on the chromosome 1q25.2-q25.3 [20]. The dimerization of two 70 kDa subunits is necessary for catalytic activity and its own structural integrity [21]. Each subunit of COX-2 contains three domains to form the structure: a membrane-binding domain (residues 73–116), an N-terminal epidermal growth factor domain (residues 34–72), and a C-terminal catalytic domain which comprises the bulk of the protein [22–28]. The membrane-binding domain consists of four amphipathic α helices, three of which lie in the same plane, whereas the last one extends into the catalytic domain [29]. These helices have aromatic and hydrophobic residues. Therefore, this structure could create a surface that interacts with the lipid bilayer [22].

The peroxidase active site lies at the top of an L-shaped channel on the opposite side of the membrane-binding domain. It contains the heme that positioned at the bottom of a shallow cleft. Other molecules could access the heme easily except the dome formed by hydrophobic amino acids covers part of the cleft. At the entrance of the channel is a lobby. It is a large space that narrows to a constriction. Inhibitors or substrates can only pass into the channel when the lobby is open. On top of the lobby, the channel is surrounded by hydrophobic residues [25, 26, 28]. The structure of the active site makes COX-2 only react with specific substrate but not a wide range of organic hydroperoxides [30]. Interestingly, although the preference of the peroxidase relies on hydrophobic dome, mutation of the dome residues affects little on substrate specificity or peroxidase activity [31].

6.3 The COX-2 Signaling

6.3.1 The COX-2/PGE Signaling

COX-2 is a rate-limiting [20] and short-living enzyme [16] that converts phospholipase A2 (PLA2)-mobilized arachidonic acid (AA) into the signal transduction molecules thromboxanes and prostaglandins (PGs) [32]. One principal product of COX-2 is prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2), a mediator contributing to the modulation of several biological processes, including angiogenesis, immunity, pain, and tumorigenesis [33–35]. In the tumor formation process, COX-2 could be overexpressed in TME due to transcriptional or posttranscriptional malfunction [36, 37]. Thus, COX-2 is an important marker for tumor identification [14, 38]. Elevated expression of COX-2 and its major product PGE_2 has been reported to be inversely associated with patients' survival rate [39–41].

Recent advances in the role of COX-2 and PGEs in the pathogenesis of cancer have been described [9, 15, 42–44]. The main form of prostaglandin involved in many types of cancers is PGE_2. PGE_2 can act on the receptors, for example, EP1, EP2, EP3, and EP4 to induce PGE_2 signal cascade, leading to changes of intracellular calcium, cAMP, and some inflammatory factors. As a result, physiological or pathological processes follow [45, 46]. Recent investigations support that PGE_2 may enhance progression of colorectal cancer [47–49], and EP4 is a therapeutic target for cancer therapy [50, 51]. COX-2-derived PGE_2 can also contribute to tumor development through several mechanisms including inhibition of apoptosis. However, the mechanisms by which PGE_2 regulates apoptosis are still largely unknown. The EP2 and EP4 receptors mediate their activities through cAMP production. Suppression of apoptosis by cAMP has been seen in intestinal cells through the induction of the IAP family member inhibitor of apoptosis 2 (IAP-2) [52, 53]. Therefore, further research is warranted to investigate the antiapoptotic effects of PGE_2 mediated through cAMP, which results in the induction of the IAP family member c-IAP2.

6.3.2 Cytokines and Other Compounds Regulating COX-2 Signaling

6.3.2.1 IL-1β and TNF-α

Cytokines and other compounds such as interleukin 1β (IL-1β) and tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α) may promote expression of COX-2 mRNA and protein in human colorectal fibroblasts, profoundly in cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) [54–56]. When stimulated with the pro-inflammatory cytokines IL-1β or TNF-α, orbital fibroblasts express high levels of COX-2 and PGE_2 [57]. Scientists have found that IL-1β or TNF-α promotes synthesis of PGE_2 by 25-fold in human colorectal fibroblasts (CCD-18Co) and five human colorectal fibroblast strains obtained at routine colonoscopies [58]. Greater levels of IL-1β-stimulated COX-2 expression and PGE_2 synthesis in the cancer-associated fibroblasts could only be accounted for partially by increased COX-2 promoter and transcriptional activity in the cancer-associated phenotype. We have noted that IL-1β and TNF-α induce mRNA overexpression of COX-2 and promote production of PGE_2 in human colorectal fibroblasts, especially in CRC-associated strains [54, 59] at a rate at which COX-2 mRNA decays can be dramatically retarded in vitro by PGE_2 [60].

6.3.2.2 NF-κB

The nuclear factor (NF)-κB could also regulate the activation of COX-2 signaling in cancer cells [61]. The subfamily of NF-κB proteins has five members, including NF-κB1 (p50), NF-κB2 (p52), RelA (p65), RelB, and c-Rel [18, 62, 63]. Among the subfamily, p65 plays a role in the regulation of COX-2 in cancer cells [64, 65]. NF-κB/ COX-2 signaling could be induced by protein kinase C (PKC) [66], TRIP4 [65], ERK1/2 [67], IL-1β [61], caspase-3 [68], and conditions like endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress [69]. Inhibition of this signaling is mediated by annexin A5 [66] and miR-16 [70].

6.3.2.3 PKC and MAPK

Cytokines and growth factors induce COX-2 expression via protein kinase C (PKC) signaling.

Molecules that interfere with microtubules such as taxanes could induce COX-2 by activating PKC and mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs). There are three related MAPK proteins including ERK1/2, p38, and c-Jun N-terminal kinase, which are contributed to the induction of COX-2 [71]. These members could mediate PKC effects on COX-2 signaling in cancer cells [72]. Combination of PKC and COX-2 inhibitors can synergistically inhibit melanoma metastasis [73]. Among the MAPKs, p38 [74] and ERK1/2 [75] are downstream molecules of COX-2. In addition, COX-2/P38 signaling favors angiogenesis [74] and is involved in cancer cell resistance to apoptosis [76].

6.3.2.4 Other Signaling

There are also many other cytokines and compounds which can regulate COX-2 signaling. One example is COX-2/STAT3 signaling, which contributes to the proliferation [77] and epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT) [78] of cancer cells by promoting the immunosuppressive microenvironment [75]. Another example is SDF-1a which plays a role in cancer cell metastasis and invasion through the stimulation of COX-2 by interaction with its receptor CXCR4 [79, 80]. All the research above suggests that COX-2 signaling is highly involved in the pathogenesis of cancer.

6.4 COX-2 Signaling in Tumor Microenvironment (TME)

6.4.1 COX-2 Regulates the Tumor Cell Growth

The cell behavior is controlled by complex signaling pathways. It is thought that the malfunction of these signaling pathways causes tumor cells to grow uncontrollably. Two major signaling pathways, Ras-MAPK and the PI3K/AKT signaling, are frequently shown to be deregulated in many human cancers, which can stimulate cell growth and survival when activated [81, 82]. There is a strong evidence showing that COX-2, together with PGE_2, are mediators of cancer cell growth through the above signaling [83]. PGE_2 derived from COX-2 can enhance cell survival through the PI3K/AKT and Ras-MAPK/ERK signaling. Aberrant activation of the COX-2/PGE_2 signaling might increase mutations in the above two signaling pathways, which could promote tumor progression [84–86]. Furthermore, there are other ways mediating cancer cell growth by COX-2. For example, activation of stromal cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) and neutrophils by COX-2 can release proliferative signals on cancer cells [87, 88], and induction of aromatase cytochrome P450 (CYP19) by COX-2 contributes to the conversion of estrogen to estrogen quinones [89], which is involved in tumor proliferation [90].

Under physiological conditions, normal tissue can control cell growth by the action of antiproliferative signals, which is a crucial mechanism for maintaining homeostasis [1]. The membrane-bound ligands and soluble growth inhibitors are two kinds of key compounds of above signals to repress cell growth. Scientists have demonstrated two antigrowth signals that can restrain proliferation and maintain tissue homeostasis [1]. However, deregulation of the COX-2/PGE_2 signaling may limit the function of these signals by additional mechanism. The first antigrowth signals can maintain cells in G0 state to block proliferation and keep cell quiescence. For example, transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) can block cell growth by activation of cyclin-dependent kinase inhibitors and suppression of c-Myc [91]. Usually, cancer cells are insensitive to the suppressive effect of TGF-β due to inactivated mutations of the receptors or downstream signaling effectors [91]. One study showed that mutations of TGF-β receptor type II occur in colorectal tumors at a high frequency [92]. However, these mutations do not exist in all types of cancer cells. It is also reported that overexpression of COX-2 can downregulate the expression of TGF-β receptor type II, which means COX-2 signaling can prevent the receipt of antigrowth signals [93]. The second antigrowth signals are to initiate a terminally differentiated state [1]. Aberrant activation of pathways such as β-catenin/WNT signaling in colorectal tumors contributes to the blockage of normal differentiation and maintenance of progenitor state of

cancer cells [94]. Recently, evidence demonstrates that the COX-2 signaling can activate the β-catenin/WNT signaling to keep cells in a progenitor state [95]. Furthermore, when there is lack of β-catenin/WNT mutations, inappropriate activation of the COX-2/PGE_2 signaling could discourage cell differentiation.

In addition to the above function, the activation of β-catenin/WNT signaling by PGE_2 might also serve to the acquisition of the immortal phenotype [95], which means it can help the cancer cells to get limitless replicative potential. For example, colorectal cancer is thought to start from such immortal cells initiated by mutations in the β-catenin/WNT signaling. Scientists demonstrated that in intestinal crypts, the stem cells and progenitor cells are maintained by activating WNT signaling [94]. Mutations of components of WNT signaling in colorectal tumors result in the formation of an active β-catenin/T-cell factor (TCF) complex that can mimic WNT signaling. It is reported that COX-2/PGE_2 signaling may play a role in keeping the crypt in the progenitor phenotype by activating β-catenin/TCF complex in colorectal cancer cells [95]. Perturbation of the WNT signaling by deleting TCF4 in mice also leads to loss of the stemness in the small intestine [96]. This suggests that the WNT signaling could maintain the crypt stem cell phenotype in both physiological and cancer status.

6.4.2 COX-2 Promotes Tissue Invasion and Metastasis

COX-2 has been shown to be one of the critical metastasis progression genes [97] participating in the metastasis into the brain [98], bone [99], lymph nodes [100], and liver [101]. Factors like IL-11 induced by COX-2 are related to the cancer metastasis [99]. In order to achieve the invasion and metastasis, cancer cells must show an invasive phenotype of more motile status. They lose and detach themselves from connected cells within the tumor, move into extracellular matrix, and finally invade into blood vessels and lymphatics [102]. After escaping from the primary tumor tissue, cancer cells must then colonize the surrounding tissue or distant sites with the help of blood or lymphatics. Recently, the significance of COX-2 as a necessary mediator for dissemination of cancer cells was reported in an in vivo model of breast cancer metastasis to the lungs [103]. Using both pharmacological and genetic methods, this study demonstrated that COX-2 is one of the key "metastasis" genes which helps to mediate tumor development, invasion, and metastasis to other tissues.

There are many other studies demonstrating that COX-2 signaling plays critical roles in the metastasis processes—more specifically, promoting a more metastatic phenotype in colorectal tumor cells through its product PGE_2. For example, EGFR transactivation mediated by intracellular Src can stimulate the motility and invasion controlled by PGE_2 [104]. PGE_2 could also promote cytoskeletal reorganization and eventually lead to invasion and migration of colorectal cancer cells via PI3K signaling [105]. Overexpression of COX-2 can modulate the adhesive properties of intestinal cells [93] and increase the activity of matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) to promote tumor invasion [106]. Inhibition of this marker can prevent the metastasis of colorectal tumors in vivo in both human [107] and mice [108]. In addition, c-Met, also known as the hepatocyte growth factor receptor, is transactivated by PGE_2 through an EGFR-dependent pathway in colorectal cancer [109]. C-Met signaling is associated with the loss of cell contact and invasive growth [110]. Scientists found that COX-2, c-Met, and β-catenin coexist at the invasive edge of colorectal tumor [109]. The transactivation of c-Met can induce nuclear accumulation of β-catenin and increase expression and invasion of urokinase-type plasminogen activator receptor through Matrigel [109]. COX-2 can also induce β1-integrin that is related to cancer cell invasion [111, 112].

Furthermore, COX-2 can induce epithelial–mesenchymal transition (EMT) through factors like transcription-3 (STAT3) and miR526b [78, 113]. In cancer cells, EMT is thought to be a promoter of invasiveness [18]. Inhibition of EMT mediated by COX-2 occurs after usage of cannabinoids in cancer [114]. Interestingly, in the TME, the tumor maintenance and progression are only regulated by COX-2 secreted by the tumor

cells but not by other normal cells such as stromal cells [115, 116]. Therefore, these findings suggest that COX-2 plays an important role in tumorigenesis.

6.4.3 COX-2 Inhibits Apoptosis

Apoptosis, the cell death programming process [117], plays an essential role in controlling cell number and maintaining tissue homeostasis in normal tissue [118, 119]. Malfunction of this mechanism results in excessive cell number and survival rate, which can lead to tumorigenesis and its malignant progression [120–122]. COX-2 is related to suppression of apoptosis in many cancer types. The ability of COX-2/PGE_2 signaling to control apoptosis in tumor cells may depend on factors such as the TME and vary between cell types. In this signaling, several mechanisms have been reported. COX-2 contributes to the cancer apoptosis resistance through delaying G1 phase to slow the cell cycle [123]. It also induces the expressions of BCL-2 [124, 125], MCL-1 [126], and Survivin [127] and represses caspase-3 signaling [128].

First, overexpression of COX-2 might regulate the intrinsic apoptosis signaling by inducing the expression of BCL-2 and increase resistance apoptosis induced by butyrate in rat intestinal epithelial cells [93]. Later studies demonstrated that COX-2/PGE_2 might suppress apoptosis by increasing the expression of BCL-2 through activation of Ras-MAPK/ ERK signaling [129]. Other studies also indicated that COX-2 signaling controls apoptosis by inducing the expressions of BCL-2 [124, 125]. Second, scientists found that COX-2 is a critical mediator in apoptosis resistance by increasing the expression of MCL-1 [126]. Knockdown of MCL-1 would sensitize the lung cancer cells to apoptosis substantially. Moreover, the expression of MCL-1 could be significantly decreased when COX-2 was suppressed [126]. Third, it was reported that overexpression of COX-2 contributes to the expression and stabilization of Survivin, which is an inhibitor of apoptosis in non-small-cell lung cancer [127]. Suppression of COX-2 activity could induce degradation of Survivin and lead to lower cellular response to apoptosis pathways [127]. Fourth, scientists have reported that overexpression of COX-2 limited the cleavage of HuR and caspase-3, which reduced cell apoptosis in the paclitaxel-resistant oral cancer cells [128]. They also showed that inhibition of COX-2 increased apoptosis in paclitaxel-resistant oral cancer cells by activating of caspase-3, both in vivo and in vitro [128]. Furthermore, studies also demonstrate that COX-2/PGE_2 signaling might regulate apoptotic by involving in many other pathways. For example, it is reported that PGE_2 activates prosurvival signaling, such as ERK signaling [130], PI3K/AKT signaling [105, 131], EGFR signaling [132, 133], and cAMP/PKA signaling [134].

Other conditions like hypoxia could also contribute to the induction of cell death. For example, in colorectal tumor cells, COX-2/PGE_2 signaling could promote cell survival in hypoxia condition by activation of Ras-MAPK signaling [86], suggesting that COX-2 plays an important role in promoting the survival rate of cancer cells under difficult microenvironmental conditions. In addition, wild-type p53 is a suppressor of COX-2 in mediating apoptosis [18, 36]. Mutations of p53 in cancer cells would create a positive-feedback loop between COX-2 and itself. It might be a chemotherapeutic target for cancers [36, 135].

6.4.4 COX-2 Suppresses Antitumor Immunity

COX-2 signaling plays an important role in immune resistance and cancer immunotherapy. It regulates the immune response through recruiting immune cells into the tumor milieu to induce an immunosuppressive state [136]. Cancer cells can release COX-2/PGE_2 to the milieu to suppress immunological responses by blocking the activity of cytotoxic T lymphocytes [137]. COX-2/PGE_2 has also been shown to be a major modulator of macrophage activation for a long time [138]. One of the major populations of tumor-infiltrating immune cells is tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs). Reprogramming the TAMs of M2 toward M1

phenotype or impeding the process toward the pro-tumor M2 subtype is an anticancer strategy [44]. COX-2/PGE_2 signaling could promote macrophage differentiating to M2 subtype [139, 140]. Immune suppression regulated by macrophages is related to increased T-cell infiltration regulated by CD4+/CD25+ and decreased CD8+ T-cell function [44].

Overexpression of COX-2 promotes tumorigenesis by inhibiting proliferation of B-type and T-type lymphocytes, especially natural killer T cells, and subsequently limits immunosuppression of the host [141]. COX-2 inhibits the exposure of antigen-specific T cells to their cellular targets and promotes the expression of indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase and interleukin-4 (IL-4) by tumor cells [44]. Scientists have demonstrated that COX-2/PGE_2 is the factor resisted to the cytotoxicity induced by active form of antigen-specific T cells [142]. It has also been shown that T-cell receptors (TCR) such as TCR NKG2D (natural-killer group 2, member D), Vγ9Vδ2 (Vδ2 gene with the co-expression of the Vγ9 chain), and CD16 are all inhibited by COX-2/PGE_2 [143]. Moreover, COX-2/PGE_2 helps the immune suppression mediated by cancer. They play an important role in promoting CD4+ and CD8+ T-cell differentiation and directly inhibiting the proliferation and effector functions of regulatory T cells [144]. Furthermore, it is reported that Treg cells inhibited effector T cells by activating COX-2 signaling and participated in cancer immunosuppression [145, 146]. The expression of COX-2 is also significantly related to Treg localization and prevalence [147]. In addition, expression of the forkhead/winged helix transcription factor (FOXP3) gene could also drive the suppressive activity of regulatory T cells.

Natural killer (NK) cells are a subpopulation of lymphocytes that take part in innate immunity. All types of PGE_2 receptors are expressed by NK cells, and PGE_2 derived from tumor is a critical barrier to the NK cell-mediated killing. It has been reported that the natural cytotoxicity receptors (NCRs), such as NKp30, NKp44, NKp46, major NK receptors (NKRs), NKG2D, and CD16, could all be inhibited by PGE_2 [143]. In addition, the function of NK cells such as secrete interferon-γ (INF-γ), exert cytotoxic effects, and migrate are all inhibited by PGE_2 [148]. EP2 and EP4 are the major receptors acted by PGE_2 while inhibiting NK cells. And frondoside A, an EP4 antagonist, inhibits breast tumor metastasis by acting on NK cells and decreases IFN-γ production by NK cells [44]. Furthermore, MDSC presents in many cancer types and blocks adaptive immunity by inhibiting NK cells and the activation of CD4+ and CD8+ T cells [148, 149]. COX2 produced by tumor cells would maintain high level of MDSC, and subsequently block the tumor immunity. It has been shown to allow the proliferation of tumor cells without control from the immune system of the host [44].

Dendritic cells (DCs) participate in both innate and adaptive immunity. COX-2 is a crucial immunomodulator of DC activities [150], which can reduce DC ability to present antigens, express MHC class II molecules, mature, and activate T cells [151]. COX-2/PGE_2 has been demonstrated to decrease the cytokine production of antigen-presenting DCs, away from a type 1 T cell (Th1) profile, and eventually result in a reduced antitumor activation of cytotoxic CD8+ T cells [152, 153]. Meanwhile, it is reported that EP2 and EP4 receptor subtypes of PGE_2 may be targets of modulating DC activity [90]. For example, PGE_2 could increase interleukin-10 (IL-10) production, which can lead to downregulation of DC functions. These abilities of COX-2/PGE_2 signaling to suppress antitumor immune responses may allow malignant cells to escape immunosurveillance and promote tumor development.

6.4.5 COX-2 Promotes Sustainable Angiogenesis

COX-2 induced in tumor is associated with angiogenesis [154]. Inhibition of COX-2 suppresses corneal neovascularization in experimental lung and colon tumor growth [155]. COX-2 expression localizes in tumor epithelium [106], stromal fibroblasts [115], endothelium [155], and infiltrating immune cells [156]. It also promotes the production of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), a potent angiogenic growth factor [157]. It was demonstrated that expression of

COX-2 was critical for the induction of VEGF and the subsequent tumor angiogenesis in an Apc/COX-2 double-knockout mice model [158]. It is also reported that in COX-2 knockout mice, fibroblasts showed decreased level of VEGF mRNA and protein, together with lower vascular density compared to wild-type mice [115]. Consistent with this, in vivo studies have showed that homozygous deletion of COX-2 led to slower growth of tumor xenografts and lower tumor vascular density [115]. One possible mechanism is that COX-2 might promote tumor angiogenesis through the production of PGE_2, which has been reported to involve in endothelial cell spreading and migration by activation of Cdc42 and Rac [159]. PGE_2 has also been demonstrated to induce VEGF expression in colon cancer cells by activating HIF-1, one of the key regulators of VEGF expression [160]. Furthermore, PGE_2 has been reported to regulate vascularization though chemokine receptor signaling. For example, in vivo model showed that PGE_2 can enhance basic fibroblast growth factor-induced chemokine receptor-4 that is crucial for vessel assembly [161]. Moreover, PGE_2 can stimulate the expression of CXCL-1 in vivo, a pro-angiogenic chemokine [162].

In addition, COX-2 modifies molecules involved in endothelial trafficking with vascular mural cells/pericytes, an interaction critical to vessel stability [163–165]. Pericytes are found in all vascularized tissues, attaching to the walls of blood vessels [166]. They surround vascular endothelial cells and communicate with them by physical contacts and paracrine signaling along the length of the blood vessels [167, 168]. Increased expression of key modulator of pericyte PDGF-β or enhanced pericytes recruitment is characteristic features of tumor vasculature [169–171]. Moreover, when transplanting cancer cells into Nestin-GFP/NG2-DsRed mice, type-2 pericytes were recruited during the angiogenesis of the development of tumor, while type-1 pericytes did not penetrate [172]. COX-2, which modifies the proliferation and function of pericytes, plays a crucial role in vascular response to chronic microenvironmental stress [173, 174]. A study in 2006 demonstrated the function of COX-2 in vascular assembly in an orthotopic xenograft model by using the specific COX-2 inhibitor SC-236. The results showed that tumor growth was suppressed by SC-236 significantly in human Wilms' tumor [164]. All the evidence above suggests that COX-2 could promote sustainable angiogenesis in tumor.

6.4.6 Regulation of COX-2 Expression by the TME

Upregulation of COX-2 has been described in many different types of tumors [175]. It is reported that the TME is a promoter of COX-2 overexpression [36]. This overexpression is led by uncontrolled function of transcriptional or posttranscriptional levels [37]; therefore, it could be an important marker to identify tumor cells from normal tissues [14, 38]. Although PTGS2 (the gene-encoding human COX-2) mutations have not been described clearly, there are several known mechanisms which can promote expression of COX-2 in tumor cells. In general, the mechanisms can be divided into two types: oncogene activation and growth factor signaling deregulation. For example, it is reported that the hypoxic microenvironment can induce COX-2 expression in colorectal tumor cells [86]. This upregulation is mediated by HIF-1, a regulator of transcription in hypoxia. The same regulation dependent on HIF-1 has also been reported in lung cancer cells [176]. Other examples include activation of the TGF-β receptors [177], gastrin receptors [178], c-Met [179], β-catenin/WNT signaling [180, 181], and the Ras-MAPK pathway [85, 182]. In addition, COX-2 is a constituent of exosomes derived from tumor [183]. Cancer promoters [184], oncogenic viruses [61], proinflammatory cytokines [185], radiation [186], and chemotherapy [187] are all inducers of COX-2 expression in cancer cells.

6.5 Nonsteroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs)

For decades, significant progress has been achieved in the discovery of effective drugs for colorectal cancer. One of those is nonsteroidal

anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) which inhibit COX-2 [188, 189]. Examples of NSAID include aspirin, ibuprofen, naproxen, nimesulide, and sulindac acid. Different NSAIDs may act via different signaling pathways to interact with COX-2. For example, ibuprofen, indomethacin, and naproxen can bind the activity site of COX-2 and inhibit its activity reversibly, while aspirin acetylates the activity site of COX-2, attenuating its activity irreversibly. Some NSAIDs, for example, aspirin, can facilitate the effect of COX-2 inhibitors for treatment of stage III colorectal cancer [190]. In fact, aspirin may reduce colon cancer mortality in women by as much as 50% [191–193]. Recently, a hybrid drug KSS19, a combination of NSAID rofecoxib and cis-stilbene, has been found to be a potent COX-2 inhibitor, which inhibits colon cancer cell growth effectively [194].

Although COX-2 inhibitors are promising candidates for treatment of cancer, some concerns for treatment of cancer by COX inhibitors have been raised. For example, an elevated risk of myocardial infarction may be linked to its usage [195]. In addition, the extended use of nonselective NSAIDs is also associated with certain pathological symptoms, for example, abdominal pain, dyspepsia, gastritis, gastrointestinal bleeding nausea, and perforation of gastroduodenal ulcers [196]. Therefore, no major clinical trials of those inhibitors were successfully completed due to concerns of their adverse effects. Nonetheless, NSAIDs are effective in certain degrees for prevention and treatment of cancer. For example, a randomized trial demonstrated that NSAIDs are preventive for colorectal cancer with polyps [197, 198]. According to the results of large-scale trials, including the Adenomatous Polyp Prevention on Vioxx trial [199], the Adenoma Prevention with Celecoxib trial [198], the Prevention of Colorectal Sporadic Adenomatous Polyps trial [200], and colon polyp prevention trial [201], COX-2 inhibitors are effective for prevention of recurrence from sporadic colon cancer. Regular consumption of NSAIDs is also helpful for lowering the risk of colorectal, breast, lung, and prostate cancer [202]. In all, COX inhibitors have shown promise, but there are still safety concerns.

To decrease the risk from COX inhibitors, many researchers have used low dose of COX inhibitors with other NSAIDs that target other critical pathways in carcinogenesis. For example, combination of celecoxib with erlotinib (an EGFR tyrosine kinase inhibitor) is more effective to control polyp formation using an ApcMin/+ mice model and to inhibit cancer growth in a xenograft model [203]. Celecoxib with erlotinib treatment is more effective for treatment of the advanced non-small-cell lung cancer [204]. A 5-lipoxygenase inhibitor has been shown to inhibit resistant tumor cells to SC-236 (COX inhibitor) and tumor growth in a breast cancer animal model [205]. Combined treatment of celecoxib with peroxisome proliferators-activated receptor-γ agonist has been shown better than either alone in a mouse breast cancer model [206]. Combination of aromatase inhibitors with celecoxib has been shown better for patients suffering from metastatic breast cancer than either alone [207]. Therefore, we may like to reconsider the prospect of COX inhibitors for treatment of cancer.

6.6 Conclusion and Perspective

As studies have shown over the last few decades, COX-2 is one of the key markers indicating worse cancer prognosis and stimulates cancer via various roles in the TME. To date, clinical and basic research has shown that reduction of PGE_2 synthesis by either specific COX-2 inhibitors or NSAIDs has the potential to decrease the risk of tumorigenesis of certain types [97, 208–214]. Therefore, therapeutic strategies targeting the COX-2 in the TME may have great potential to improve clinical outcomes. COX-2 signaling in the tumor environment is summarized as follows (Fig. 6.1):

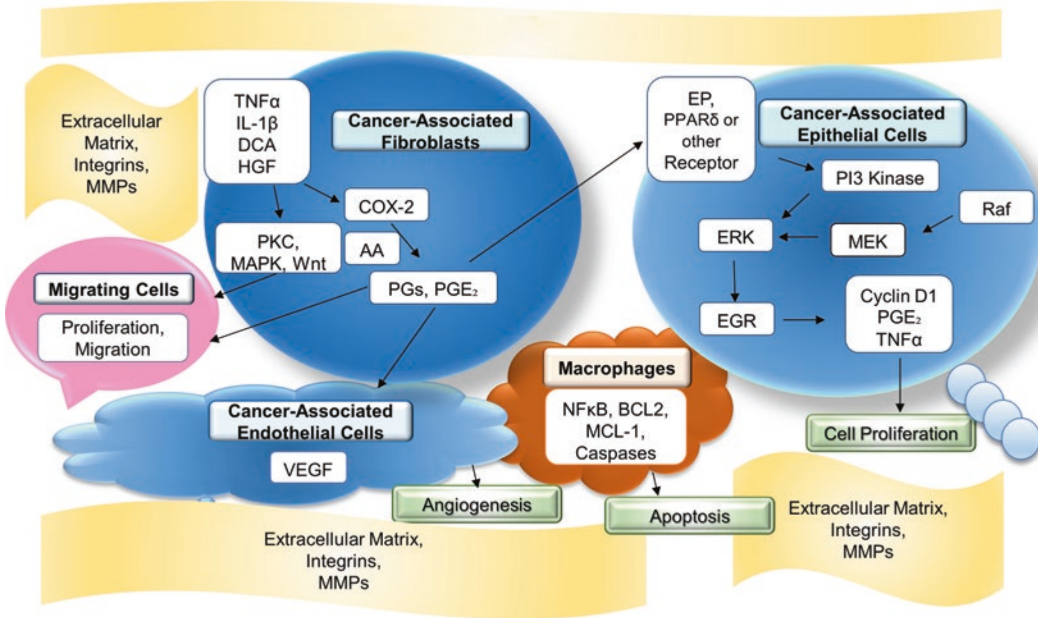


Fig. 6.1 COX-2 signaling in the tumor environment

References

1. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2000) The hallmarks of cancer. Cell 100(1):57–70
2. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144(5):646–674
3. Wang M, Zhao J, Zhang L, Wei F, Lian Y, Wu Y et al (2017) Role of tumor microenvironment in tumorigenesis. J Cancer 8(5):761–773
4. Chen F, Zhuang X, Lin L, Yu P, Wang Y, Shi Y et al (2015) New horizons in tumor microenvironment biology: challenges and opportunities. BMC Med 13:45
5. Mroue R, Bissell MJ (2013) Three-dimensional cultures of mouse mammary epithelial cells. Methods Mol Biol 945:221–250
6. Cirri P, Chiarugi P (2011) Cancer associated fibroblasts: the dark side of the coin. Am J Cancer Res 1(4):482–497
7. Cheng L, Huang Z, Zhou W, Wu Q, Donnola S, Liu JK et al (2013) Glioblastoma stem cells generate vascular pericytes to support vessel function and tumor growth. Cell 153(1):139–152
8. Gabrilovich DI, Ostrand-Rosenberg S, Bronte V (2012) Coordinated regulation of myeloid cells by tumours. Nat Rev Immunol 12(4):253–268
9. Pang LY, Hurst EA, Argyle DJ (2016) Cyclooxygenase-2: a role in cancer stem cell survival and repopulation of cancer cells during therapy. Stem Cells Int 2016:2048731
10. Claria J (2003) Cyclooxygenase-2 biology. Curr Pharm Des 9(27):2177–2190
11. Soh JW, Weinstein IB (2003) Role of COX-independent targets of NSAIDs and related compounds in cancer prevention and treatment. Prog Exp Tumor Res 37:261–285
12. Sarkar FH, Adsule S, Li Y, Padhye S (2007) Back to the future: COX-2 inhibitors for chemoprevention and cancer therapy. Mini Rev Med Chem 7(6):599–608
13. Kis B, Snipes JA, Isse T, Nagy K, Busija DW (2003) Putative cyclooxygenase-3 expression in rat brain cells. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 23(11):1287–1292
14. Gurram B, Zhang S, Li M, Li H, Xie Y, Cui H et al (2018) Celecoxib conjugated fluorescent probe for identification and discrimination of Cyclooxygenase-2 enzyme in cancer cells. Anal Chem 90(8):5187–5193
15. Su CW, Zhang Y, Zhu YT (2016) Stromal COX-2 signaling are correlated with colorectal cancer: a review. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 107:33–38
16. Obermoser V, Baecker D, Schuster C, Braun V, Kircher B, Gust R (2018) Chlorinated cobalt alkyne complexes derived from acetylsalicylic acid as new specific antitumor agents. Dalton Trans 47(12):4341–4351
17. Raj V, Bhadauria AS, Singh AK, Kumar U, Rai A, Keshari AK et al (2018) Novel 1,3,4-thiadiazoles inhibit colorectal cancer via blockade of IL-6/COX-2 mediated JAK2/STAT3 signals as evidenced through data-based mathematical modeling. Cytokine 118:144
18. Mortezaee K (2018) Human hepatocellular carcinoma: protection by melatonin. J Cell Physiol 233(10):6486–6508

19. Dannenberg AJ, Lippman SM, Mann JR, Subbaramaiah K, DuBois RN (2005) Cyclooxygenase-2 and epidermal growth factor receptor: pharmacologic targets for chemoprevention. J Clin Oncol 23(2):254–266
20. Xu W, Huang Y, Zhang T, Zhao L, Fan J, Li L (2018) Cyclooxygenase-2 gene polymorphisms and susceptibility to hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis based on 10 case-control studies. J Cancer Res Ther 14(Supplement):S105–SS13
21. Xiao G, Chen W, Kulmacz RJ (1998) Comparison of structural stabilities of prostaglandin H synthase-1 and -2. J Biol Chem 273(12):6801–6811
22. Picot D, Loll PJ, Garavito RM (1994) The X-ray crystal structure of the membrane protein prostaglandin H2 synthase-1. Nature 367(6460):243–249
23. Luong C, Miller A, Barnett J, Chow J, Ramesha C, Browner MF (1996) Flexibility of the NSAID binding site in the structure of human cyclooxygenase-2. Nat Struct Biol 3(11):927–933
24. Kurumbail RG, Stevens AM, Gierse JK, McDonald JJ, Stegeman RA, Pak JY et al (1996) Structural basis for selective inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 by anti-inflammatory agents. Nature 384(6610):644–648
25. Smith WL, DeWitt DL, Garavito RM (2000) Cyclooxygenases: structural, cellular, and molecular biology. AnnuRevBiochem 69:145–182
26. Rouzer CA, Marnett LJ (2003) Mechanism of free radical oxygenation of polyunsaturated fatty acids by cyclooxygenases. Chem Rev 103(6):2239–2304
27. Mbonye UR, Yuan C, Harris CE, Sidhu RS, Song I, Arakawa T et al (2008) Two distinct pathways for cyclooxygenase-2 protein degradation. J Biol Chem 283(13):8611–8623
28. Garavito RM, Malkowski MG, DeWitt DL (2002) The structures of prostaglandin endoperoxide H synthases-1 and -2. Prostaglandins Other Lipid Mediat 68-69:129–152
29. Garavito RM, Mulichak AM (2003) The structure of mammalian cyclooxygenases. AnnuRevBiophysBiomolStruct 32:183–206
30. Kulmacz RJ, van der Donk WA, Tsai AL (2003) Comparison of the properties of prostaglandin H synthase-1 and -2. Prog Lipid Res 42(5):377–404
31. Liu J, Seibold SA, Rieke CJ, Song I, Cukier RI, Smith WL (2007) Prostaglandin endoperoxide H synthases: peroxidase hydroperoxide specificity and cyclooxygenase activation. J Biol Chem 282(25):18233–18244
32. van der Donk WA, Tsai AL, Kulmacz RJ (2002) The cyclooxygenase reaction mechanism. Biochemistry 41(52):15451–15458
33. Smith WL, DeWitt DL, Garavito RM (2000) Cyclooxygenases: structural, cellular, and molecular biology. Annu Rev Biochem 69:145–182
34. Howe LR (2007) Inflammation and breast cancer. Cyclooxygenase/prostaglandin signaling and breast cancer. Breast Cancer Res 9(4):210
35. Singh-Ranger G, Salhab M, Mokbel K (2008) The role of cyclooxygenase-2 in breast cancer: review. Breast Cancer Res Treat 109(2):189–198
36. Ohtsuka J, Oshima H, Ezawa I, Abe R, Oshima M, Ohki R (2018) Functional loss of p53 cooperates with the in vivo microenvironment to promote malignant progression of gastric cancers. Sci Rep 8(1):2291
37. Liu Y, Borchert GL, Surazynski A, Phang JM (2008) Proline oxidase, a p53-induced gene, targets COX-2/PGE2 signaling to induce apoptosis and inhibit tumor growth in colorectal cancers. Oncogene 27(53):6729–6737
38. Yue X, Nguyen TD, Zellmer V, Zhang S, Zorlutuna P (2018) Stromal cell-laden 3D hydrogel microwell arrays as tumor microenvironment model for studying stiffness dependent stromal cell-cancer interactions. Biomaterials 170:37–48
39. Gallo O, Masini E, Bianchi B, Bruschini L, Paglierani M, Franchi A (2002) Prognostic significance of cyclooxygenase-2 pathway and angiogenesis in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. Hum Pathol 33(7):708–714
40. Jiao G, Ren T, Lu Q, Sun Y, Lou Z, Peng X et al (2013) Prognostic significance of cyclooxygenase-2 in osteosarcoma: a meta-analysis. Tumour Biol: the journal of the International Society for Oncodevelopmental Biology and Medicine 34(5):2489–2495
41. Sicking I, Rommens K, Battista MJ, Bohm D, Gebhard S, Lebrecht A et al (2014) Prognostic influence of cyclooxygenase-2 protein and mRNA expression in node-negative breast cancer patients. BMC Cancer 14:952
42. Roelofs HM, Te Morsche RH, van Heumen BW, Nagengast FM, Peters WH (2014) Over-expression of COX-2 mRNA in colorectal cancer. BMC Gastroenterol 14:1
43. Liu Y, Sun H, Hu M, Zhang Y, Chen S, Tighe S et al (2017) The role of Cyclooxygenase-2 in colorectal carcinogenesis. Clin Colorectal Cancer 16(3):165–172
44. Liu B, Qu L, Yan S (2015) Cyclooxygenase-2 promotes tumor growth and suppresses tumor immunity. Cancer Cell Int 15:106
45. Zhu Y, Hua P, Lance P (2003) Cyclooxygenase-2 expression and prostanoid biogenesis reflect clinical phenotype in human colorectal fibroblast strains. Cancer Res 63(2):522–526
46. Prescott SM, Fitzpatrick FA (2000) Cyclooxygenase-2 and carcinogenesis. BiochimBiophysActa 1470(2):M69–M78
47. Fujino H (2016) The roles of EP4 prostanoid receptors in cancer malignancy signaling. Biol Pharm Bull 39(2):149–155
48. Fujino H, Seira N, Kurata N, Araki Y, Nakamura H, Regan JW et al (2015) Prostaglandin E2-stimulated prostanoid EP4 receptors induce prolonged de novo prostaglandin E2 synthesis through biphasic phosphorylation of extracellular signal-regulated kinases mediated by activation of protein kinase A in HCA-7 human colon cancer cells. Eur J Pharmacol 768:149–159

49. Thomas SS, Makar KW, Li L, Zheng Y, Yang P, Levy L et al (2015) Tissue-specific patterns of gene expression in the epithelium and stroma of normal colon in healthy individuals in an aspirin intervention trial. Genom Data 6:154–158
50. Lin MC, Chen SY, He PL, Herschman H, Li HJ (2018) PGE2 /EP4 antagonism enhances tumor chemosensitivity by inducing extracellular vesicle-mediated clearance of cancer stem cells. Int J Cancer 143:1440
51. Lala PK, Nandi P, Majumder M (2018) Roles of prostaglandins in tumor-associated lymphangiogenesis with special reference to breast cancer. Cancer Metastasis Rev 37:369
52. Crowley-Weber CL, Payne CM, Gleason-Guzman M, Watts GS, Futscher B, Waltmire CN et al (2002) Development and molecular characterization of HCT-116 cell lines resistant to the tumor promoter and multiple stress-inducer, deoxycholate. Carcinogenesis 23(12):2063–2080
53. Nishihara H, Kizaka-Kondoh S, Insel PA, Eckmann L (2003) Inhibition of apoptosis in normal and transformed intestinal epithelial cells by cAMP through induction of inhibitor of apoptosis protein (IAP)-2. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(15):8921–8926
54. Zhu Y, Zhu M, Lance P (2012) IL1beta-mediated Stromal COX-2 signaling mediates proliferation and invasiveness of colonic epithelial cancer cells. Exp Cell Res 318(19):2520–2530
55. Zhu Y, Zhu M, Lance P (2012) iNOS signaling interacts with COX-2 pathway in colonic fibroblasts. Exp Cell Res. 318(16):2116–2127
56. Zhu Y, Zhu M, Lance P (2012) Stromal COX-2 signaling activated by deoxycholic acid mediates proliferation and invasiveness of colorectal epithelial cancer cells. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 425(3):607–612
57. Wang HS, Cao HJ, Winn VD, Rezanka LJ, Frobert Y, Evans CH et al (1996) Leukoregulin induction of prostaglandin-endoperoxide H synthase-2 in human orbital fibroblasts. An in vitro model for connective tissue inflammation. J Biol Chem 271(37):22718–22728
58. Kim EC, Zhu Y, Andersen V, Sciaky D, Cao HJ, Meekins H et al (1998) Cytokine-mediated PGE2 expression in human colonic fibroblasts. AmJPhysiol 275(4 Pt 1):C988–CC94
59. Zhu M, Zhu Y, Lance P (2013) TNFalpha-activated stromal COX-2 signalling promotes proliferative and invasive potential of colon cancer epithelial cells. Cell Prolif 46(4):374–381
60. Dixon DA, Tolley ND, King PH, Nabors LB, McIntyre TM, Zimmerman GA et al (2001) Altered expression of the mRNA stability factor HuR promotes cyclooxygenase-2 expression in colon cancer cells. J Clin Invest 108(11):1657–1665
61. Charalambous MP, Maihofner C, Bhambra U, Lightfoot T, Gooderham NJ (2003) Colorectal Cancer Study G. Upregulation of cyclooxygenase-2 is accompanied by increased expression of nuclear factor-kappa B and I kappa B kinase-alpha in human colorectal cancer epithelial cells. Br J Cancer 88(10):1598–1604
62. Mortezaee K, Khanlarkhani N (2018) Melatonin application in targeting oxidative-induced liver injuries: A review. J Cell Physiol 233(5):4015–4032
63. Mortezaee K, Khanlarkhani N, Beyer C, Zendedel A (2018) Inflammasome: its role in traumatic brain and spinal cord injury. J Cell Physiol 233(7):5160–5169
64. Cai TT, Ye SB, Liu YN, He J, Chen QY, Mai HQ et al (2017) LMP1-mediated glycolysis induces myeloid-derived suppressor cell expansion in nasopharyngeal carcinoma. PLoS Pathog 13(7):e1006503
65. Hao J, Xu H, Luo M, Yu W, Chen M, Liao Y et al (2018) The tumor-promoting role of TRIP4 in melanoma progression and its involvement in response to BRAF-targeted therapy. J Invest Dermatol 138(1):159–170
66. Baek HS, Park N, Kwon YJ, Ye DJ, Shin S, Chun YJ (2017) Annexin A5 suppresses cyclooxygenase-2 expression by downregulating the protein kinase C-zeta-nuclear factor-kappaB signaling pathway in prostate cancer cells. Oncotarget 8(43):74263–74275
67. Wong JH, Ho KH, Nam S, Hsu WL, Lin CH, Chang CM et al (2017) Store-operated Ca(2+) entry facilitates the lipopolysaccharide-induced cyclooxygenase-2 expression in gastric cancer cells. Sci Rep 7(1):12813
68. Feng X, Yu Y, He S, Cheng J, Gong Y, Zhang Z et al (2017) Dying glioma cells establish a proangiogenic microenvironment through a caspase 3 dependent mechanism. Cancer Lett 385:12–20
69. Hung JH, Su IJ, Lei HY, Wang HC, Lin WC, Chang WT et al (2004) Endoplasmic reticulum stress stimulates the expression of cyclooxygenase-2 through activation of NF-kappaB and pp38 mitogen-activated protein kinase. J Biol Chem 279(45):46384–46392
70. Liu X, Li S, Li Y, Cheng B, Tan B, Wang G (2018) Puerarin inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis by upregulation of miR-16 in bladder cancer cell line T24. Oncol Res 26(8):1227–1234
71. Liu W, Reinmuth N, Stoeltzing O, Parikh AA, Tellez C, Williams S et al (2003) Cyclooxygenase-2 is up-regulated by interleukin-1 beta in human colorectal cancer cells via multiple signaling pathways. Cancer Res 63(13):3632–3636
72. Chou WY, Chuang KH, Sun D, Lee YH, Kao PH, Lin YY et al (2015) Inhibition of PKC-induced COX-2 and IL-8 expression in human breast cancer cells by glucosamine. J Cell Physiol 230(9):2240–2251
73. Zhou P, Qin J, Li Y, Li G, Wang Y, Zhang N et al (2017) Combination therapy of PKCzeta and COX-2 inhibitors synergistically suppress melanoma metastasis. J Exp Clin Cancer Res 36(1):115
74. Hu H, Han T, Zhuo M, Wu LL, Yuan C, Wu L et al (2017) Elevated COX-2 expression promotes angiogenesis through EGFR/p38-MAPK/Sp1-dependent signalling in pancreatic cancer. Sci Rep 7(1):470

75. Maturu P, Jones D, Ruteshouser EC, Hu Q, Reynolds JM, Hicks J et al (2017) Role of cyclooxygenase-2 pathway in creating an immunosuppressive microenvironment and in initiation and progression of Wilms' tumor. Neoplasia 19(3):237–249
76. Semaan J, Pinon A, Rioux B, Hassan L, Limami Y, Pouget C et al (2016) Resistance to 3-HTMC-induced apoptosis through activation of PI3K/Akt, MEK/ERK, and p38/COX-2/PGE2 pathways in human HT-29 and HCT116 colorectal cancer cells. J Cell Biochem 117(12):2875–2885
77. Ramu A, Kathiresan S, Ramadoss H, Nallu A, Kaliyan R, Azamuthu T (2018) Gramine attenuates EGFR-mediated inflammation and cell proliferation in oral carcinogenesis via regulation of NF-kappaB and STAT3 signaling. Biomed Pharmacother 98:523–530
78. Tong D, Liu Q, Liu G, Xu J, Lan W, Jiang Y et al (2017) Metformin inhibits castration-induced EMT in prostate cancer by repressing COX2/PGE2/STAT3 axis. Cancer Lett 389:23–32
79. Zheng N, Chen J, Li T, Liu W, Liu J, Chen H et al (2017) Abortifacient metapristone (RU486 derivative) interrupts CXCL12/CXCR4 axis for ovarian metastatic chemoprevention. Mol Carcinog 56(8):1896–1908
80. Zheng N, Chen J, Liu W, Liu J, Li T, Chen H et al (2017) Mifepristone inhibits ovarian cancer metastasis by intervening in SDF-1/CXCR4 chemokine axis. Oncotarget 8(35):59123–59135
81. Downward J (2003) Targeting RAS signalling pathways in cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 3(1):11–22
82. Vivanco I, Sawyers CL (2002) The phosphatidylinositol 3-Kinase AKT pathway in human cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 2(7):489–501
83. Raj V, Bhadauria AS, Singh AK, Kumar U, Rai A, Keshari AK et al (2019) Novel 1,3,4-thiadiazoles inhibit colorectal cancer via blockade of IL-6/COX-2 mediated JAK2/STAT3 signals as evidenced through data-based mathematical modeling. Cytokine 118:144–159
84. Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW (2004) Cancer genes and the pathways they control. Nat Med 10(8):789–799
85. Wang D, Buchanan FG, Wang H, Dey SK, DuBois RN (2005) Prostaglandin E2 enhances intestinal adenoma growth via activation of the Ras-mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade. Cancer Res 65(5):1822–1829
86. Kaidi A, Qualtrough D, Williams AC, Paraskeva C (2006) Direct transcriptional up-regulation of cyclooxygenase-2 by hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF)-1 promotes colorectal tumor cell survival and enhances HIF-1 transcriptional activity during hypoxia. Cancer Res 66(13):6683–6691
87. Hattar K, Franz K, Ludwig M, Sibelius U, Wilhelm J, Lohmeyer J et al (2014) Interactions between neutrophils and non-small cell lung cancer cells: enhancement of tumor proliferation and inflammatory mediator synthesis. Cancer Immunol Immunother 63(12):1297–1306
88. Hull MA, Cuthbert RJ, Ko CWS, Scott DJ, Cartwright EJ, Hawcroft G et al (2017) Paracrine cyclooxygenase-2 activity by macrophages drives colorectal adenoma progression in the Apc (Min/+) mouse model of intestinal tumorigenesis. Sci Rep 7(1):6074
89. Esbona K, Yi Y, Saha S, Yu M, Van Doorn RR, Conklin MW et al (2018) The presence of cyclooxygenase 2, tumor-associated macrophages, and collagen alignment as prognostic markers for invasive breast carcinoma patients. Am J Pathol 188(3):559–573
90. Harris RE, Beebe-Donk J, Alshafie GA (2007) Cancer chemoprevention by cyclooxygenase 2 (COX-2) blockade: results of case control studies. Subcell Biochem 42:193–212
91. Massague J (2008) TGFbeta in cancer. Cell 134(2):215–230
92. Markowitz S, Wang J, Myeroff L, Parsons R, Sun L, Lutterbaugh J et al (1995) Inactivation of the type II TGF-beta receptor in colon cancer cells with microsatellite instability. Science 268(5215):1336–1338
93. Tsujii M, DuBois RN (1995) Alterations in cellular adhesion and apoptosis in epithelial cells overexpressing prostaglandin endoperoxide synthase 2. Cell 83(3):493–501
94. van de Wetering M, Sancho E, Verweij C, de Lau W, Oving I, Hurlstone A et al (2002) The beta-catenin/TCF-4 complex imposes a crypt progenitor phenotype on colorectal cancer cells. Cell 111(2):241–250
95. Castellone MD, Teramoto H, Williams BO, Druey KM, Gutkind JS (2005) Prostaglandin E2 promotes colon cancer cell growth through a Gs-axin-beta-catenin signaling axis. Science 310(5753):1504–1510
96. Korinek V, Barker N, Moerer P, van Donselaar E, Huls G, Peters PJ et al (1998) Depletion of epithelial stem-cell compartments in the small intestine of mice lacking Tcf-4. Nat Genet 19(4):379–383
97. Greenhough A, Smartt HJ, Moore AE, Roberts HR, Williams AC, Paraskeva C et al (2009) The COX-2/PGE2 pathway: key roles in the hallmarks of cancer and adaptation to the tumour microenvironment. Carcinogenesis 30(3):377–386
98. Soto MS, O'Brien ER, Andreou K, Scrace SF, Zakaria R, Jenkinson MD et al (2016) Disruption of tumour-host communication by downregulation of LFA-1 reduces COX-2 and e-NOS expression and inhibits brain metastasis growth. Oncotarget 7(32):52375–52391
99. Singh B, Berry JA, Shoher A, Lucci A (2006) COX-2 induces IL-11 production in human breast cancer cells. J Surg Res 131(2):267–275
100. Hoing B, Kanaan O, Altenhoff P, Petri R, Thangavelu K, Schluter A et al (2018) Stromal versus tumoral inflammation differentially contribute to metastasis and poor survival in laryngeal squamous cell carcinoma. Oncotarget 9(9):8415–8426
101. Sorski L, Melamed R, Matzner P, Lavon H, Shaashua L, Rosenne E et al (2016) Reducing liver metastases of colon cancer in the context of extensive and minor surgeries through beta-adrenoceptors blockade and COX2 inhibition. Brain Behav Immun 58:91–98

102. Weinberg RA (2008) Mechanisms of malignant progression. Carcinogenesis 29(6):1092–1095
103. Gupta GP, Nguyen DX, Chiang AC, Bos PD, Kim JY, Nadal C et al (2007) Mediators of vascular remodelling co-opted for sequential steps in lung metastasis. Nature 446(7137):765–770
104. He TC, Chan TA, Vogelstein B, Kinzler KW (1999) PPARdelta is an APC-regulated target of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. Cell 99(3):335–345
105. Sheng H, Shao J, Washington MK, DuBois RN (2001) Prostaglandin E2 increases growth and motility of colorectal carcinoma cells. J Biol Chem 276(21):18075–18081
106. Tsujii M, Kawano S, DuBois RN (1997) Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in human colon cancer cells increases metastatic potential. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94(7):3336–3340
107. Fenwick SW, Toogood GJ, Lodge JP, Hull MA (2003) The effect of the selective cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor rofecoxib on human colorectal cancer liver metastases. Gastroenterology 125(3):716–729
108. Yao M, Kargman S, Lam EC, Kelly CR, Zheng Y, Luk P et al (2003) Inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 by rofecoxib attenuates the growth and metastatic potential of colorectal carcinoma in mice. Cancer Res 63(3):586–592
109. Pai R, Nakamura T, Moon WS, Tarnawski AS (2003) Prostaglandins promote colon cancer cell invasion; signaling by cross-talk between two distinct growth factor receptors. FASEB J 17(12):1640–1647
110. Birchmeier C, Birchmeier W, Gherardi E, Vande Woude GF (2003) Met, metastasis, motility and more. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 4(12):915–925
111. Pan J, Yang Q, Shao J, Zhang L, Ma J, Wang Y et al (2016) Cyclooxygenase-2 induced beta1-integrin expression in NSCLC and promoted cell invasion via the EP1/MAPK/E2F-1/FoxC2 signal pathway. Sci Rep 6:33823
112. Ko CJ, Lan SW, Lu YC, Cheng TS, Lai PF, Tsai CH et al (2017) Inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2-mediated matriptase activation contributes to the suppression of prostate cancer cell motility and metastasis. Oncogene 36(32):4597–4609
113. Majumder M, Landman E, Liu L, Hess D, Lala PK (2015) COX-2 elevates oncogenic miR-526b in breast cancer by EP4 activation. Mol Cancer Res 13(6):1022–1033
114. Xian X, Huang L, Zhang B, Wu C, Cui J, Wang Z (2016) WIN 55,212-2 inhibits the epithelial mesenchymal transition of gastric cancer cells via COX-2 signals. Cell Physiol Biochem 39(6):2149–2157
115. Williams CS, Tsujii M, Reese J, Dey SK, DuBois RN (2000) Host cyclooxygenase-2 modulates carcinoma growth. J Clin Invest 105(11):1589–1594
116. Hull MA, Faluyi OO, Ko CW, Holwell S, Scott DJ, Cuthbert RJ et al (2006) Regulation of stromal cell cyclooxygenase-2 in the ApcMin/+ mouse model of intestinal tumorigenesis. Carcinogenesis 27(3):382–391
117. Kerr JFR, Wyllie AH, Currie AR (1972) Apoptosis: a basic biological phenomenon with wide-ranging implications in tissue kinetics. Br J Cancer 26:239–257
118. Adams JM (2003) Ways of dying: multiple pathways to apoptosis. Genes Dev 17(20):2481–2495
119. Green DR (1998) Apoptotic pathways: the roads to ruin. Cell 94(6):695–698
120. Thompson CB (1995) Apoptosis in the pathogenesis and treatment of disease. Science 267:1456–1462
121. Green DR, Evan GI (2002) A matter of life and death. Cancer Cell 1(1):19–30
122. Pelengaris S, Khan M, Evan GI (2002) Suppression of Myc-induced apoptosis in beta cells exposes multiple oncogenic properties of Myc and triggers carcinogenic progression. Cell 109(3):321–334
123. Gungor H, Ilhan N, Eroksuz H (2018) The effectiveness of cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors and evaluation of angiogenesis in the model of experimental colorectal cancer. Biomed Pharmacother 102:221–229
124. Hosseini F, Mahdian-Shakib A, Jadidi-Niaragh F, Enderami SE, Mohammadi H, Hemmatzadeh M et al (2018) Anti-inflammatory and anti-tumor effects of alpha-l-guluronic acid (G2013) on cancer-related inflammation in a murine breast cancer model. Biomed Pharmacother 98:793–800
125. Todoric J, Antonucci L, Karin M (2016) Targeting inflammation in cancer prevention and therapy. Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 9(12):895–905
126. Chen W, Bai L, Wang X, Xu S, Belinsky SA, Lin Y (2010) Acquired activation of the Akt/cyclooxygenase-2/Mcl-1 pathway renders lung cancer cells resistant to apoptosis. Mol Pharmacol 77(3):416–423
127. Krysan K, Dalwadi H, Sharma S, Pold M, Dubinett S (2004) Cyclooxygenase 2-dependent expression of survivin is critical for apoptosis resistance in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 64(18):6359–6362
128. Janakiraman H, House RP, Talwar S, Courtney SM, Hazard ES, Hardiman G et al (2017) Repression of caspase-3 and RNA-binding protein HuR cleavage by cyclooxygenase-2 promotes drug resistance in oral squamous cell carcinoma. Oncogene 36(22):3137–3148
129. Sheng H, Shao J, Morrow JD, Beauchamp RD, DuBois RN (1998) Modulation of apoptosis and Bcl-2 expression by prostaglandin E2 in human colon cancer cells. Cancer Res 58(2):362–366
130. Pozzi A, Yan X, Macias-Perez I, Wei S, Hata AN, Breyer RM et al (2004) Colon carcinoma cell growth is associated with prostaglandin E2/EP4 receptor-evoked ERK activation. J Biol Chem 279(28):29797–29804
131. Tessner TG, Muhale F, Riehl TE, Anant S, Stenson WF (2004) Prostaglandin E2 reduces radiation-induced epithelial apoptosis through a mechanism involving AKT activation and bax translocation. J Clin Invest 114(11):1676–1685

132. Pai R, Soreghan B, Szabo IL, Pavelka M, Baatar D, Tarnawski AS (2002) Prostaglandin E2 transactivates EGF receptor: a novel mechanism for promoting colon cancer growth and gastrointestinal hypertrophy. Nat Med 8(3):289–293
133. Buchanan FG, Wang D, Bargiacchi F, DuBois RN (2003) Prostaglandin E2 regulates cell migration via the intracellular activation of the epidermal growth factor receptor. J Biol Chem 278(37):35451–35457
134. Leone V, di Palma A, Ricchi P, Acquaviva F, Giannouli M, Di Prisco AM et al (2007) PGE2 inhibits apoptosis in human adenocarcinoma Caco-2 cell line through Ras-PI3K association and cAMP-dependent kinase A activation. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol 293(4):G673–G681
135. Chin YT, Wei PL, Ho Y, Nana AW, Changou CA, Chen YR et al (2018) Thyroxine inhibits resveratrol-caused apoptosis by PD-L1 in ovarian cancer cells. Endocr Relat Cancer 25(5):533–545
136. Lang S, Picu A, Hofmann T, Andratschke M, Mack B, Moosmann A et al (2006) COX-inhibitors relieve the immunosuppressive effect of tumor cells and improve functions of immune effectors. Int J Immunopathol Pharmacol 19(2):409–419
137. Miao J, Lu X, Hu Y, Piao C, Wu X, Liu X et al (2017) Prostaglandin E2 and PD-1 mediated inhibition of antitumor CTL responses in the human tumor microenvironment. Oncotarget 8(52):89802–89810
138. Li Q, Liu L, Zhang Q, Liu S, Ge D, You Z (2014) Interleukin-17 indirectly promotes M2 macrophage differentiation through stimulation of COX-2/PGE2 pathway in the cancer cells. Cancer Res Treat 46(3):297–306
139. Dubey P, Shrivastava R, Tripathi C, Jain NK, Tewari BN, Lone MU et al (2014) Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition attenuates hypoxic cancer cells induced m2-polarization of macrophages. Cell Mol Biol (Noisy-le-Grand) 60(3):10–15
140. Holt D, Ma X, Kundu N, Fulton A (2011) Prostaglandin E(2) (PGE (2)) suppresses natural killer cell function primarily through the PGE(2) receptor EP4. Cancer Immunol Immunother 60(11):1577–1586
141. Gobel C, Breitenbuecher F, Kalkavan H, Hahnel PS, Kasper S, Hoffarth S et al (2014) Functional expression cloning identifies COX-2 as a suppressor of antigen-specific cancer immunity. Cell Death Dis 5:e1568
142. Okano M, Sugata Y, Fujiwara T, Matsumoto R, Nishibori M, Shimizu K et al (2006) E prostanoid 2 (EP2)/EP4-mediated suppression of antigen-specific human T-cell responses by prostaglandin E2. Immunology 118(3):343–352
143. Gualde N, Harizi H (2004) Prostanoids and their receptors that modulate dendritic cell-mediated immunity. Immunol Cell Biol 82(4):353–360
144. Mougiakakos D, Johansson CC, Trocme E, All-Ericsson C, Economou MA, Larsson O et al (2010) Intratumoral forkhead box P3-positive regulatory T cells predict poor survival in cyclooxygenase-2-positive uveal melanoma. Cancer 116(9):2224–2233
145. Yuan XL, Chen L, Li MX, Dong P, Xue J, Wang J et al (2010) Elevated expression of Foxp3 in tumor-infiltrating Treg cells suppresses T-cell proliferation and contributes to gastric cancer progression in a COX-2-dependent manner. Clin Immunol 134(3):277–288
146. Hori S, Nomura T, Sakaguchi S (2003) Control of regulatory T cell development by the transcription factor Foxp3. Science 299(5609):1057–1061
147. Mahic M, Yaqub S, Johansson CC, Tasken K, Aandahl EM (2006) FOXP3+CD4+CD25+ adaptive regulatory T cells express cyclooxygenase-2 and suppress effector T cells by a prostaglandin E2-dependent mechanism. J Immunol 177(1):246–254
148. Martinet L, Jean C, Dietrich G, Fournie JJ, Poupot R (2010) PGE2 inhibits natural killer and gamma delta T cell cytotoxicity triggered by NKR and TCR through a cAMP-mediated PKA type I-dependent signaling. Biochem Pharmacol 80(6):838–845
149. Markosyan N, Chen EP, Ndong VN, Yao Y, Sterner CJ, Chodosh LA et al (2011) Deletion of cyclooxygenase 2 in mouse mammary epithelial cells delays breast cancer onset through augmentation of type 1 immune responses in tumors. Carcinogenesis 32(10):1441–1449
150. Harizi H, Juzan M, Pitard V, Moreau JF, Gualde N (2002) Cyclooxygenase-2-issued prostaglandin e(2) enhances the production of endogenous IL-10, which down-regulates dendritic cell functions. J Immunol 168(5):2255–2263
151. Harizi H, Grosset C, Gualde N (2003) Prostaglandin E2 modulates dendritic cell function via EP2 and EP4 receptor subtypes. J Leukoc Biol 73(6):756–763
152. Harris SG, Padilla J, Koumas L, Ray D, Phipps RP (2002) Prostaglandins as modulators of immunity. Trends Immunol 23(3):144–150
153. Harizi H, Gualde N (2005) The impact of eicosanoids on the crosstalk between innate and adaptive immunity: the key roles of dendritic cells. Tissue Antigens 65(6):507–514
154. Dubois RN, Abramson SB, Crofford L, Gupta RA, Simon LS, Van De Putte LB et al (1998) Cyclooxygenase in biology and disease. FASEB J 12(12):1063–1073
155. Masferrer JL, Leahy KM, Koki AT, Zweifel BS, Settle SL, Woerner BM et al (2000) Antiangiogenic and antitumor activities of cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors. Cancer Res 60(5):1306–1311
156. Kirschenbaum A, Liu X, Yao S, Levine AC (2001) The role of cyclooxygenase-2 in prostate cancer. Urology 58(2 Suppl 1):127–131
157. Ferrara N, Gerber HP, LeCouter J (2003) The biology of VEGF and its receptors. Nat Med 9(6):669–676
158. Seno H, Oshima M, Ishikawa TO, Oshima H, Takaku K, Chiba T et al (2002) Cyclooxygenase 2- and prostaglandin E(2) receptor EP(2)-dependent angiogenesis in Apc(Delta716) mouse intestinal polyps. Cancer Res 62(2):506–511

159. Dormond O, Foletti A, Paroz C, Ruegg C (2001) NSAIDs inhibit alpha V beta 3 integrin-mediated and Cdc42/Rac-dependent endothelial-cell spreading, migration and angiogenesis. Nat Med 7(9):1041–1047
160. Fukuda R, Kelly B, Semenza GL (2003) Vascular endothelial growth factor gene expression in colon cancer cells exposed to prostaglandin E2 is mediated by hypoxia-inducible factor 1. Cancer Res 63(9):2330–2334
161. Salcedo R, Zhang X, Young HA, Michael N, Wasserman K, Ma WH et al (2003) Angiogenic effects of prostaglandin E2 are mediated by up-regulation of CXCR4 on human microvascular endothelial cells. Blood 102(6):1966–1977
162. Wang D, Wang H, Brown J, Daikoku T, Ning W, Shi Q et al (2006) CXCL1 induced by prostaglandin E2 promotes angiogenesis in colorectal cancer. J Exp Med 203(4):941–951
163. Carmeliet P (2000) Mechanisms of angiogenesis and arteriogenesis. Nat Med 6(4):389–395
164. Lee A, Frischer J, Serur A, Huang J, Bae JO, Kornfield ZN et al (2006) Inhibition of cyclooxygenase-2 disrupts tumor vascular mural cell recruitment and survival signaling. Cancer Res 66(8):4378–4384
165. Szweda M, Rychlik A, Babinska I, Pomianowski A (2019) Significance of cyclooxygenase-2 in oncogenesis. J Vet Res 63(2):215–224
166. Hirschi KK, D'Amore PA (1996) Pericytes in the microvasculature. Cardiovasc Res 32(4):687–698
167. Diaz-Flores L, Gutierrez R, Varela H, Rancel N, Valladares F (1991) Microvascular pericytes: a review of their morphological and functional characteristics. Histol Histopathol 6(2):269–286
168. Birbrair A (2018) Pericyte biology: development, homeostasis, and disease. Adv Exp Med Biol 1109:1–3
169. Erber R, Thurnher A, Katsen AD, Groth G, Kerger H, Hammes HP et al (2004) Combined inhibition of VEGF and PDGF signaling enforces tumor vessel regression by interfering with pericyte-mediated endothelial cell survival mechanisms. FASEB J 18(2):338–340
170. Frischer JS, Huang J, Serur A, Kadenhe-Chiweshe A, McCrudden KW, O'Toole K et al (2004) Effects of potent VEGF blockade on experimental Wilms tumor and its persisting vasculature. Int J Oncol 25(3):549–553
171. Huang J, Soffer SZ, Kim ES, McCrudden KW, Huang J, New T et al (2004) Vascular remodeling marks tumors that recur during chronic suppression of angiogenesis. Mol Cancer Res 2(1):36–42
172. Birbrair A, Zhang T, Wang ZM, Messi ML, Olson JD, Mintz A et al (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307(1):C25–C38
173. Yang X, Sheares KK, Davie N, Upton PD, Taylor GW, Horsley J et al (2002) Hypoxic induction of cox-2 regulates proliferation of human pulmonary artery smooth muscle cells. Am J Respir Cell Mol Biol 27(6):688–696
174. Inoue H, Taba Y, Miwa Y, Yokota C, Miyagi M, Sasaguri T (2002) Transcriptional and posttranscriptional regulation of cyclooxygenase-2 expression by fluid shear stress in vascular endothelial cells. Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol 22(9):1415–1420
175. Subbaramaiah K, Dannenberg AJ (2003) Cyclooxygenase 2: a molecular target for cancer prevention and treatment. Trends Pharmacol Sci 24(2):96–102
176. Csiki I, Yanagisawa K, Haruki N, Nadaf S, Morrow JD, Johnson DH et al (2006) Thioredoxin-1 modulates transcription of cyclooxygenase-2 via hypoxia-inducible factor-1alpha in non-small cell lung cancer. Cancer Res 66(1):143–150
177. Sheng H, Shao J, Hooton EB, Tsujii M, DuBois RN, Beauchamp RD (1997) Cyclooxygenase-2 induction and transforming growth factor beta growth inhibition in rat intestinal epithelial cells. Cell Growth Differ: the molecular biology journal of the American Association for Cancer Research 8(4):463–470
178. Guo YS, Cheng JZ, Jin GF, Gutkind JS, Hellmich MR, Townsend CM Jr (2002) Gastrin stimulates cyclooxygenase-2 expression in intestinal epithelial cells through multiple signaling pathways. Evidence for involvement of ERK5 kinase and transactivation of the epidermal growth factor receptor. J Biol Chem 277(50):48755–48763
179. Jones MK, Sasaki E, Halter F, Pai R, Nakamura T, Arakawa T et al (1999) HGF triggers activation of the COX-2 gene in rat gastric epithelial cells: action mediated through the ERK2 signaling pathway. FASEB J 13(15):2186–2194
180. Howe LR, Subbaramaiah K, Chung WJ, Dannenberg AJ, Brown AM (1999) Transcriptional activation of cyclooxygenase-2 in Wnt-1-transformed mouse mammary epithelial cells. Cancer Res 59(7):1572–1577
181. Howe LR, Crawford HC, Subbaramaiah K, Hassell JA, Dannenberg AJ, Brown AM (2001) PEA3 is up-regulated in response to Wnt1 and activates the expression of cyclooxygenase-2. J Biol Chem 276(23):20108–20115
182. Araki Y, Okamura S, Hussain SP, Nagashima M, He P, Shiseki M et al (2003) Regulation of cyclooxygenase-2 expression by the Wnt and ras pathways. Cancer Res 63(3):728–734
183. Theodoraki MN, Hoffmann TK, Whiteside TL (2018) Separation of plasma-derived exosomes into CD3((+)) and CD3((−)) fractions allows for association of immune cell and tumour cell markers with disease activity in HNSCC patients. Clin Exp Immunol 192(3):271–283
184. Xu Y, Yang X, Wang T, Yang L, He YY, Miskimins K et al (2018) Knockdown delta-5-desaturase in breast cancer cells that overexpress COX-2 results in inhibition of growth, migration and invasion via a dihomo-gamma-linolenic acid peroxidation dependent mechanism. BMC Cancer 18(1):330

185. Qiu HY, Wang PF, Li Z, Ma JT, Wang XM, Yang YH et al (2016) Synthesis of dihydropyrazole sulphonamide derivatives that act as anti-cancer agents through COX-2 inhibition. Pharmacol Res 104:86–96
186. Kirk J, Shah N, Noll B, Stevens CB, Lawler M, Mougeot FB et al (2018) Text mining-based in silico drug discovery in oral mucositis caused by high-dose cancer therapy. Support Care Cancer 26(8):2695–2705
187. Ikeya S, Sakabe JI, Yamada T, Naito T, Tokura Y (2018) Voriconazole-induced photocarcinogenesis is promoted by aryl hydrocarbon receptor-dependent COX-2 upregulation. Sci Rep 8(1):5050
188. Glinghammar B, Inoue H, Rafter JJ (2002) Deoxycholic acid causes DNA damage in colonic cells with subsequent induction of caspases, COX-2 promoter activity and the transcription factors NF-kB and AP-1. Carcinogenesis 23(5):839–845
189. Wang J, Cho NL, Zauber AG, Hsu M, Dawson D, Srivastava A et al (2018) Chemopreventive efficacy of the Cyclooxygenase-2 (Cox-2) inhibitor, celecoxib, is predicted by adenoma expression of Cox-2 and 15-PGDH. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev: a publication of the American Association for Cancer Research, cosponsored by the American Society of Preventive Oncology 27:728
190. Ng K, Meyerhardt JA, Chan AT, Sato K, Chan JA, Niedzwiecki D et al (2015) Aspirin and COX-2 inhibitor use in patients with stage III colon cancer. J Natl Cancer Inst 107(1):345
191. Kargman SL, O'Neill GP, Vickers PJ, Evans JF, Mancini JA, Jothy S (1995) Expression of prostaglandin G/H synthase-1 and -2 protein in human colon cancer. Cancer Res 55(12):2556–2559
192. Zhu LL, Xu LC, Chen Y, Zhou Q, Zeng S (2012) Poor awareness of preventing aspirin-induced gastrointestinal injury with combined protective medications. World J Gastroenterol 18(24):3167–3172
193. Cao Y, Prescott SM (2002) Many actions of cyclooxygenase-2 in cellular dynamics and in cancer. JCell Physiol 190(3):279–286
194. Punganuru SR, Madala HR, Mikelis CM, Dixit A, Arutla V, Srivenugopal KS (2018) Conception, synthesis, and characterization of a rofecoxib-combretastatin hybrid drug with potent cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibiting and microtubule disrupting activities in colon cancer cell culture and xenograft models. Oncotarget 9(40):26109–26129
195. Hudson M, Richard H, Pilote L (2007) Parabolas of medication use and discontinuation after myocardial infarction--are we closing the treatment gap? Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf 16(7):773–785
196. Russell RI (2001) Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and gastrointestinal damage-problems and solutions. Postgrad Med J 77(904):82–88
197. Sandler RS, Halabi S, Baron JA, Budinger S, Paskett E, Keresztes R et al (2003) A randomized trial of aspirin to prevent colorectal adenomas in patients with previous colorectal cancer. N Engl J Med 348(10):883–890
198. Bertagnolli MM, Eagle CJ, Zauber AG, Redston M, Solomon SD, Kim K et al (2006) Celecoxib for the prevention of sporadic colorectal adenomas. N Engl J Med 355(9):873–884
199. Bresalier RS, Sandler RS, Quan H, Bolognese JA, Oxenius B, Horgan K et al (2005) Cardiovascular events associated with rofecoxib in a colorectal adenoma chemoprevention trial. N Engl J Med 352(11):1092–1102
200. Arber N, Eagle CJ, Spicak J, Racz I, Dite P, Hajer J et al (2006) Celecoxib for the prevention of colorectal adenomatous polyps. N Engl J Med 355(9):885–895
201. Martinez JA, Yang J, Wertheim BC, Roe DJ, Schriewer A, Lance P et al (2018) Celecoxib use and circulating oxylipins in a colon polyp prevention trial. PLoS One 13(4):e0196398
202. Harris RE (2009) Cyclooxygenase-2 (cox-2) blockade in the chemoprevention of cancers of the colon, breast, prostate, and lung. Inflammopharmacology 17(2):55–67
203. Buchanan FG, Holla V, Katkuri S, Matta P, DuBois RN (2007) Targeting cyclooxygenase-2 and the epidermal growth factor receptor for the prevention and treatment of intestinal cancer. Cancer Res 67(19):9380–9388
204. Reckamp KL, Krysan K, Morrow JD, Milne GL, Newman RA, Tucker C et al (2006) A phase I trial to determine the optimal biological dose of celecoxib when combined with erlotinib in advanced non-small cell lung cancer. Clin Cancer Res 12(11 Pt 1):3381–3388
205. Barry M, Cahill RA, Roche-Nagle G, Neilan TG, Treumann A, Harmey JH et al (2009) Neoplasms escape selective COX-2 inhibition in an animal model of breast cancer. Ir J Med Sci 178(2):201–208
206. Anderson GD, Keys KL, De Ciechi PA, Masferrer JL (2009) Combination therapies that inhibit cyclooxygenase-2 and leukotriene synthesis prevent disease in murine collagen induced arthritis. Inflamm Res 58(2):109–117
207. Falandry C, Canney PA, Freyer G, Dirix LY (2009) Role of combination therapy with aromatase and cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors in patients with metastatic breast cancer. Ann Oncol 20(4):615–620
208. Duan DP, Dang XQ, Wang KZ, Wang YP, Zhang H, You WL (2012) The cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor NS-398 inhibits proliferation and induces apoptosis in human osteosarcoma cells via downregulation of the survivin pathway. Oncol Rep 28(5):1693–1700
209. Mullins MN, Lana SE, Dernell WS, Ogilvie GK, Withrow SJ, Ehrhart EJ (2004) Cyclooxygenase-2 expression in canine appendicular osteosarcomas. J Vet Intern Med 18(6):859–865
210. Naruse T, Nishida Y, Hosono K, Ishiguro N (2006) Meloxicam inhibits osteosarcoma growth, invasiveness and metastasis by COX-2-dependent and independent routes. Carcinogenesis 27(3):584–592

211. Urakawa H, Nishida Y, Naruse T, Nakashima H, Ishiguro N (2009) Cyclooxygenase-2 overexpression predicts poor survival in patients with high-grade extremity osteosarcoma: a pilot study. Clin Orthop Relat Res 467(11):2932–2938
212. Arjona-Sanchez A, Ruiz-Rabelo J, Perea MD, Vazquez R, Cruz A, Munoz Mdel C et al (2010) Effects of capecitabine and celecoxib in experimental pancreatic cancer. Pancreatology 10(5):641–647
213. Howe LR, Subbaramaiah K, Patel J, Masferrer JL, Deora A, Hudis C et al (2002) Celecoxib, a selective cyclooxygenase 2 inhibitor, protects against human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER-2)/neu-induced breast cancer. Cancer Res 62(19):5405–5407
214. Dandekar DS, Lopez M, Carey RI, Lokeshwar BL (2005) Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitor celecoxib augments chemotherapeutic drug-induced apoptosis by enhancing activation of caspase-3 and -9 in prostate cancer cells. Int J Cancer 115(3):484–492

7 Renin–Angiotensin System in the Tumor Microenvironment

Kenta Nakamura, Ryuhei Okuyama, and Yutaka Kawakami

Abstract

For enhancing the antitumor effects of current immunotherapies including immune-checkpoint blockade, it is important to reverse cancer-induced immunosuppression. The renin–angiotensin system (RAS) controls systemic body fluid circulation; however, the presence of a local RAS in tumors has been reported. Furthermore, the local RAS in tumors influences various immune and interstitial cells and affects tumor immune response. RAS stimulation through the angiotensin II type 1 receptor has been reported to inhibit tumor immune response. Therefore, RAS inhibitors and combined treatment with immunotherapy are expected in the future. In this chapter, we provide a background on the RAS and describe the tumor environment with regard to the RAS and tumor immune response.

K. Nakamura · R. Okuyama
Department of Dermatology, Shinshu University School of Medicine, Nagano, Japan

Y. Kawakami (✉)
Division of Cellular Signaling, Institute for Advanced Medical Research, Keio University School of Medicine, Tokyo, Japan

Department of Immunology, School of Medicine International University of Health and Welfare, Chiba, Japan
e-mail: yutakawa@keio.jp

Keywords

RAS · Cancer-associated fibroblasts · Immunotherapy · PD-1/PD-L1 · Tumor immune response · ARB · T cell · TGF-β · MDSC · Macrophage · Fibrosis · Angiogenesis · Hypoxia · ROS · COX-2

7.1 Introduction

Recent cancer immunotherapies, including immune-checkpoint blockade (i.e., the blockade of programmed cell death protein 1 (PD-1), programmed death-ligand (PD-L1), or cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4)), have produced durable clinical effects in some patients with advanced cancers. However, only a subset of patients responded to these therapies, and not all responses continued indefinitely. Unresponsiveness to immune-checkpoint blockade therapies may be mediated by numerous immunosuppressive mechanisms that inhibit antitumor T-cell responses and T-cell infiltration into tumor tissues [1, 2]. To improve current cancer immunotherapies, strategies to modulate various immunosuppressive cells, which are negative factors in immune-checkpoint blockade therapies, should be developed [2].

The renin–angiotensin system (RAS) is an endocrine system that is generally considered to

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_7

systemically regulate hydromineral balance and blood pressure. However, recent data have demonstrated that renin and angiotensinogen genes and their products are locally expressed (the local RAS) at many tissue sites, where they serve as the fundamental regulators of many additional physiologic and pathophysiologic processes [3].

The main components of the RAS (i.e., angiotensinogen (AGT), renin, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), angiotensin I (Ang I), and angiotensin II (Ang II)) elicit their action through several receptors, including Ang II type 1 receptor (AT1R) and angiotensin II type 2 receptor (AT2R). AT1R and AT2R are generally associated with inverse effects [3, 4]. Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs) inhibit the effects of AT1R related to angiotensin II. Generally, AGT is produced and released into circulation by the liver and is then hydrolyzed to Ang I by renin in the juxtaglomerular cells of the kidney (Fig. 7.1). Subsequently, Ang I is hydrolyzed to Ang II by ACE in the endothelial cells of the lungs.

In the tumor microenvironment, the major components of the RAS are expressed in cancer cells as well as in stromal cells, such as macrophages and cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) (Fig. 7.1) [3]. Additionally, the components of the RAS have been reported in endothelial cells, neutrophils, dendritic cells, and T cells [3, 5–8]. The local RAS in cancer tissues is involved in cellular migration, proliferation, inflammation, and angiogenesis in the tumor and the supporting stromal cells [9–11]. RAS antagonists have been found to suppress tumor progression in various experimental cancer models, and retrospective studies in humans have provided evidence that the long-term use of RAS inhibitors, such as ACE inhibitors and ARBs, may protect against cancer [3]. Additionally, the overexpression of the components of RAS is associated with tumor growth in breast cancer, ovarian cancer, and renal cancer [12–14]. Furthermore, signaling associated with AT1R may promote tumor growth [3, 4].

With regard to angiogenetic suppression, the combination of an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) antibody and RAS inhibitor was found to improve the survival rates of patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma, metastatic colorectal cancer, progressive liver cancer, and glioblastoma [15–21]. Additionally, a meta-analysis reported that a RAS inhibitor might improve the survival rate of patients with cancer [22].

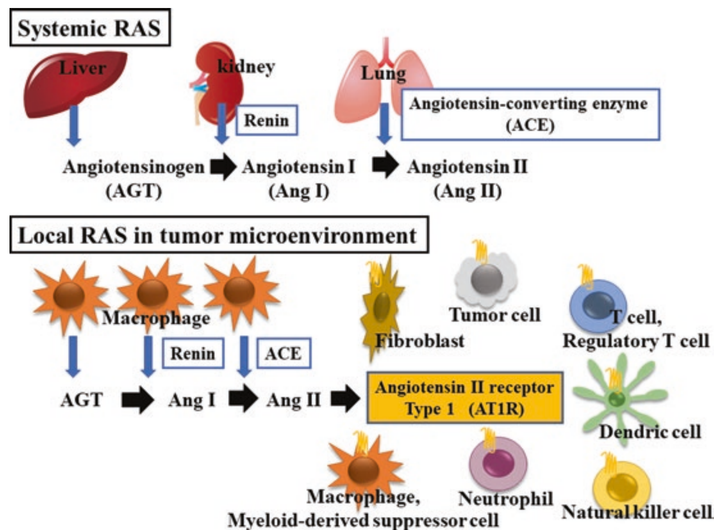


Fig. 7.1 The systemic and local renin–angiotensin system (RAS). Tumor-infiltrating immune cells, such as macrophages, neutrophils, T cells, dendritic cells, and natural killer cells, express the components of RAS, such as renin, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), and angiotensinogen (AGT). Fibroblasts, which are interstitial cells, and certain tumor cells express angiotensin II type 1 receptor (AT1R)

7.2 Relation Between Immune Cells and the RAS

7.2.1 Cytotoxic T lymphocytes

Various in vitro studies have evaluated the role of the RAS in the induction of immune responses. RAS activation was shown to enhance antigen-specific T-cell responses, which can be blocked by ARBs [23]. Additionally, ARBs can inhibit the differentiation of human dendritic cells (DCs) from monocytes and their maturation by lipopolysaccharide stimulation [24]. In non-tumor-bearing mouse models, the RAS was found to be involved in the induction of T-cell responses [25]. However, few studies have reported on the role of the RAS in the induction of anti-cancer T-cell responses.

We previously reported that tumor antigen-specific T-cell responses increased with ARB administration [26]. ARB administration in C67BL/6 mice with the murine colon cancer cell line MC38 resulted in significant enhancement of tumor antigen gp70-specific T cells. Additionally, ARB administration did not change the number of $CD11b^{+}$ myeloid cells in tumors but significantly reduced their T-cell inhibitory ability and decreased the production of various immunosuppressive factors, including interleukin (IL)-6, IL-10, VEGF, and arginase, from $CD11b^{+}$ cells in tumors. Moreover, ARB administration decreased the expressions of immunosuppressive factors, such as chemokine ligand 12 (CXCL12) and nitric oxide synthase 2 (NOS2) in CAFs. Furthermore, the combination of an ARB and anti-PD-L1 antibody caused significant augmentation of antitumor effects in a $CD8^{+}$ T-cell-dependent manner.

Subsequently, a similar report was published. ARB administration (candesartan) increased the numbers of $CD3^{+}$ T cells and effector $CD8^{+}$ T cells and decreased the number of regulatory T (Treg) cells in 4T1 mouse mammary tumors [27]. Additionally, the effect of treatment with an anti-PD-1 antibody increased in a tumor model with reduced expression of the components of RAS. Furthermore, this was thought to be reinforced by a systemic tumor immune response because the effect of treatment with the anti-PD-1 antibody increased in a wild-type tumor transplanted on the other side of the murine model [27].

7.2.2 Regulatory T Cells

Treg cells are associated with the immune escape of cancer cells, and they inhibit tumor immune responses. The production of transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) in tumors and the low oxygenation of tumor tissues increase the number of Treg cells [28]. In a model of pancreatic cancer, ARB administration (losartan) was found to inhibit TGF-β, suppress fibrosis, and decrease the number of Treg cells [29]. In another model of pancreatic cancer, ARB administration was found to inhibit the activation of pancreatic stellate cells, decrease the expression of IL-1β, and decrease the number of Treg cells [30].

7.2.3 Macrophages

Macrophages can be divided into antitumor reactive M1 macrophages and immunosuppressive M2 macrophages. ARB administration has been shown to increase the number of M1 macrophages at the tumor site and increase the antitumor effect [31]. Generally, M2 macrophages are associated with wound healing, and they inhibit tumor immunity and aid in tumor growth [32, 33]. Various studies have reported on the change in M2 macrophages with RAS inhibition, and further analysis is necessary [34, 35]. Additionally, monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 (MCP-1) is produced for the stimulation of AT1R by tumors and interstitial cells [36]. MCP-1 that is produced correlates with the grade of invasion and tumor of the macrophages [36].

7.2.4 CAFs

The dominant mesenchymal cell components in tumor tissues are fibroblasts, which are strongly involved in cancer progression and metastasis

[37, 38]. CAFs are thought to induce an immunosuppressive tumor microenvironment through the production of various cytokines and chemokines that have impacts on tumor angiogenesis and remodeling of the extracellular matrix [39].

Ang II has been shown to stimulate the proliferation of CAFs and induce the production of various cytokines, such as TGF-β [40, 41], and some of these cytokines have immunosuppressive functions. CAFs, which are considered as immunosuppressive cells in the cancer microenvironment [37], have been shown to express AT1R [42].

CAFs are generally considered as immunosuppressive cells in the cancer microenvironment because they secrete and express immunosuppressive molecules, such as nitric oxide, TGF-β1, indoleamine-pyrrole 2,3-dioxygenase, PGE2, PD-L1, and PD-L2 [39, 43]. CAFs also produce CXCL12, which has been shown to inhibit T-cell infiltration into tumor tissues, leading to reduced antitumor effects of anti-CTLA-4 antibody and anti-PD-L1 antibody in a pancreatic cancer model [44].

We previously reported that ARB administration decreased the production of CXCL12 and NOS2 by CAFs [17, 26].

CAFs aid tumor growth through angiogenesis of the tumor microenvironment and immunocytic instructions via NF-κB signaling [45]. When the production of extracellular matrix by CAFs increases, tumor vessels are pressed and oxygenation reduces in the tumor [46].

ARB administration has been shown to decrease the production of immunosuppressive CXCL13 by CAFs [47]. CAFs have been found to cause dysfunction of T cells and natural killer (NK) cells [38], and TGF-β especially inhibits T-cell response and reduces tumor immunity [48].

7.2.5 Neutrophils

A high neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio has been shown to be associated with a poor treatment effect of immunotherapy [49, 50]. In a model of pancreatic cancer, ARB administration was found to inhibit the activation of pancreatic stellate cells, decrease the expression of IL-1β, and decrease the number of neutrophils [30].

7.2.6 Dendritic Cells

COX2 is induced by tumor cells and interstitial cells through stimulation of AT1R, and the antigen-presenting ability of DCs is inhibited through PGE2 [51, 52]. On the other hand, ARBs have been shown to inhibit the differentiation of human DCs from monocytes and their maturation by lipopolysaccharide stimulation [24].

7.2.7 Myeloid-Derived Suppressor Cells

Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) inhibit the activation of $CD8^+$ T cells [53]. Additionally, they induce increases in the number of Treg cells, the proportion of M2 macrophages, and the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) [53]. ACE is associated with myelopoiesis and might be involved in the increase in the number of MDSCs; however, further study is necessary [54]. ARB administration (candesartan) has been shown to decrease monocytic MDSCs in 4T1 tumors and not alter granulocytic MDSCs [27].

7.2.8 NK Cells

COX2 is induced by tumor cells and interstitial cells through stimulation of AT1R, and the activity of NK cells is inhibited through PGE2 [52, 55].

7.3 Tumor Environment

7.3.1 Tumor Cells

In tumor tissues, Ang II, the main effector molecule of the RAS, acts through AT1R on both tumor cells and stromal cells and regulates the secretion of various growth factors and cytokines, such as IL-6, IL-8, and VEGF, partly through the

activation of NF-κB and signal transducers and activator of transcription family members [56, 57]. These molecules and transcriptional factors are well known to induce cancer-promoting inflammation and restrain antitumor immune responses (Fig. 7.2).

7.3.2 Fibrosis

Fibrosis of the tumor stroma inhibits immune cell invasion physically [58]. RAS inhibitor administration has been shown to inhibit the production of collagen I by CAFs (Fig. 7.2) [59]. Furthermore, when fibrosis of the tumor stroma is inhibited, the circulation volume in the tumor increases, low oxygenation improves, and tumor immune response increases [60].

7.3.3 Angiogenesis

RAS inhibitor administration has been shown to decrease the production of VEGF and reduce angiogenesis and vascular permeability [14, 61, 62]. Normalization of tumor vessels improves low oxygenation, reduces immunosuppression, and increases the effect of immunotherapy.

7.3.4 Hypoxia and ROS

AT1R stimulation reduces intratumoral circulation and causes hypoxia and acidosis (Fig. 7.2) [63]. Tumor hypoxia and acidosis result in the production of TGF-β [64, 65]. Tumor hypoxia causes dysfunction of T cells and DCs, increases the number of M2 macrophages and MDSCs, and increases the expression of PD-1/PD-L1 [32, 65–67]. Additionally, in the anoxic tumor environment, Ang II is produced.

AT1R stimulation induces ROS production from tumor and interstitial cells [68, 69]. ARB administration has been shown to decrease the production of intratumoral ROS [69]. Additionally, ROS has been found to induce Treg cells and tumor-associated macrophages and affect T-cell function [52, 70, 71].

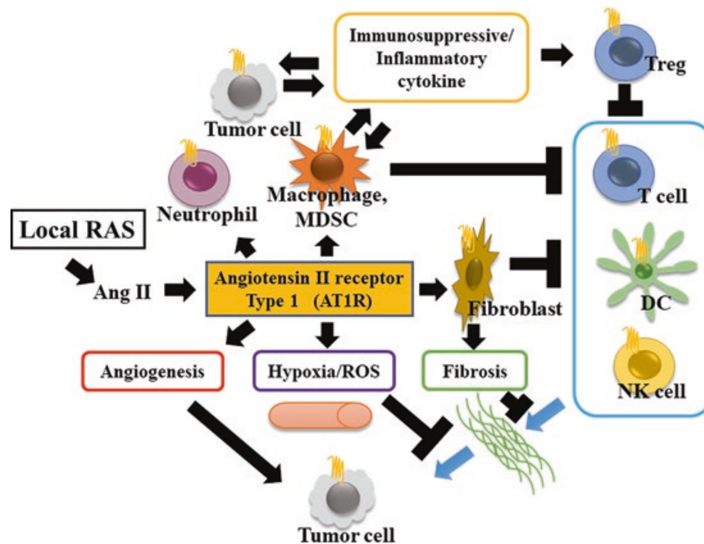


Fig. 7.2 The local renin–angiotensin system (RAS) inhibits tumor immune response through fibrosis, hypoxia, immunosuppressive cytokines, and immunosuppressive cells. Fibrosis of the tumor stroma associated with fibroblasts inhibits the movement of immune cells physically. Immunosuppressive cytokines and inflammatory cytokines associated with angiotensin II type 1 receptor (AT1R) stimulation promote further accumulation of immunosuppressive cells. Tumor growth is enhanced by angiogenesis of tumor vessels, but an immunosuppressive state occurs via anoxia

7.3.5 Immune Response Analysis in Clinical Trials

In a clinical trial for metastatic ductus pancreaticus cancer, RAS inhibitor administration was found to significantly increase overall survival [72]. Increased expression of genes associated with the processing and presentation of antigens was noted on genetic analysis of tumors from patients who received a RAS inhibitor [72].

7.4 Summary

As the local RAS in a tumor is complicated, contradictory results have been reported. However, RAS inhibition has been shown to improve tumor immune response. Thus, RAS inhibitors and combined treatment with immunotherapy are expected in the future. In tumors with low oxygenation, those associated with fibrosis resistance, and those with many immunosuppressive cells, RAS inhibitors might improve tumor immune response [73–77]. Additionally, RAS inhibitors might augment the treatment effect in renal cell carcinoma, colorectal cancer, and hepatocellular carcinoma, where inhibition of angiogenesis is beneficial. Moreover, a method to transport RAS inhibitors to the local tumor site has been studied, and it is expected that the tumor immune response will improve without an influence on systemic circulation [47]. It is hoped that further trials of the combination of RAS inhibitors and immunotherapy will be performed in the future.

Disclosure of Potential Conflicts of Interest The authors have no potential conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

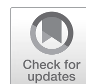
1. Kim JM, Chen DS (2016) Immune escape to PD-L1/PD-1 blockade: seven steps to success (or failure). Ann Oncol 27(8):1492–1504. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdw217
2. Yaguchi T, Kawakami Y (2016) Cancer-induced heterogeneous immunosuppressive tumor microenvironments and their personalized modulation. Int Immunol 28(8):393–399. https://doi.org/10.1093/intimm/dxw030
3. George AJ, Thomas WG, Hannan RD (2010) The renin-angiotensin system and cancer: old dog, new tricks. Nat Rev Cancer 10(11):745–759. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc2945
4. Ager EI, Neo J, Christophi C (2008) The renin-angiotensin system and malignancy. Carcinogenesis 29(9):1675–1684. https://doi.org/10.1093/carcin/bgn171
5. Balyasnikova IV, Danilov SM, Muzykantov VR, Fisher AB (1998) Modulation of angiotensin-converting enzyme in cultured human vascular endothelial cells. In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Anim 34(7):545–554. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11626-998-0114-x
6. Danilov SM, Sadovnikova E, Scharenborg N, Balyasnikova IV, Svinareva DA, Semikina EL, Parovichnikova EN, Savchenko VG, Adema GJ (2003) Angiotensin-converting enzyme (CD143) is abundantly expressed by dendritic cells and discriminates human monocyte-derived dendritic cells from acute myeloid leukemia-derived dendritic cells. Exp Hematol 31(12):1301–1309
7. Lin C, Datta V, Okwan-Duodu D, Chen X, Fuchs S, Alsabeh R, Billet S, Bernstein KE, Shen XZ (2011) Angiotensin-converting enzyme is required for normal myelopoiesis. FASEB J 25(4):1145–1155. https://doi.org/10.1096/fj.10-169433
8. Shen XZ, Billet S, Lin C, Okwan-Duodu D, Chen X, Lukacher AE, Bernstein KE (2011) The carboxypeptidase ACE shapes the MHC class I peptide repertoire. Nat Immunol 12(11):1078–1085. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni.2107
9. Egami K, Murohara T, Shimada T, Sasaki K, Shintani S, Sugaya T, Ishii M, Akagi T, Ikeda H, Matsuishi T, Imaizumi T (2003) Role of host angiotensin II type 1 receptor in tumor angiogenesis and growth. J Clin Invest 112(1):67–75. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI16645
10. Guo F, Chen XL, Wang F, Liang X, Sun YX, Wang YJ (2011) Role of angiotensin II type 1 receptor in angiotensin II-induced cytokine production in macrophages. J Interf Cytokine Res 31(4):351–361. https://doi.org/10.1089/jir.2010.0073
11. Takahashi M, Suzuki E, Takeda R, Oba S, Nishimatsu H, Kimura K, Nagano T, Nagai R, Hirata Y (2008) Angiotensin II and tumor necrosis factor-alpha synergistically promote monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 expression: roles of NF-kappaB, p38, and reactive oxygen species. Am J Physiol Heart Circ Physiol 294(6):H2879–H2888. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpheart.91406.2007
12. Arrieta O, Pineda-Olvera B, Guevara-Salazar P, Hernandez-Pedro N, Morales-Espinosa D, Ceron-Lizarraga TL, Gonzalez-De la Rosa CH, Rembao D, Segura-Pacheco B, Sotelo J (2008) Expression of AT1 and AT2 angiotensin receptors in astrocytomas is associated with poor prognosis. Br J Cancer 99(1):160–166. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjc.6604431

13. Arrieta O, Villarreal-Garza C, Vizcaino G, Pineda B, Hernandez-Pedro N, Guevara-Salazar P, Wegman-Ostrosky T, Villanueva-Rodriguez G, Gamboa-Dominguez A (2015) Association between AT1 and AT2 angiotensin II receptor expression with cell proliferation and angiogenesis in operable breast cancer. Tumour Biol 36(7):5627–5634. https://doi.org/10.1007/s13277-015-3235-3
14. Ino K, Shibata K, Kajiyama H, Yamamoto E, Nagasaka T, Nawa A, Nomura S, Kikkawa F (2006) Angiotensin II type 1 receptor expression in ovarian cancer and its correlation with tumour angiogenesis and patient survival. Br J Cancer 94(4):552–560. https://doi.org/10.1038/sj.bjc.6602961
15. Izzedine H, Derosa L, Le Teuff G, Albiges L, Escudier B (2015) Hypertension and angiotensin system inhibitors: impact on outcome in sunitinib-treated patients for metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Ann Oncol 26(6):1128–1133. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdv147
16. Keizman D, Gottfried M, Ish-Shalom M, Maimon N, Peer A, Neumann A, Hammers H, Eisenberger MA, Sinibaldi V, Pili R, Hayat H, Kovel S, Sella A, Boursi B, Weitzen R, Mermershtain W, Rouvinov K, Berger R, Carducci MA (2014) Active smoking may negatively affect response rate, progression-free survival, and overall survival of patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma treated with sunitinib. Oncologist 19(1):51–60. https://doi.org/10.1634/theoncologist.2012-0335
17. Keizman D, Huang P, Eisenberger MA, Pili R, Kim JJ, Antonarakis ES, Hammers H, Carducci MA (2011) Angiotensin system inhibitors and outcome of sunitinib treatment in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma: a retrospective examination. Eur J Cancer 47(13):1955–1961. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejca.2011.04.019
18. McKay RR, Rodriguez GE, Lin X, Kaymakcalan MD, Hamnvik OP, Sabbisetti VS, Bhatt RS, Simantov R, Choueiri TK (2015) Angiotensin system inhibitors and survival outcomes in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 21(11):2471–2479. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-2332
19. Osumi H, Matsusaka S, Wakatsuki T, Suenaga M, Shinozaki E, Mizunuma N (2015) Angiotensin II type-1 receptor blockers enhance the effects of bevacizumab-based chemotherapy in metastatic colorectal cancer patients. Mol Clin Oncol 3(6):1295–1300. https://doi.org/10.3892/mco.2015.630
20. Pinter M, Weinmann A, Worns MA, Hucke F, Bota S, Marquardt JU, Duda DG, Jain RK, Galle PR, Trauner M, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Sieghart W (2017) Use of inhibitors of the renin-angiotensin system is associated with longer survival in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. United European Gastroenterol J 5(7):987–996. https://doi.org/10.1177/2050640617695698
21. Levin VA, Chan J, Datta M, Yee JL, Jain RK (2017) Effect of angiotensin system inhibitors on survival in newly diagnosed glioma patients and recurrent glioblastoma patients receiving chemotherapy and/or bevacizumab. J Neuro-Oncol 134(2):325–330. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11060-017-2528-3
22. Sun H, Li T, Zhuang R, Cai W, Zheng Y (2017) Do renin-angiotensin system inhibitors influence the recurrence, metastasis, and survival in cancer patients?: evidence from a meta-analysis including 55 studies. Medicine (Baltimore) 96(13):e6394. https://doi.org/10.1097/MD.0000000000006394
23. Maeda A, Okazaki T, Inoue M, Kitazono T, Yamasaki M, Lemonnier FA, Ozaki S (2009) Immunosuppressive effect of angiotensin receptor blocker on stimulation of mice CTLs by angiotensin II. Int Immunopharmacol 9(10):1183–1188. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.intimp.2009.06.006
24. Nahmod K, Gentilini C, Vermeulen M, Uharek L, Wang Y, Zhang J, Schultheiss HP, Geffner J, Walther T (2010) Impaired function of dendritic cells deficient in angiotensin II type 1 receptors. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 334(3):854–862. https://doi.org/10.1124/jpet.109.161760
25. Wysocki PJ, Kwiatkowska EP, Kazimierczak U, Suchorska W, Kowalczyk DW, Mackiewicz A (2006) Captopril, an angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor, promotes growth of immunogenic tumors in mice. Clin Cancer Res 12(13):4095–4102. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-2489
26. Nakamura K, Yaguchi T, Ohmura G, Kobayashi A, Kawamura N, Iwata T, Kiniwa Y, Okuyama R, Kawakami Y (2018) Involvement of local renin-angiotensin system in immunosuppression of tumor microenvironment. Cancer Sci 109(1):54–64. https://doi.org/10.1111/cas.13423
27. Xie G, Cheng T, Lin J, Zhang L, Zheng J, Liu Y, Xie G, Wang B, Yuan Y (2018) Local angiotensin II contributes to tumor resistance to checkpoint immunotherapy. J Immunother Cancer 6(1):88. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40425-018-0401-3
28. Facciabene A, Peng X, Hagemann IS, Balint K, Barchetti A, Wang LP, Gimotty PA, Gilks CB, Lal P, Zhang L, Coukos G (2011) Tumour hypoxia promotes tolerance and angiogenesis via CCL28 and T(reg) cells. Nature 475(7355):226–230. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10169
29. Arnold SA, Rivera LB, Carbon JG, Toombs JE, Chang CL, Bradshaw AD, Brekken RA (2012) Losartan slows pancreatic tumor progression and extends survival of SPARC-null mice by abrogating aberrant TGFbeta activation. PLoS One 7(2):e31384. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0031384
30. Incio J, Liu H, Suboj P, Chin SM, Chen IX, Pinter M, Ng MR, Nia HT, Grahovac J, Kao S, Babykutty S, Huang Y, Jung K, Rahbari NN, Han X, Chauhan VP, Martin JD, Kahn J, Huang P, Desphande V, Michaelson J, Michelakos TP, Ferrone CR, Soares R, Boucher Y, Fukumura D, Jain RK (2016) Obesity-induced inflammation and desmoplasia promote pancreatic cancer progression and resistance to chemotherapy. Cancer Discov 6(8):852–869. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-15-1177

31. Cortez-Retamozo V, Etzrodt M, Newton A, Ryan R, Pucci F, Sio SW, Kuswanto W, Rauch PJ, Chudnovskiy A, Iwamoto Y, Kohler R, Marinelli B, Gorbatov R, Wojtkiewicz G, Panizzi P, Mino-Kenudson M, Forghani R, Figueiredo JL, Chen JW, Xavier R, Swirski FK, Nahrendorf M, Weissleder R, Pittet MJ (2013) Angiotensin II drives the production of tumor-promoting macrophages. Immunity 38(2):296–308. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2012.10.015
32. Chanmee T, Ontong P, Konno K, Itano N (2014) Tumor-associated macrophages as major players in the tumor microenvironment. Cancers (Basel) 6(3):1670–1690. https://doi.org/10.3390/cancers6031670
33. Noy R, Pollard JW (2014) Tumor-associated macrophages: from mechanisms to therapy. Immunity 41(1):49–61. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2014.06.010
34. Aki K, Shimizu A, Masuda Y, Kuwahara N, Arai T, Ishikawa A, Fujita E, Mii A, Natori Y, Fukunaga Y, Fukuda Y (2010) ANG II receptor blockade enhances anti-inflammatory macrophages in anti-glomerular basement membrane glomerulonephritis. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 298(4):F870–F882. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajprenal.00374.2009
35. Kohlstedt K, Trouvain C, Namgaladze D, Fleming I (2011) Adipocyte-derived lipids increase angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) expression and modulate macrophage phenotype. Basic Res Cardiol 106(2):205–215. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00395-010-0137-9
36. Shirotake S, Miyajima A, Kosaka T, Tanaka N, Kikuchi E, Mikami S, Okada Y, Oya M (2012) Regulation of monocyte chemoattractant protein-1 through angiotensin II type 1 receptor in prostate cancer. Am J Pathol 180(3):1008–1016. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ajpath.2011.11.027
37. Kalluri R, Zeisberg M (2006) Fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 6(5):392–401. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc1877
38. Ohlund D, Elyada E, Tuveson D (2014) Fibroblast heterogeneity in the cancer wound. J Exp Med 211(8):1503–1523. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20140692
39. Kalluri R (2016) The biology and function of fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 16(9):582–598. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrc.2016.73
40. Kagami S, Border WA, Miller DE, Noble NA (1994) Angiotensin II stimulates extracellular matrix protein synthesis through induction of transforming growth factor-beta expression in rat glomerular mesangial cells. J Clin Invest 93(6):2431–2437. https://doi.org/10.1172/JCI117251
41. Kawano H, Do YS, Kawano Y, Starnes V, Barr M, Law RE, Hsueh WA (2000) Angiotensin II has multiple profibrotic effects in human cardiac fibroblasts. Circulation 101(10):1130–1137. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.cir.101.10.1130
42. Dougherty U, Mustafi R, Sadiq F, Almoghrabi A, Mustafi D, Kreisheh M, Sundaramurthy S, Liu W, Konda VJ, Pekow J, Khare S, Hart J, Joseph L, Wyrwicz A, Karczmar GS, Li YC, Bissonnette M (2014) The renin-angiotensin system mediates EGF receptor-vitamin d receptor cross-talk in colitis-associated colon cancer. Clin Cancer Res 20(22):5848–5859. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-0209
43. Barnas JL, Simpson-Abelson MR, Yokota SJ, Kelleher RJ, Bankert RB (2010) T cells and stromal fibroblasts in human tumor microenvironments represent potential therapeutic targets. Cancer Microenviron 3(1):29–47. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12307-010-0044-5
44. Feig C, Jones JO, Kraman M, Wells RJ, Deonarine A, Chan DS, Connell CM, Roberts EW, Zhao Q, Caballero OL, Teichmann SA, Janowitz T, Jodrell DI, Tuveson DA, Fearon DT (2013) Targeting CXCL12 from FAP-expressing carcinoma-associated fibroblasts synergizes with anti-PD-L1 immunotherapy in pancreatic cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 110(50):20212–20217. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1320318110
45. Erez N, Truitt M, Olson P, Arron ST, Hanahan D (2010) Cancer-associated fibroblasts are activated in incipient neoplasia to orchestrate tumor-promoting inflammation in an NF-kappaB-dependent manner. Cancer Cell 17(2):135–147. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2009.12.041
46. Stylianopoulos T, Martin JD, Chauhan VP, Jain SR, Diop-Frimpong B, Bardeesy N, Smith BL, Ferrone CR, Hornicek FJ, Boucher Y, Munn LL, Jain RK (2012) Causes, consequences, and remedies for growth-induced solid stress in murine and human tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(38):15101–15108. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1213353109
47. Chauhan VP, Chen IX, Tong R, Ng MR, Martin JD, Naxerova K, Wu MW, Huang P, Boucher Y, Kohane DS, Langer R, Jain RK (2019) Reprogramming the microenvironment with tumor-selective angiotensin blockers enhances cancer immunotherapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 116(22):10674–10680. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1819889116
48. Li MO, Flavell RA (2008) TGF-beta: a master of all T cell trades. Cell 134(3):392–404. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2008.07.025
49. Ameratunga M, Chenard-Poirier M, Moreno Candilejo I, Pedregal M, Lui A, Dolling D, Aversa C, Ingles Garces A, Ang JE, Banerji U, Kaye S, Gan H, Doger B, Moreno V, de Bono J, Lopez J (2018) Neutrophil-lymphocyte ratio kinetics in patients with advanced solid tumours on phase I trials of PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors. Eur J Cancer 89:56–63. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejca.2017.11.012
50. Ferrucci PF, Ascierto PA, Pigozzo J, Del Vecchio M, Maio M, Antonini Cappellini GC, Guidoboni M, Queirolo P, Savoia P, Mandala M, Simeone E, Valpione S, Altomonte M, Spagnolo F, Cocorocchio E, Gandini S, Giannarelli D, Martinoli C (2018) Baseline neutrophils and derived neutrophil-to-lymphocyte ratio: prognostic relevance in metastatic melanoma patients receiving ipilimumab. Ann Oncol 29(2):524. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdx059

51. Vinay DS, Ryan EP, Pawelec G, Talib WH, Stagg J, Elkord E, Lichtor T, Decker WK, Whelan RL, Kumara H, Signori E, Honoki K, Georgakilas AG, Amin A, Helferich WG, Boosani CS, Guha G, Ciriolo MR, Chen S, Mohammed SI, Azmi AS, Keith WN, Bilsland A, Bhakta D, Halicka D, Fujii H, Aquilano K, Ashraf SS, Nowsheen S, Yang X, Choi BK, Kwon BS (2015) Immune evasion in cancer: mechanistic basis and therapeutic strategies. Semin Cancer Biol 35(Suppl):S185–S198. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.semcancer.2015.03.004
52. Zelenay S, van der Veen AG, Bottcher JP, Snelgrove KJ, Rogers N, Acton SE, Chakravarty P, Girotti MR, Marais R, Quezada SA, Sahai E, Reis e Sousa C (2015) Cyclooxygenase-dependent tumor growth through evasion of immunity. Cell 162(6):1257–1270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.08.015
53. Pyzer AR, Cole L, Rosenblatt J, Avigan DE (2016) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells as effectors of immune suppression in cancer. Int J Cancer 139(9):1915–1926. https://doi.org/10.1002/ijc.30232
54. Okwan-Duodu D, Landry J, Shen XZ, Diaz R (2013) Angiotensin-converting enzyme and the tumor microenvironment: mechanisms beyond angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 305(3):R205–R215. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajpregu.00544.2012
55. Brown JR, DuBois RN (2005) COX-2: a molecular target for colorectal cancer prevention. J Clin Oncol 23(12):2840–2855. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2005.09.051
56. Ruiz-Ortega M, Lorenzo O, Ruperez M, Konig S, Wittig B, Egido J (2000) Angiotensin II activates nuclear transcription factor kappaB through AT(1) and AT(2) in vascular smooth muscle cells: molecular mechanisms. Circ Res 86(12):1266–1272. https://doi.org/10.1161/01.res.86.12.1266
57. Marrero MB, Schieffer B, Paxton WG, Heerdt L, Berk BC, Delafontaine P, Bernstein KE (1995) Direct stimulation of Jak/STAT pathway by the angiotensin II AT1 receptor. Nature 375(6528):247–250. https://doi.org/10.1038/375247a0
58. Watt J, Kocher HM (2013) The desmoplastic stroma of pancreatic cancer is a barrier to immune cell infiltration. Onco Targets Ther 2(12):e26788. https://doi.org/10.4161/onci.26788
59. Diop-Frimpong B, Chauhan VP, Krane S, Boucher Y, Jain RK (2011) Losartan inhibits collagen I synthesis and improves the distribution and efficacy of nanotherapeutics in tumors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108(7):2909–2914. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1018892108
60. Chauhan VP, Martin JD, Liu H, Lacorre DA, Jain SR, Kozin SV, Stylianopoulos T, Mousa AS, Han X, Adstamongkonkul P, Popovic Z, Huang P, Bawendi MG, Boucher Y, Jain RK (2013) Angiotensin inhibition enhances drug delivery and potentiates chemotherapy by decompressing tumour blood vessels. Nat Commun 4:2516. https://doi.org/10.1038/ncomms3516
61. Carbajo-Lozoya J, Lutz S, Feng Y, Kroll J, Hammes HP, Wieland T (2012) Angiotensin II modulates VEGF-driven angiogenesis by opposing effects of type 1 and type 2 receptor stimulation in the microvascular endothelium. Cell Signal 24(6):1261–1269. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cellsig.2012.02.005
62. Usui T, Sugisaki K, Iriyama A, Yokoo S, Yamagami S, Nagai N, Ishida S, Amano S (2008) Inhibition of corneal neovascularization by blocking the angiotensin II type 1 receptor. Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci 49(10):4370–4376. https://doi.org/10.1167/iovs.07-0964
63. Thews O, Kelleher DK, Vaupel P (2000) Disparate responses of tumour vessels to angiotensin II: tumour volume-dependent effects on perfusion and oxygenation. Br J Cancer 83(2):225–231. https://doi.org/10.1054/bjoc.2000.1229
64. Riemann A, Reime S, Thews O (2017) Tumor acidosis and hypoxia differently modulate the inflammatory program: measurements in vitro and in vivo. Neoplasia 19(12):1033–1042. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neo.2017.09.005
65. Dayan F, Mazure NM, Brahimi-Horn MC, Pouyssegur J (2008) A dialogue between the hypoxia-inducible factor and the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Microenviron 1(1):53–68. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12307-008-0006-3
66. Shurin GV, Ma Y, Shurin MR (2013) Immunosuppressive mechanisms of regulatory dendritic cells in cancer. Cancer Microenviron 6(2):159–167. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12307-013-0133-3
67. Alsaab HO, Sau S, Alzhrani R, Tatiparti K, Bhise K, Kashaw SK, Iyer AK (2017) PD-1 and PD-L1 checkpoint signaling inhibition for cancer immunotherapy: mechanism, combinations, and clinical outcome. Front Pharmacol 8:561. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2017.00561
68. Jackson SH, Devadas S, Kwon J, Pinto LA, Williams MS (2004) T cells express a phagocyte-type NADPH oxidase that is activated after T cell receptor stimulation. Nat Immunol 5(8):818–827. https://doi.org/10.1038/ni1096
69. Uemura H, Ishiguro H, Ishiguro Y, Hoshino K, Takahashi S, Kubota Y (2008) Angiotensin II induces oxidative stress in prostate cancer. Mol Cancer Res 6(2):250–258. https://doi.org/10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-07-0289
70. Kim HR, Lee A, Choi EJ, Hong MP, Kie JH, Lim W, Lee HK, Moon BI, Seoh JY (2014) Reactive oxygen species prevent imiquimod-induced psoriatic dermatitis through enhancing regulatory T cell function. PLoS One 9(3):e91146. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0091146
71. Lin X, Zheng W, Liu J, Zhang Y, Qin H, Wu H, Xue B, Lu Y, Shen P (2013) Oxidative stress in malignant melanoma enhances tumor necrosis factor-alpha secretion of tumor-associated macrophages that promote cancer cell invasion. Antioxid Redox Signal 19(12):1337–1355. https://doi.org/10.1089/ars.2012.4617

72. Liu H, Naxerova K, Pinter M, Incio J, Lee H, Shigeta K, Ho WW, Crain JA, Jacobson A, Michelakos T, Dias-Santos D, Zanconato A, Hong TS, Clark JW, Murphy JE, Ryan DP, Deshpande V, Lillemoe KD, Fernandez-Del Castillo C, Downes M, Evans RM, Michaelson J, Ferrone CR, Boucher Y, Jain RK (2017) Use of angiotensin system inhibitors is associated with immune activation and longer survival in nonmetastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. Clin Cancer Res 23(19):5959–5969. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-17-0256
73. Azevedo H, Fujita A, Bando SY, Iamashita P, Moreira-Filho CA (2014) Transcriptional network analysis reveals that AT1 and AT2 angiotensin II receptors are both involved in the regulation of genes essential for glioma progression. PLoS One 9(11):e110934. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0110934
74. Li X, Zhang H, Soledad-Conrad V, Zhuang J, Uhal BD (2003) Bleomycin-induced apoptosis of alveolar epithelial cells requires angiotensin synthesis de novo. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 284(3):L501–L507. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajplung.00273.2002
75. Nguyen L, Ager EI, Neo J, Christophi C (2016) Regulation of colorectal cancer cell epithelial to mesenchymal transition by the renin angiotensin system. J Gastroenterol Hepatol 31(10):1773–1782. https://doi.org/10.1111/jgh.13307
76. Papp M, Li X, Zhuang J, Wang R, Uhal BD (2002) Angiotensin receptor subtype AT(1) mediates alveolar epithelial cell apoptosis in response to ANG II. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 282(4):L713–L718. https://doi.org/10.1152/ajplung.00103.2001
77. Zheng S, Yang Y, Song R, Yang X, Liu H, Ma Q, Yang L, Meng R, Tao T, Wang S, He J (2015) Ang-(1-7) promotes the migration and invasion of human renal cell carcinoma cells via Mas-mediated AKT signaling pathway. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 460(2):333–340. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbrc.2015.03.035



8 Stem Cell-Secreted Factors in the Tumor Microenvironment

Gema Jiménez, Julia López de Andrés, and Juan Antonio Marchal

Abstract

The importance of the microenvironment in tumor development and their resistance to drugs is increasingly well known. This microenvironment is composed of different cell types, among which cells with stemness properties such as cancer stem cells (CSCs) and mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) are distinguished for their relevant role in tumor proliferation, angiogenesis, metastasis, and drug resistance. The relationship between these stem cells (SCs) and tumor microenvironment is conducted by the secretome, consisting of several factors, cytokines, chemokines, and hormones released to the surrounding stroma, which plays a deterministic role in tumor hallmarks. Knowing the intrinsic and complex communication network that SCs establish with the microenvironment will allow to address the tumor processes responsible for cancer progression and the generation of new targeted therapeutic approaches useful in the clinic arena.

Keywords

Cancer stem cells · Mesenchymal stem cells · Cancer-associated fibroblasts · Tumor microenvironment · Secretome · Growth factors · Cytokines · Extracellular matrix · Niche · Angiogenesis · Hypoxia · Metastasis · Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition · Homing · Inflammation

G. Jiménez (✉) · J. López de Andrés
Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine Institute (IBIMER), Centre for Biomedical Research (CIBM), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria ibs. GRANADA, University Hospitals of Granada-University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Excellence Research Unit "Modeling Nature" (MNat), University of Granada, Granada, Spain
e-mail: gemajg@ugr.es

J. A. Marchal (✉)
Biopathology and Regenerative Medicine Institute (IBIMER), Centre for Biomedical Research (CIBM), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Instituto de Investigación Biosanitaria ibs. GRANADA, University Hospitals of Granada-University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Excellence Research Unit "Modeling Nature" (MNat), University of Granada, Granada, Spain

Department of Human Anatomy and Embryology, Faculty of Medicine, University of Granada, Granada, Spain
e-mail: jmarchal@ugr.es

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_8

8.1 Introduction

Over the decades, tumor origin and development were attributed only to cancer cells; however, tumor cells do not act alone since they are immersed in a tumor microenvironment (TME) that comprises several cell types, a characteristic extracellular matrix (ECM) and a complex cytokines and growth factors network. The TME consists of the niche where the tumor develops, and it is unique for each tumor and patient, and also highly dynamic over time [1, 2]. The role played by TME in tumor hallmarks [3] such as high proliferation, invasion, angiogenesis, metastasis, and resistance to drugs [4–7] is increasingly well known. The TME contains several cell types including the tumor cells, cells from the immune system, CSCs, MSCs, fibroblasts, endothelial precursors, and a series of chemical components and biophysical signals [2]. This niche participates in the carcinogenesis by a complex network of cytokines, growth factors, and inflammatory and matrix-remodeling enzymes [8].

An essential process that must be given in the TME is the new vessel formation. Tumor neovascularization allows tumor growth and involves both tube-forming endothelial cells and their supporting pericytes, as well as tumor and stromal cells [9]. The new branched vessels of the existing vasculature and the development of neovascularization from endothelial cells and their associated pericytes or from cancer stem cells (CSCs) (in a process called vascular mimicry) depend on angiogenic signals from hypoxia regions or soluble factors from the TME [10, 11]. The resulting vasculature is chaotic and abnormally fulfills its functions, which facilitates the metastatic spread of cancer cells, increases hypoxia in the tumor [2, 8], and prevents the correct extravasation of immune cells and diffusion of drugs, helping tumor survival [12].

In TME development, cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) are essential cells that secrete growth factors and cytokines, which stimulate the growth and survival of malignant cells [13–15] and contribute to drug resistance [16–18]. CAFs secrete also factors with chemoattractant properties, which stimulate the migration of other types of stromal cells and their progenitors to the TME, and promote angiogenesis by attracting pro-angiogenic myeloid cells and stimulating endothelial recruitment [19, 20].

Furthermore, the TME presents a wide diversity of infiltrating immune cells (IICs), among which are tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), dendritic cells, lymphocytes, natural-killers, and neutrophils, which as a whole can perform both protumor and antitumor functions depending on a large extent on the signals from the TME [21]. IICs deliver to the TME growth mediators that stimulate the proliferation of both tumor and stromal cells and activate angiogenic processes [22]. Also, IICs promote invasive cellular phenotypes, contribute to therapeutic resistance, and improve protumor inflammation [5, 8, 23].

Beyond the contributions of different cell types to the TME, the ECM is another key component, and involves not only the physical scaffolding of the cells in the niche, but also a source of different factors and cytokines that model tumor behavior. CAFs, TAMs, and tumor cells secrete heparanases and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) that degrade the ECM, releasing these factors to the TME [14, 19, 24, 25]. Through them, ECM mediates in angiogenesis, inflammatory processes, dysregulation of stromal cells, and tumor proliferation [26].

In addition to the cell types described above in the TME, main role is played by characteristics SCs such as MSCs and CSCs. Both kinds of SCs have several common features and participate actively in the TME, being essential for tumor growth. In this chapter, we first present the similarities and specific characteristics of both SCs. Second, we describe the specific particularities of the secretome released by these cells and how it participates and regulates the TME and the pathogenic processes associated with tumor development.

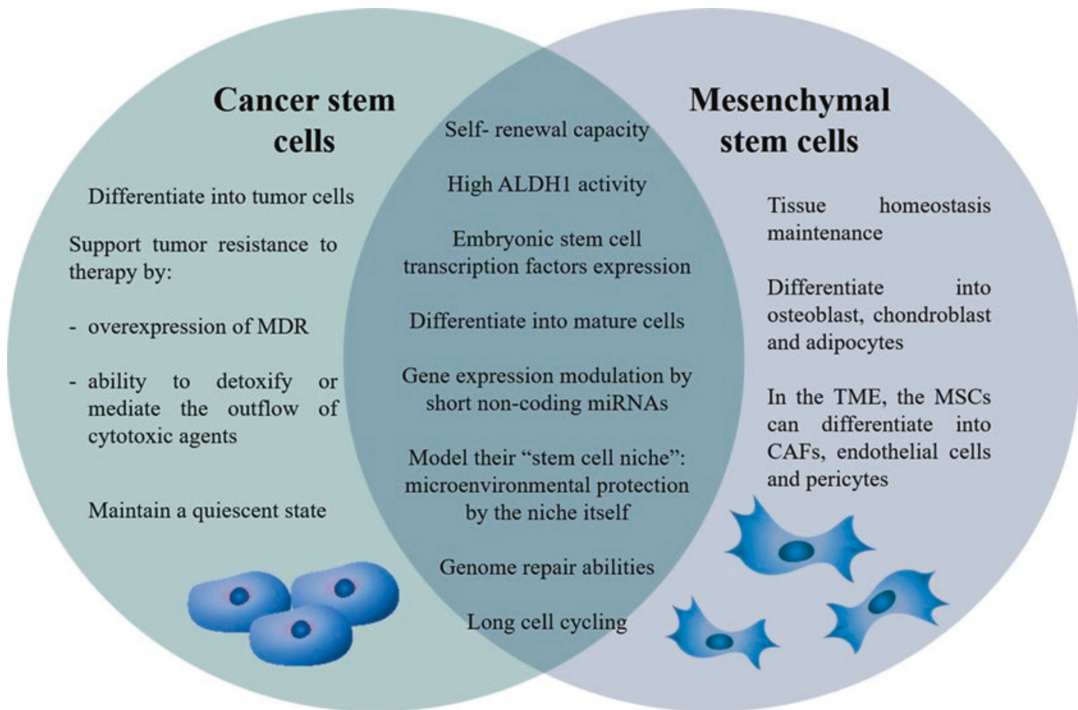


Fig. 8.1 Schematic illustration of the differential and shared characteristics of both stem CSCs and MSCs

8.2 Stem Cells in the Tumor Microenvironment

Stem cells are rare cells defined by the capacity to self-renew themselves and being able to differentiate into mature cells from a tissue [27]. In the TME, these cells will acquire special importance as responsible to manage its origin and particular characteristics (Fig. 8.1).

In the first place, although there are different proposals about how a tumor is generated, there is evidence of the existence of a minority subpopulation in the TME called CSCs, responsible for tumor growth, metastasis, and cancer recurrence [28]. CSCs present similar characteristics to MSCs in terms of their capacity for self-renewal, the expression of embryonic SCs transcription factors, similar regulation of several signaling pathways, and gene expression modulation by short noncoding miRNAs [29]. CSCs characterization is a complex challenge due to surface markers not being universal for any cancer type, the existence of heterogeneous CSC pools in the same tumor, and the instability of the phenotype [30]. However, several markers have been useful to identify CSCs like CD133 and CD44 [31], aldehyde dehydrogenase 1 (ALDH1) activity [32], and its ability to exclude Hoechst 33342 (side population) [33].

The importance of CSCs in the TME also lies in tumor recurrence and metastasis [34, 35]. Moreover, CSCs provide tumor resistance to radio- and chemotherapy due to the overexpression of membrane proteins of multidrug resistance (MDR) and their ability to detoxify or mediate the outflow of cytotoxic agents [33, 36], high ALDH1 activity [36, 37], rapid reparative response to DNA damage [38], and their ability to maintain a quiescent state [39]. However, CSCs require the TME to regulate their proliferation and self-maintenance, interacting closely with the cells that comprise it [40, 41]. It is known that CSCs not only get adapted to TME, but also contribute aggressively to its generation and cell composition; thanks to the development of a powerful interactive network composed of cytokines, growth factors, chemokines, hormones, miRNA, microvesicles, and exosomes through

which CSCs can recruit and activate different cells types like MSCs or vascular endothelial cells [41]. As well, the ECM is remodeled by the CSCs to maintain stem cell properties through anchorage, cell–cell and cell–ECM contact signals, and biomechanical properties [25].

On the other hand, one of the cell types recruited by the TME includes the MSCs, multipotent SCs that reside in many human organs and comprise a heterogeneous population with self-renewal ability [42]. Although their morphology, immunophenotype, and differentiation potentials are dependent on their tissue of origin [42], three criteria have been defined for their identification: (i) must be plastic-adherent when maintained in standard culture conditions, (ii) must express certain membrane markers, and (iii) must differentiate in vitro to osteoblasts, adipocytes, and chondroblasts [43, 44].

MSCs could be also found in the circulatory system and can arrive to inflammatory sites, where they seem to perform a restorative function, not only by structural repair of tissue, but also modulating the local environment due to its immunomodulatory and anti-inflammatory properties [42]. The role played by MSCs in the TME is not exempt from controversy [45]; however, in a relevant way, it has been shown that these cells are recruited by the TME [46–48]. It has been amply demonstrated that MSCs contribute to tumor growth and proliferation [48–51], increase the metastatic potential of tumor cells by promoting their motility, invasiveness [52, 53], the epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT) [54], and angiogenesis [55, 56], and participate in the appear of CAFs in the TME [51, 57]. Moreover, they play a key role in the tumor niche formation and support CSCs maintenance [58, 59]. Recently, our research group has shown that the MSCs secretomes, among which are interleukine-6 (IL-6) and hepatocellular growth factor (HGF) stand out, support the selection of CMCs with specific chromosomal alterations characterized by a translocation in the long arm of chromosome number 17 (17q25), that makes them more aggressive [58].

8.3 Stem Cell-Secreted Factors

In normal adult tissues, the presence of MSCs generates an environment termed as "stem cell niche," and the communication between the MSCs and their microenvironment is fundamental for normal tissue homeostasis, SCs maintenance, differentiation, and immunomodulation [60]. In cancer, this SC niche is modified with altered intercellular communication, be transformed in a TME that allows tumor growth changes over tumor progression and re-adapting [60–62]. All cells that constitute the TME display altered or modified secretomes compared to normal tissues, with simultaneous up- and downregulation of several factors [63]. SCs communicate with their microenvironment through the release of microvesicles and exosomes, as well as a wide range of soluble factors that include chemokines, cytokines, growth factors, hormones, and metabolites [64]. Specifically, factors released by tumor SCs promote several associated tumor processes, including tumor growth, invasion, metastasis, and promotion of angiogenesis, in addition to other processes such as influencing in cell phenotype, homing, differentiation, inflammation and immunodulation processes, and drug resistance mechanisms [63] (Fig. 8.2).

8.3.1 Angiogenesis

A decisive factor in tumor development is the presence of blood vessels, which provide both the nutrients and oxygen needed, and offer support for the metastasis. Several studies show that tumor SCs secrete vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which is the principal growth factor promoting vascularization [65, 66]. Furthermore, it has been observed that the secreted VEGF itself has the potential to induce differentiation of MSCs into endothelial cells (ECs) [66, 67]. However, this factor not only has this fundamental role in the TME, but it also stimulates CSCs proliferation and maintenance through the stimulation of neuropilin-1, a core-

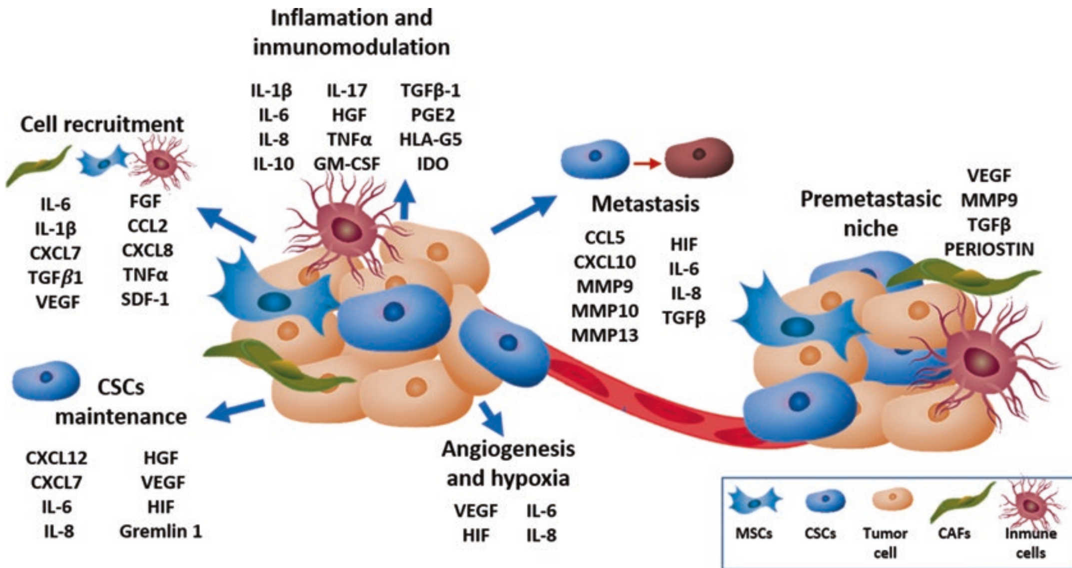


Fig. 8.2 Schematic overview of SCs secretome released to TME and the pathways and tumor processes it regulates

ceptor of VEGF receptor 2. In addition, VEGF overexpression accelerates tumor growth, promoting CSCs division [65, 68, 69] (Fig. 8.1).

Nevertheless, VEGF is not the only factor related with angiogenesis, IL-6 secreted by MSCs increases the secretion of endothelin-1 (ET-1) in cancer cells, which induces the activation of Akt and ERK pathways in ECs, leading to the development of mature vessels [70]. Also, a recent study situates another cytokine secreted by MSCs, the interleukin-8 (IL-8), as responsible for endothelial proliferation induction and tube formation, demonstrating the paracrine proangiogenic effect of IL-8 [71] (Fig. 8.1).

8.3.2 Hypoxia

A hallmark in solid TME is hypoxia, which is directly related with tumor progression and therapeutic response failure. Within the tumor, the oxygen concentration is variable, appearing in distinct areas with different oxygen contents. The responsible for the adaptation to hypoxic microenvironment is the hypoxia-inducible factor (HIF) family of transcription factors, and plays crucial roles in diverse tumor processes such as angiogenesis, treatment and immune system resistance, proliferation, tumor cell plasticity, metastasis, and maintenance of CSCs [72]. It was observed that under hypoxic conditions, MSCs increase HIF-1α secretion and their proliferative capacity. In addition, elevated release of energy metabolism-associated genes such as lactate dehydrogenase, GLUT-1, and PDK1 was observed, thereby leading to acidosis in the tumor microenvironment, and all this results in a feedback of the hypoxia environment [73]. On the other hand, the expression of HIF-1α and HIF-2α is different between non-SCs and CSCs. HIF-1α is produced by stem and nonstem tumor cells, and is only stabilized under acute hypoxic conditions, but HIF-2α is significantly secreted by CSCs and is accumulated under low levels of hypoxia or even normal physiological oxygen levels [74]; so, the role of the two HIF isoforms depends on the timely characteristics of the TME. In addition, HIF-1α produced by SCs stimulates tumor angiogenesis through the enhanced expression of angiogenic proteins like VEGF [75]. Also, several studies evidence that hypoxia plays a determinant role in CSCs maintenance, enhancing the self-renewal capacity, and retaining the undifferentiated state of CSCs, state that is reversible when normoxic conditions are resettled [76–78].

8.3.3 Metastasis

Cells from the primary tumor present intravasation capacity, which allows them to enter into the surrounding blood and lymphatic vessels, and around 0.2% of these cells survive in circulation and have extravasation ability; finally, they colonize distant organs producing metastasis [79]. As can be seen, metastasis is a very complex process that requires a set of factors that support it to achieve success. MSCs present different roles in the metastatic process, on the one hand, they increase the metastatic potential of tumor cells, and on the other hand, they present the ability to prepare the metastatic niche in the distant tissue [48]. Related to the increment of metastatic potential, the release of chemokine CCL5 by MSCs activates its receptor CCR5 on breast cancer cells thereby promoting altered breast cancer development and metastasis [52]. In addition, ovarian CSCs present CCR1, CCR3, and CCR5 upregulated, being more sensitive to CCL5 induction, enhancing invasiveness through nuclear factor κB (NF-κB) activation and the consequently elevated MMP9 secretion [80]. Others MMPs are highly secreted in the TME, such as MMP10 and MMP13 that are released by CSCs, and this fact promotes ECM degradation and remodeling, which enhances metastatic behavior [81, 82]. As other factors described, MMPs also perform different functions, such as MMP10 that has an essential role in CSCs maintenance and treatment resistance through the activation of Wnt signaling [83]. Main factors of other tumor processes also participate in metastasis, for example, hypoxia promotes metastasis through the activation and enhancement expression of HIF, which mediates paracrine signaling between cancer cells and MSCs mediated by CXCL10 and CCL5 and its respective receptors CXCR3 and CCR5 in cancer cells [84].

EMT phenomenon and the intravasation are essential processes in metastasis, and are processes driven by a complex network of cytokines and factors. For example, MSCs secretome in general, and IL-6, IL-8, and TGFβ in particular, have the capacity to upregulate EMT specific markers (N-cadherin, Vimentin, Twist, and Snail) via activation of PI3K/AKT pathway [85–87]. Once the cells are in the blood vessel, they have to perform the extravasation to be able to colonize the new tissue, and TGFβ displays an indispensable role in this process [88]. TGFβ induces angiopoietin-like 4 via the Smad signaling pathways in cancer cells, and these cells enter the circulation to metastasize to the lungs. After that, circulating cells that retain angiopoietin-like 4 release this cytokine and disrupt endothelial cell–cell adhesions in lung capillaries, facilitating the target organ invasion [89].

The TME also includes the metastatic niche, a niche in which there are also SCs and the factors secreted by them, making metastasis a successful process. Kaplan et al. first described the formation of a premetastatic niche where MSCs that express VEGFR1 present the capacity to migrate and form premetastatic niches through the production of MMP9, preparing it before the arrival and establishment of tumor cells [90]. Also, periostin (an ECM molecule) is highly expressed in CSCs [91] and when it binds to Wnt ligands, promotes stemness [92] so that the first CSCs that reach the premetastatic niche could favor the stemness of the new cells through this molecule. All these data together show that metastasis is a process induced by original TME secretome, where SCs are a principal player that can handle such complex processes as traveling through blood and lymphatic vessels and establishing a new tumor in a different organ.

8.3.4 Inflammation and Immunomodulation Processes

Inflammation and immunomodulation play a critical role in tumor development through the production of several molecules that participate in diverse tumor processes [93, 94]. In the TME there are several immune system cellular types including macrophages, neutrophils, mast cells, eosinophils, and myeloid-derived suppressor cell, which are attracted by TME through the tumor cell secretome, as well as ECM-degrading enzymes that allow invasion [75, 95]. The tran-

scription factors NF-κB and Stat3 regulate multiple aspects and serve as a central inflammatory mediator that responds to a large variety of immune stimulus [93, 94, 96], and as described in previous sections, these factors are very active in tumors. MSCs constitutively secrete several factors implicated in the immune suppressive role of these cells which include IL-1β, IL-6, IL-8, IL-10, HGF, TNFα, GM-CSF, TGFβ-1, prostaglandin E2, human leukocyte antigen-G5, and tryptophan-degrading enzyme indoleamine 2,3- dioxygenase (IDO) [97, 98]. In addition, CSCs have been demonstrated to have immunomodulatory properties through the release of inflammatory factors like IL-6, IL-17, and TGFβ, inducing Foxp3-positive regulatory T cells and pathogenic Th17 cells that can make the TME unresponsive to the recognizance of immune cells [99].

8.3.5 Homing

As described in the introduction section, the TME is composed of different cell types that interact to create the most optimal TME, as well as the different processes associated with tumor evolution; but to achieve this, it is necessary that the tumor "recruits" these cells. MSCs are attracted and activated by IL-6 released by different cell types, among them the CSCs, and in turn, the MSCs recruited produce CXCL7 that favors the maintenance of CSCs, generating a positive feedback loop [100]. Also, IL-1β, that shows higher expression in CSCs compared to their more differentiated counterparts [101], promotes MSCs migration through the expression of MMP1, which then activates the PAR1 and G-protein-coupled signal pathways [102].

Definitely, MSCs homing to tumor requires the participation of a complex molecule network that includes several cytokines and factors released by CSCs such as TGFβ1, VEGF, FGF, CCL2, CXCL8, and TNFα [103]. But MSCs do not respond only to signals from other cell types; for example, autocrine signaling of SDF-1 leads to the activation of Jak2/STAT3 and ERK1/2 signaling, thereby promoting FAK activation that finally promotes MSCs' migration to the TME [104]. TAMs also are critical modulators of the TME and support tumor progression; their recruitment is done through the chemokine CCL2 and its receptor CCR2, secreted by MSCs, as well as VEGF in a HIF-1α-dependent manner released by both SCs [105, 106].

8.3.6 Cell Phenotype Maintenance or Differentiation Induction

The maintenance or alteration of the cell phenotype or the stemness state is highly influenced by the TME. CSCs phenotype, proliferation, and invasiveness are regulated by MSCs and the CSCs themselves that activate NF-κB pathway through the release of several growth factor and cytokines, such as CXCL12, CXCL7, IL-6, IL-8, HGF, VEGF, HIF, and Gremlin 1 (see previous sections) [59, 100, 107, 108]. TGFβ is one of the key factors produced by the CSCs, and helps to transform fibroblasts and MSCs to cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs); thanks to the activation of TGFBR1/Smad pathways, and these CAFs participate in several TME process through its secretome network, like angiogenesis, EMT, and metastasis [62, 109, 110]. Moreover, MSCs also present the capacity to differentiate into pericytes and ECs under the effect of VEGF produced by both SCs [111]. The balance between the differentiated-dedifferentiated state of the CSCs is essential for tumor evolution and treatment resistance, and the balance between both states depends of NF-κB signaling (and related molecules describes above), enhancing Wnt activation that drives tumor cells dedifferentiation [112].

8.4 Future Trends

CSCs are responsible for tumor development, metastasis, and relapses, but the entire responsibility of a tumor process should not be associated only with a single cell type, since the TME is composed of different cell types that are interconnected by a complex network of chemokines, cytokines, growth factors, hormones, and metab-

olites. MSCs and CSCs create the stem niche and participate in several indispensable tumor processes such as angiogenesis, hypoxia, cell recruitment, inflammation, undifferentiated phenotype maintenance or cell differentiation, and metastasis. The potential of future therapeutic approaches is based on the knowledge of the TME, and especially of both types of SCs, as well as the complex communication network between them and with the rest of tumor subpopulations. For example, both SCs release VEGF to induce angiogenesis that supports CSCs maintenance and metastasis, and many novel approach drugs are focused on disrupting this growth factor pathway, including tyrosine kinase inhibitors [113, 114]. In the same way, high HIF expression correlates with poor glioma patient survival [115], so new therapies against this factor and its signaling pathway will allow the disruption of the hypoxic environment that affects several tumor processes and characteristics, including angiogenesis. A key factor in future therapeutic approaches is to avoid CSCs maintenance/protection. As described in this chapter, the entire TME in general, and the SCs in particular, has developed a complex cellular communication directed to CSCs preservation; therefore, new therapies should focus on this connection, and, in fact, there are already several studies and clinical trials aimed at these cytokines and specific factors, such as IL-6 [116, 117], IL-8 [118], HGF [119], and TGFβ [120]. In conclusion, the molecules released in the TME form a complex network that determines the success of the hallmarks of cancer [3], and may constitute a powerful tool in the therapeutic targeting of precision and personalized oncology.

Acknowledgments This work has been partially funded by the Ministerio de Economía y Competitividad (MINECO, FEDER funds, grant numbers MAT2015-62644.C2.2.R and RTI2018-101309-B-C22), the Consejería de Economía, Conocimiento, Empresas y Universidad de la Junta de Andalucía (European Regional Development Fund (ERDF), ref. SOMM17/6109/UGR), grants from the Ministry of Economy and Competitiveness, Instituto de Salud Carlos III (FEDER funds, projects no. PIE16/00045 and DTS17/00087), and from the Chair “Doctors Galera-Requena in cancer stem cell research” (CMC-CTS963).

Conflicts of Interest None of the authors have a conflict of interest to declare.

References

1. Caiado F, Silva-Santos B, Norell H (2016) Intra-tumour heterogeneity – going beyond genetics. FEBS J 283:2245–2258
2. Hanahan D, Coussens LM (2012) Accessories to the crime: functions of cells recruited to the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Cell 21:309–322
3. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144:646–674
4. Joyce J, Quail D (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med 19:1423–1437
5. Junttila MR, De Sauvage FJ (2013) Influence of tumour micro-environment heterogeneity on therapeutic response. Nature 501(7467):346–354
6. Hui L, Chen Y (2015) Tumor microenvironment: sanctuary of the devil. Cancer Lett 368(1):7–13
7. Yeldag G, Rice A, del Rio Hernández A (2018) Chemoresistance and the self-maintaining tumor microenvironment. Cancers (Basel) 10(12):pii: E471
8. Balkwill FR, Capasso M, Hagemann T (2012) The tumor microenvironment at a glance. J Cell Sci 125:5591–5596
9. Qian C-N, Tan M-H, Yang J-P, Cao Y (2016) Revisiting tumor angiogenesis: vessel co-option, vessel remodeling, and cancer cell-derived vasculature formation. Chin J Cancer 35:10
10. Carmeliet P, Jain RK (2011) Molecular mechanisms and clinical applications of angiogenesis. Nature 473:298–307
11. Weis SM, Cheresh DA (2011) Tumor angiogenesis: molecular pathways and therapeutic targets. Nat Med 17:1359–1370
12. Turley SJ, Cremasco V, Astarita JL (2015) Immunological hallmarks of stromal cells in the tumour microenvironment. Nat Rev Immunol 15:669–682
13. Olumi AF, Grossfeld GD, Hayward SW, Carroll PR, Tlsty TD, Cunha GR (1999) Carcinoma-associated fibroblasts direct tumor progression of initiated human prostatic epithelium. Cancer Res 59(19):5002–5011
14. Orimo A, Gupta PB, Sgroi DC, Arenzana-Seisdedos F, Delaunay T, Naeem R et al (2005) Stromal fibroblasts present in invasive human breast carcinomas promote tumor growth and angiogenesis through elevated SDF-1/CXCL12 secretion. Cell 121:335–348
15. Hwang RF, Moore T, Arumugam T, Ramachandran V, Amos KD, Rivera A et al (2008) Cancer-associated stromal fibroblasts promote pancreatic tumor progression. Cancer Res 68(3):918–926

16. Crawford Y, Kasman I, Yu L, Zhong C, Wu X, Modrusan Z et al (2009) PDGF-C mediates the angiogenic and tumorigenic properties of fibroblasts associated with tumors refractory to anti-VEGF treatment. Cancer Cell 15:21–34
17. Straussman R, Morikawa T, Shee K, Barzily-Rokni M, Qian ZR, Du J et al (2012) Tumour micro-environment elicits innate resistance to RAF inhibitors through HGF secretion. Nature 487:500–504
18. Paraiso KHT, Smalley KSM (2013) Fibroblast-mediated drug resistance in cancer. Biochem Pharmacol 85:1033–1041
19. Räsänen K, Vaheri A (2010) Activation of fibroblasts in cancer stroma. Exp Cell Res 316:2713–2722
20. Vong S, Kalluri R (2011) The role of stromal myofibroblast and extracellular matrix in tumor angiogenesis. Genes Cancer 2:1139–1145
21. Zamarron BF, Chen W (2011) Dual roles of immune cells and their factors in cancer development and progression. Int J Biol Sci 7:651–658
22. Eyileten C, Majchrzak K, Pilch Z, Tonecka K, Mucha J, Taciak B et al (2016) Immune cells in cancer therapy and drug delivery. Mediat Inflamm 2016:1–13
23. Condeelis J, Pollard JW (2006) Macrophages: obligate partners for tumor cell migration, invasion, and metastasis. Cell 124:263–266
24. Bhowmick NA, Chytil A, Plieth D, Gorska AE, Dumont N, Shappell S et al (2004) TGF-beta signaling in fibroblasts modulates the oncogenic potential of adjacent epithelia. Science 303:848–851
25. Lu P, Weaver VM, Werb Z (2012) The extracellular matrix: a dynamic niche in cancer progression. J Cell Biol 196:395–406
26. Pickup MW, Mouw JK, Weaver VM (2014) The extracellular matrix modulates the hallmarks of cancer. EMBO Rep 15:1243–1253
27. Reya T, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF, Weissman IL (2001) Stem cells, cancer, and cancer stem cells. Nature 414:105–111
28. Hernández-Camarero P, Jiménez G, López-Ruiz E, Barungi S, Marchal JA, Perán M (2018) Revisiting the dynamic cancer stem cell model: importance of tumour edges. Crit Rev Oncol Hematol 131:35–45
29. Ni C, Huang J (2013) Dynamic regulation of cancer stem cells and clinical challenges. Clin Transl Oncol 15:253–258
30. Visvader JE, Lindeman GJ (2012) Cancer stem cells: current status and evolving complexities. Cell Stem Cell 10:717–728
31. Jang J-W, Song Y, Kim S-H, Kim J, Seo HR (2017) Potential mechanisms of CD133 in cancer stem cells. Life Sci 184:25–29
32. Charafe-Jauffret E, Ginestier C, Birnbaum D (2009) Breast cancer stem cells: tools and models to rely on. BMC Cancer 9:202
33. Hirschmann-Jax C, Foster AE, Wulf GG, Nuchtern JG, Jax TW, Gobel U et al (2004) A distinct "side population" of cells with high drug efflux capacity in human tumor cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:14228–14233
34. Hermann PC, Huber SL, Herrler T, Aicher A, Ellwart JW, Guba M et al (2007) Distinct populations of cancer stem cells determine tumor growth and metastatic activity in human pancreatic cancer. Cell Stem Cell 1:313–323
35. Malanchi I, Santamaria-Martínez A, Susanto E, Peng H, Lehr H-A, Delaloye J-F et al (2011) Interactions between cancer stem cells and their niche govern metastatic colonization. Nature 481:85–89
36. Dean M (2009) ABC transporters, drug resistance, and cancer stem cells. J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia 14:3–9
37. Eyler CE, Rich JN (2008) Survival of the fittest: cancer stem cells in therapeutic resistance and angiogenesis. J Clin Oncol 26:2839–2845
38. Maugeri-Saccà M, Bartucci M, De Maria R (2012) DNA damage repair pathways in cancer stem cells. Mol Cancer Ther 11:1627–1636
39. Moore N, Lyle S (2011) Quiescent, slow-cycling stem cell populations in cancer: a review of the evidence and discussion of significance. J Oncol 2011:pii: 396076
40. Wels J, Kaplan RN, Rafii S, Lyden D (2008) Migratory neighbors and distant invaders: tumor-associated niche cells. Genes Dev 22:559–574
41. Ye J, Wu D, Wu P, Chen Z, Huang J (2014) The cancer stem cell niche: cross talk between cancer stem cells and their microenvironment. Tumor Biol 35:3945–3951
42. Klimczak A, Kozlowska U (2016) Mesenchymal stromal cells and tissue-specific progenitor cells: their role in tissue homeostasis. Stem Cells Int 2016:4285215
43. Pittenger MF, Mackay AM, Beck SC, Jaiswal RK, Douglas R, Mosca JD et al (1999) Multilineage potential of adult human mesenchymal stem cells. Science 284:143–147
44. Dominici M, Le Blanc K, Mueller I, Slaper-Cortenbach I, Marini FC, Krause DS et al (2006) Minimal criteria for defining multipotent mesenchymal stromal cells. The International Society for Cellular Therapy position statement. Cytotherapy 8(4):315–317
45. Bergfeld SA, DeClerck YA (2010) Bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells and the tumor microenvironment. Cancer Metastasis Rev 29:249–261
46. Dwyer RM, Potter-Beirne SM, Harrington KA, Lowery AJ, Hennessy E, Murphy JM et al (2007) Monocyte chemotactic protein-1 secreted by primary breast tumors stimulates migration of mesenchymal stem cells. Clin Cancer Res 13:5020–5027
47. Senst C, Nazari-Shafti T, Kruger S, Höner Zu Bentrup K, Dupin CL, Chaffin AE et al (2013) Prospective dual role of mesenchymal stem cells in breast tumor microenvironment. Breast Cancer Res Treat 137:69–79

48. Ridge SM, Sullivan FJ, Glynn SA (2017) Mesenchymal stem cells: key players in cancer progression. Mol Cancer 16:31
49. Djouad F, Plence P, Bony C, Tropel P, Apparailly F, Sany J et al (2003) Immunosuppressive effect of mesenchymal stem cells favors tumor growth in allogeneic animals. Blood 102:3837–3844
50. Zhu W, Huang L, Li Y, Zhang X, Gu J, Yan Y et al (2012) Exosomes derived from human bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells promote tumor growth in vivo. Cancer Lett 315:28–37
51. Spaeth EL, Dembinski JL, Sasser AK, Watson K, Klopp A, Hall B et al (2009) Mesenchymal stem cell transition to tumor-associated fibroblasts contributes to fibrovascular network expansion and tumor progression. PLoS One 4(4):e4992
52. Karnoub AE, Dash AB, Vo AP, Sullivan A, Brooks MW, Bell GW et al (2007) Mesenchymal stem cells within tumour stroma promote breast cancer metastasis. Nature 449:557–563
53. Nabha SM, dos Santos EB, Yamamoto HA, Belizi A, Dong Z, Meng H et al (2008) Bone marrow stromal cells enhance prostate cancer cell invasion through type I collagen in an MMP-12 dependent manner. Int J Cancer 122:2482–2490
54. Martin FT, Dwyer RM, Kelly J, Khan S, Murphy JM, Curran C et al (2010) Potential role of mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) in the breast tumour microenvironment: stimulation of epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT). Breast Cancer Res Treat 124:317–326
55. Suzuki K, Sun R, Origuchi M, Kanehira M, Takahata T, Itoh J et al (2011) Mesenchymal stromal cells promote tumor growth through the enhancement of neovascularization. Mol Med 17:579–587
56. Zhang T, Lee Y, Rui Y, Cheng T, Jiang X, Li G (2013) Bone marrow-derived mesenchymal stem cells promote growth and angiogenesis of breast and prostate tumors. Stem Cell Res Ther 4:70
57. Mishra PJ, Mishra PJ, Humeniuk R, Medina DJ, Alexe G, Mesirov JP et al (2008) Carcinoma-associated fibroblast-like differentiation of human mesenchymal stem cells. Cancer Res 68:4331–4339
58. Hossain A, Gumin J, Gao F, Figueroa J, Shinojima N, Takezaki T et al (2015) Mesenchymal stem cells isolated from human gliomas increase proliferation and maintain stemness of glioma stem cells through the IL-6/gp130/STAT3 pathway. Stem Cells 33:2400–2415
59. Jiménez G, Hackenberg M, Catalina P, Boulaiz H, Griñán-Lisón C, García MÁ et al (2018) Mesenchymal stem cell's secretome promotes selective enrichment of cancer stem-like cells with specific cytogenetic profile. Cancer Lett 429:78–88
60. Kuhn NZ, Tuan RS (2010) Regulation of stemness and stem cell niche of mesenchymal stem cells: implications in tumorigenesis and metastasis. J Cell Physiol 222:268–277
61. Bissell MJ, Hines WC (2011) Why don't we get more cancer? A proposed role of the microenvironment in restraining cancer progression. Nat Med 17:320–329
62. Quail DF, Joyce JA (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med 19:1423–1437
63. Paltridge JL, Belle L, Khew-Goodall Y (1834) The secretome in cancer progression. Biochim Biophys Acta 2013:2233–2241
64. Melzer C, von der Ohe J, Lehnert H, Ungefroren H, Hass R (2017) Cancer stem cell niche models and contribution by mesenchymal stroma/stem cells. Mol Cancer 16:28
65. Beck B, Driessens G, Goossens S, Youssef KK, Kuchnio A, Caauwe A et al (2011) A vascular niche and a VEGF-Nrp1 loop regulate the initiation and stemness of skin tumours. Nature 478:399–403
66. Beckermann BM, Kallifatidis G, Groth A, Frommhold D, Apel A, Mattern J et al (2008) VEGF expression by mesenchymal stem cells contributes to angiogenesis in pancreatic carcinoma. Br J Cancer 99:622–631
67. Zhang K, Shi B, Chen J, Zhang D, Zhu Y, Zhou C et al (2010) Bone marrow mesenchymal stem cells induce angiogenesis and promote bladder cancer growth in a rabbit model. Urol Int 84:94–99
68. Xu C, Wu X, Zhu J (2013) VEGF promotes proliferation of human glioblastoma multiforme stem-like cells through VEGF receptor 2. Sci World J 2013:1–8
69. Mercurio AM (2019) VEGF/neuropilin signaling in cancer stem cells. Int J Mol Sci 20(3):pii: E490
70. Huang W-H, Chang M-C, Tsai K-S, Hung M-C, Chen H-L, Hung S-C (2013) Mesenchymal stem cells promote growth and angiogenesis of tumors in mice. Oncogene 32:4343–4354
71. Conroy S, Kruyt FAE, Wagemakers M, Bhat KPL, den Dunnen WFA (2018) IL-8 associates with a pro-angiogenic and mesenchymal subtype in glioblastoma. Oncotarget 9:15721–15731
72. Lequeux A, Noman MZ, Xiao M, Sauvage D, Van Moer K, Viry E et al (2019) Impact of hypoxic tumor microenvironment and tumor cell plasticity on the expression of immune checkpoints. Cancer Lett 458:13–20
73. Lavrentieva A, Majore I, Kasper C, Hass R (2010) Effects of hypoxic culture conditions on umbilical cord-derived human mesenchymal stem cells. Cell Commun Signal 8:18
74. Li Z, Bao S, Wu Q, Wang H, Eyler C, Sathornsumetee S et al (2009) Hypoxia-inducible factors regulate tumorigenic capacity of glioma stem cells. Cancer Cell 15:501–513
75. Kitamura T, Qian B-Z, Pollard JW (2015) Immune cell promotion of metastasis. Nat Rev Immunol 15:73–86
76. Soeda A, Park M, Lee D, Mintz A, Androutsellis-Theotokis A, McKay RD et al (2009) Hypoxia promotes expansion of the CD133-positive glioma stem cells through activation of HIF-1α. Oncogene 28:3949–3959

77. Lee D-H, Oh SC, Giles AJ, Jung J, Gilbert MR, Park DM (2017) Cardiac glycosides suppress the maintenance of stemness and malignancy via inhibiting HIF-1α in human glioma stem cells. Oncotarget 8(25):40233–40245
78. Jacobsson H, Harrison H, Hughes É, Persson E, Rhost S, Fitzpatrick P et al (2019) Hypoxia-induced secretion stimulates breast cancer stem cell regulatory signalling pathways. Mol Oncol 13(8):1693–1705
79. Zeeshan R, Mutahir Z (2017) Cancer metastasis – tricks of the trade. Bosn J Basic Med Sci 17:172–182
80. Long H, Xie R, Xiang T, Zhao Z, Lin S, Liang Z et al (2012) Autocrine CCL5 signaling promotes invasion and migration of CD133+ ovarian cancer stem-like cells via NF-κB-mediated MMP-9 upregulation. Stem Cells 30:2309–2319
81. Justilien V, Regala RP, Tseng I-C, Walsh MP, Batra J, Radisky ES et al (2012) Matrix metalloproteinase-10 is required for lung cancer stem cell maintenance, tumor initiation and metastatic potential. PLoS One 7:e35040
82. Inoue A, Takahashi H, Harada H, Kohno S, Ohue S, Kobayashi K et al (2010) Cancer stem-like cells of glioblastoma characteristically express MMP-13 and display highly invasive activity. Int J Oncol 37:1121–1131
83. Mariya T, Hirohashi Y, Torigoe T, Tabuchi Y, Asano T, Saijo H et al (2016) Matrix metalloproteinase-10 regulates stemness of ovarian cancer stem-like cells by activation of canonical Wnt signaling and can be a target of chemotherapy-resistant ovarian cancer. Oncotarget 7:26806–26822
84. Chaturvedi P, Gilkes DM, Wong CC, Kshitiz, Luo W, Zhang H et al (2013) Hypoxia-inducible factor-dependent breast cancer-mesenchymal stem cell bidirectional signaling promotes metastasis. J Clin Invest 123:189–205
85. So KA, Min KJ, Hong JH, Lee J-K (2015) Interleukin-6 expression by interactions between gynecologic cancer cells and human mesenchymal stem cells promotes epithelial-mesenchymal transition. Int J Oncol 47:1451–1459
86. Ritter A, Friemel A, Fornoff F, Adjan M, Solbach C, Yuan J et al (2015) Characterization of adipose-derived stem cells from subcutaneous and visceral adipose tissues and their function in breast cancer cells. Oncotarget 6(33):34475–34493
87. Wu S, Wang Y, Yuan Z, Wang S, Du H, Liu X et al (2018) Human adipose-derived mesenchymal stem cells promote breast cancer MCF7 cell epithelial-mesenchymal transition by cross interacting with the TGF-β/Smad and PI3K/AKT signaling pathways. Mol Med Rep 19:177–186
88. McAndrews KM, McGrail DJ, Ravikumar N, Dawson MR (2015) Mesenchymal stem cells induce directional migration of invasive breast cancer cells through TGF-β. Sci Rep 5:16941
89. Padua D, Zhang XH-F, Wang Q, Nadal C, Gerald WL, Gomis RR et al (2008) TGFβ primes breast tumors for lung metastasis seeding through angiopoietin-like 4. Cell 133:66–77
90. Kaplan RN, Riba RD, Zacharoulis S, Bramley AH, Vincent L, Costa C et al (2005) VEGFR1-positive haematopoietic bone marrow progenitors initiate the pre-metastatic niche. Nature 438:820–827
91. Xu D, Xu H, Ren Y, Liu C, Wang X, Zhang H et al (2012) Cancer stem cell-related gene periostin: a novel prognostic marker for breast cancer. PLoS One 7:e46670
92. Wang X, Liu J, Wang Z, Huang Y, Liu W, Zhu X et al (2013) Periostin contributes to the acquisition of multipotent stem cell-like properties in human mammary epithelial cells and breast cancer cells. PLoS One 8:e72962
93. Mantovani A, Allavena P, Sica A, Balkwill F (2008) Cancer-related inflammation. Nature 454(7203):436–444
94. Grivennikov SI, Greten FR, Karin M (2010) Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. Cell 140:883–899
95. Kessenbrock K, Plaks V, Werb Z (2010) Matrix metalloproteinases: regulators of the tumor microenvironment. Cell 141:52–67
96. Mantovani A (2010) Molecular pathways linking inflammation and cancer. Curr Mol Med 10:369–373
97. De Miguel MP, Fuentes-Julián S, Blázquez-Martínez A, Pascual CY, Aller MA, Arias J et al (2012) Immunosuppressive properties of mesenchymal stem cells: advances and applications. Curr Mol Med 12:574–591
98. Liubomirski Y, Lerrer S, Meshel T, Morein D, Rubinstein-Achiasaf L, Sprinzak D et al (2019) Notch-mediated tumor-stroma-inflammation networks promote invasive properties and CXCL8 expression in triple-negative breast cancer. Front Immunol 10:804
99. Yoshimura A, Muto G (2011) TGF-β function in immune suppression. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 350:127–147
100. Liu S, Ginestier C, Ou SJ, Clouthier SG, Patel SH, Monville F et al (2011) Breast cancer stem cells are regulated by mesenchymal stem cells through cytokine networks. Cancer Res 71:614–624
101. Nomura A, Gupta VK, Dauer P, Sharma NS, Dudeja V, Merchant N et al (2018) NFκB-mediated invasiveness in CD133 $^{+}$ pancreatic TICs is regulated by autocrine and paracrine activation of IL1 signaling. Mol Cancer Res 16:162–172
102. Chen M-S, Lin C-Y, Chiu Y-H, Chen C-P, Tsai P-J, Wang H-S (2018) IL-1β-induced matrix metalloprotease-1 promotes mesenchymal stem cell migration via PAR1 and G-protein-coupled signaling pathway. Stem Cells Int 2018:3524759
103. Wang S, Miao Z, Yang Q, Wang Y, Zhang J (2018) The dynamic roles of mesenchymal stem cells in colon cancer. Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018:1–8

104. Gao H, Priebe W, Glod J, Banerjee D (2009) Activation of signal transducers and activators of transcription 3 and focal adhesion kinase by stromal cell-derived factor 1 is required for migration of human mesenchymal stem cells in response to tumor cell-conditioned medium. Stem Cells 27:857–865
105. Zhang J, Lu Y, Pienta KJ (2010) Multiple roles of chemokine (C-C motif) ligand 2 in promoting prostate cancer growth. J Natl Cancer Inst 102:522–528
106. Chanmee T, Ontong P, Konno K, Itano N (2014) Tumor-associated macrophages as major players in the tumor microenvironment. Cancers (Basel) 6:1670–1690
107. Cabarcas SM, Mathews LA, Farrar WL (2011) The cancer stem cell niche – there goes the neighborhood? Int J Cancer 129:2315–2327
108. Davis H, Irshad S, Bansal M, Rafferty H, Boitsova T, Bardella C et al (2015) Aberrant epithelial GREM1 expression initiates colonic tumorigenesis from cells outside the stem cell niche. Nat Med 21:62–70
109. Kalluri R, Zeisberg M (2006) Fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 6:392–401
110. Nwabo KAH, Kamga PT, Simo RT, Vecchio L, Seke EPF, Muller JM et al (2017) Mesenchymal stromal cells' role in tumor microenvironment: involvement of signaling pathways. Cancer Biol Med 14:129
111. Orecchioni S, Gregato G, Martin-Padura I, Reggiani F, Braidotti P, Mancuso P et al (2013) Complementary populations of human adipose CD34+ progenitor cells promote growth, angiogenesis, and metastasis of breast cancer. Cancer Res 73:5880–5891
112. Schwitalla S, Fingerle AA, Cammareri P, Nebelsiek T, Göktuna SI, Ziegler PK et al (2013) Intestinal tumorigenesis initiated by dedifferentiation and acquisition of stem-cell-like properties. Cell 152:25–38
113. Ebos JML, Kerbel RS (2011) Antiangiogenic therapy: impact on invasion, disease progression, and metastasis. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 8:210–221
114. Ding L, Ni J, Yang F, Huang L, Deng H, Wu Y et al (2017) Promising therapeutic role of miR-27b in tumor. Tumor Biol 39:101042831769165
115. Liu Q, Cao P (2015) Clinical and prognostic significance of HIF-1α in glioma patients: a meta-analysis. Int J Clin Exp Med 8:22073–22083
116. Li J, Xu J, Yan X, Jin K, Li W, Zhang R (2018) Targeting interleukin-6 (IL-6) sensitizes anti-PD-L1 treatment in a colorectal cancer preclinical model. Med Sci Monit 24:5501–5508
117. Kampan NC, Xiang SD, McNally OM, Stephens AN, Quinn MA, Plebanski M (2018) Immunotherapeutic interleukin-6 or interleukin-6 receptor blockade in cancer: challenges and opportunities. Curr Med Chem 25:4785–4806
118. Alfaro C, Sanmamed MF, Rodríguez-Ruiz ME, Teijeira Á, Oñate C, González Á et al (2017) Interleukin-8 in cancer pathogenesis, treatment and follow-up. Cancer Treat Rev 60:24–31
119. Papaccio F, Della Corte C, Viscardi G, Di Liello R, Esposito G, Sparano F et al (2018) HGF/MET and the immune system: relevance for cancer immunotherapy. Int J Mol Sci 19:3595
120. Colak S, ten Dijke P (2017) Targeting TGF-β signaling in cancer. Trends Cancer 3:56–71

9 Tight Interplay Between Therapeutic Monoclonal Antibodies and the Tumour Microenvironment in Cancer Therapy

Quentin Riller, Aditi Varthaman, and Sophie Sibéril

Abstract

Therapeutic monoclonal antibodies (mAb) have changed the landscape of cancer therapy. With advances in the understanding of tumour biology and its microenvironment, different categories of mAbs have been developed; a first category is directed against tumour cells themselves, a second one comprises antibodies blocking the formation of neo-vasculature that accompanies tumour development, and, during the last decades, a third new category of immunomodulatory antibodies that target immune cells in the tumour microenvironment rather than cancer cells has emerged. In this chapter, we outline the main mechanisms of action of the different anti-tumour antibodies. We discuss the notion that, rather than passive immunotherapy that solely induces tumour cell killing, mAbs have multifaceted effects on the tumour microenvironment and could, qualitatively and quantitatively, reshape the immune infiltrate. We also discuss bystander effects of mAbs on the tumour microenvironment that should be carefully considered for the design of new therapeutic strategies.

Keywords

Immunotherapy · Monoclonal antibodies · Cancer therapy · Tumour microenvironment · IgG · Fab- and Fc-dependent mechanisms of action · Fc gamma receptors · Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity · Antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis · Innate immunity · Vaccinal effect · Long-term adaptive immunity · Immune checkpoints · Modulation of anti-tumour adaptive immunity · Bystander effects of monoclonal antibodies

9.1 Introduction

Forty years after their discovery by Milstein and Köhler, monoclonal antibodies are widely used for the treatment of cancer (Table 9.1). This success is partly due to the discovery of new therapeutic targets resulting from research advances in tumour biology and its microenvironment.

Lloyd Old and Ted Boyse's discovery of the first cell-surface differentiation antigens – used to

Q. Riller · A. Varthaman · S. Sibéril (✉)
Centre de Recherche des Cordeliers, INSERM UMRS1138, Sorbonne Université, Université de Paris, Paris, France
e-mail: sophie.siberil@sorbonne-universite.fr

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_9

Table 9.1 Approved or ongoing approval monoclonal antibodies in cancer regimen

International name	Class	Target	Indication	Approval year (EU/US)
Monoclonal antibodies targeting tumour-associated antigens				
Tositumomab-I131	Murine IgG2a	CD20	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	NA/2003#
Rituximab	Chimeric IgG1	CD20	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	1998/1997
Ibritumomab tiuxetan	Murine IgG1	CD20	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma	2004/2002
Ofatumumab	Human IgG1	CD20	Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia	2010/2009
Obinutuzumab	Humanized IgG1	CD20	Chronic lymphocytic leukaemia	2014/2013
Inotuzumab ozogamicin	Humanized IgG4 ADC	CD22	Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia	2017/2017
Moxetumomab pasudotox	Murine IgG1-immunotoxin	CD22	Hairy cell leukaemia	NA/2018
Blinatumomab	Murine bispecific antibody	CD19, CD3	Acute lymphoblastic leukaemia	2015/2014
Brentuximab vedotin	Chimeric IgG1 ADC	CD30	Hodgkin lymphoma, systemic anaplastic large cell lymphoma	2012/2011
Gemtuzumab ozogamicin	Humanized IgG4 ADC	CD33	Acute myeloid leukaemia	2018/2017; 2000#
Daratumumab	Human IgG1	CD38	Multiple myeloma	2016/2015
Isatuximab	Humanized IgG1	CD38	Multiple myeloma	2020/2020
Alemtuzumab	Humanized IgG1	CD52	Chronic myeloid leukaemia	2001#/2001#
Trastuzumab	Humanized IgG1	HER2	Breast cancer	2000/1998
Pertuzumab	Humanized IgG1	HER2	Breast cancer	2013/2012
Ado-trastuzumab emtansine	Humanized IgG1 ADC	HER2	Breast cancer	2013/2012
Dinutuximab	Chimeric IgG1	GD2	Neuroblastoma	2015/2015
Edrecolomab	Murine IgG2a	EpCAM	Colon cancer	1995#/NA
Catumaxomab	Rat/mouse bispecific mAb	EPCAM/CD3	Malignant ascites	2009#/NA
Elotuzumab	Humanized IgG1	SLAMF7	Multiple myeloma	2016/2015
Mogamulizumab	Humanized IgG1	CCR4	Sézary syndrome	2018/2018
Polatuzumab vedotin	Humanized IgG1 ADC	CD79b	Diffuse large B-cell lymphoma	2020/2019
Sacituzumab govitecan	Humanized IgG1 ADC	TROP-2	Triple-negative breast cancer	NA/2020
Monoclonal antibodies that interfere with tumour–stroma interactions				
Cetuximab	Chimeric IgG1	EGFR	Colorectal cancer	2004/2004
Panitumumab	Human IgG2	EGFR	Colorectal cancer	2007/2006
Necitumumab	Human IgG1	EGFR	Non-small-cell lung cancer	2015/2015
Bevacizumab	Humanized IgG1	VEGF	Colorectal cancer	2005/2004
Ramucirumab	Human IgG1	VEGFR2	Gastric cancer	2014/2014
Olaratumab	Human IgG1	PDGFRα	Soft tissue sarcoma	2016/2016
Monoclonal antibodies that exert direct immunostimulatory effects				
Ipilimumab	Human IgG1	CTLA-4	Metastatic melanoma	2011/2011
Nivolumab	Human IgG4	PD1	Melanoma, non-small-cell lung cancer	2015/2014
Pembrolizumab	Humanized IgG4	PD1	Melanoma	2015/2014
Cemiplimab	Human IgG4	PD-1	Cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma	2019/2018
Atezolizumab	Humanized IgG1	PD-L1	Bladder cancer	2017/2016
Avelumab	Human IgG1	PD-L1	Merkel cell carcinoma	2017/2017
Durvalumab	Human IgG1	PD-L1	Bladder cancer	2018/2017

Source: '*The Antibody Society*' (https://www.antibodysociety.org/resources/approved-antibodies/)
Withdrawn or marketing discontinued, *NA* not approved, *ADC* antibody-drug conjugate

distinguish lineage and functional subsets of leucocytes [1, 2] – led to the CD (cluster of differentiation) classification and the wide use of cell-surface markers to distinguish between normal and malignant cells. Anti-tumour antibodies can be broadly classified into three categories: 1. Antibodies targeting CD antigens expressed specifically by tumour cells of the hematopoietic lineage: lymphocytes (CD20, CD22 CD38) and myeloid cells (CD30, CD33) (Table 9.1). 2. Antibodies that are directed against tumour-associated antigens (HER2/neu, MUC1, CEA, EGFR) – a number of molecules overexpressed by tumour cells discovered using tumour genetics [3–7] (Table 9.1). 3. Antibodies targeting the tumour microenvironment (TME). Established tumours are complex tissues composed not only of tumour cells but also of stromal and mesenchymal cells, vasculature components and immune cells. Tumour-derived factors stimulate blood vessel growth that in turn sustains tumour progression leading to the hypothesis that anti-angiogenesis agents might be an effective anti-cancer strategy [8–11]. The isolation of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) – an endothelial-cell mitogen and a key regulator of angiogenesis in the TME – and the demonstration that an anti-VEGF mAb inhibits tumour growth in different preclinical models, led to the development and approval in 2004 of bevacizumab (humanized IgG1 anti-VEGF mAb) for clinical use in cancer patients [11, 12]. Other antibodies blocking neo-vasculature formation that accompanies tumour development have been subsequently developed, notably anti-VEGFR2, -PDGFRα mAbs (Table 9.1).

Control of tumour growth is largely dependent on the quantity and quality of the tumour immune infiltrate [13, 14]. The role of immunity in the control of tumours, although suggested as early as 1957 by Burnet [15] has been neglected for a long time. Studies in 1957 clearly showed that tumours harbour immunological determinants capable of eliciting anti-tumour immunity and long-term immune memory [16]. Consistent with these observations, the team of Boon reported that autologous cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTL) from melanoma patients recognize self-peptides derived from MAGE-1 protein expressed on tumours [17]. MAGE-1 is the first member of a larger family of proteins called the cancer testis (CT) antigen family – expressed only in tumours and in germ cells – which has been widely used in vaccination assays to elicit anti-tumour T-cell immunity. The use of genetically modified mouse models of immunodeficiency revealed the key role of immune components in tumour growth control; such as IFN-γ signalling, perforin molecules and the T-cell compartment. These preclinical data have incited interest in the understanding of cancer surveillance [18]. From the concept of ‘the three Es’ of cancer immunoediting defined by Schreiber’s group; elimination – corresponding to immunosurveillance of tumour growth by intratumoural immunity; equilibrium – representing the process by which immune attack induces the selection of resistant tumour cell variants; and escape – the process by which tumour cells escape immune control, came the finding that the immune system not only protects the host against tumour development but can also reshape the immunogenic phenotype of a developing tumour [18]. Studies performed on large cohorts of patients with cancer reveal correlations between the presence of tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs) and patient survival [13, 18, 19]. A favourable clinical outcome is often associated with the presence of tertiary lymphoid structures (TLS) – ectopic lymphoid formations that contain components required for the generation of an adaptive immune response including B-cell germinal centres, T-cell zones, mature dendritic cells and follicular dendritic cells [20]. These basic and clinical observations have paved the way to the development of a new category of immunomodulatory antibodies that target immune cells within the TME. Particularly, antibodies directed against regulatory receptors or immune checkpoint (ICP) molecules on immune cells have emerged over the last decade [21], as exemplified by the success of anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1 antibodies in clinics. In the late 1990s, James P. Allison and T. Honjo (both awarded with the Nobel Prize in 2018) demonstrated, in preclinical tumour models, that the expression of inhibitory ICP on intratumoural T cells dampens

their anti-tumour activity and that blockade of PD-1/PD-L1 or CTLA-4 pathways using mAbs dramatically halts tumour development [22, 23]. These pioneering studies reveal anti-ICP mAbs as a promising strategy for specific tumour immunotherapy and have revolutionized the landscape of cancer therapy.

In this chapter, we will present the Fab- and Fc-dependent mechanisms of action of different categories of anti-tumour antibodies.

9.2 Direct Fab- and Fc-Dependent Mechanisms of Action of Therapeutic Monoclonal Antibodies in Cancer

Initially, it was thought that anti-tumour antibodies acted by rapidly recruiting blocking/killer mechanisms on tumour cells. Thus, use of mAbs was considered until recently more as passive immunotherapy based on their transient ability to block cancer cell activation and/or proliferation (i.e. by targeting growth receptors such as EGF-R or HER2/Neu (erbB-2)), to induce apoptosis (even marginal by HER2/neu, CD20), or to interfere with the adhesion of tumour cells (EpCAM) blocking the formation of metastases. However, the expression of mAb-targets on cancer cells and in the tumour area is not necessarily predictive of response to treatment. For example, although the presence of EGFR-positive tumour cells is a requirement for colorectal cancer patients to receive cetuximab and panitumumab (anti-EGFR mAbs), EGFR expression at the protein or mRNA level has not been correlated with treatment response [24], suggesting that the mechanism of activity of these mAbs may also be related to their effect on tumour infiltrating immune cells. Similarly, although the use of antibodies targeting the VEGF pathway has shown clinical benefits associated with a reduction in tumour blood vessel density, the direct neutralization of VEGF-driven vascular effects explains only part of their therapeutic effect. VEGF inhibitors, particularly bevacizumab, not only induce vessel normalization – associated with increased tumour blood perfusion, restoration of adhesion molecules on endothelial cells and improved influx of leucocytes into the tumour – but also activate and modulate the function of immune cells within the TME [12, 25]. Anti-VEGF and/or anti-VEGFR mAbs have an impact on the frequency of regulatory T cells and of tumour-infiltrating myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) and reinvigorate dysfunctional DCs [12, 25].

Part of the therapeutic effects of anti-angiogenic antibodies can be triggered by Fc/FcγR interactions. Most of the marketed therapeutic antibodies are human IgG1 (either chimerized, humanized or fully human antibodies), the most efficient human IgG subclass, together with IgG3, in engaging FcγR and activating the complement cascade. Anti-tumour antibodies can trigger effector mechanisms leading to tumour cell death, such as complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), antibody-dependent cell cytotoxicity (ADCC), antibody-dependent cell phagocytosis (ADCP). The activation of the classical pathway of complement through the binding of C1q to the Fc portion of mAbs and the recruitment of Fcγ receptors (FcγRs) expressed by NK cells, neutrophils, monocytes and macrophages leads to the formation and/or the release of effector molecules (membrane attack complex made of C5b-C9, perforin and granzymes, TNF-α, reactive oxygen intermediates (ROI), etc.) that induce cell death. ADCC and ADCP in myeloid cells through the engagement of FcγR are considered to play an important role in the in vivo efficacy of anti-tumour antibodies both in pre-clinical tumour models and in treated cancer patients [26]. Macrophages in tumour tissues are important for the efficacy of therapeutic antibodies thanks to their expression of different types of FcγR, enabling ADCP. Several studies provide evidence that macrophages are effector targets of therapeutic antibodies in cancer; in vitro human macrophages phagocytose tumour cells in response to

anti-CD20 (rituximab) and anti-HER2/neu mAbs (trastuzumab) [27–29] and, in vivo, macrophages have been associated with a better response to trastuzumab [30, 31]. Interestingly, all human IgG subclasses, including isotypes that exhibit low NK cell-mediated ADCC due to their poor binding to FcγRIIIa, have the potential to engage other FcγR (FcγRI and FcRγIIa) expressed in macrophages and to stimulate macrophage-dependent phagocytosis [32]. Significant correlations of FcγR polymorphisms with clinical outcome in patients treated with rituximab [33, 34], trastuzumab [35, 36] and cetuximab [37, 38], argue in favour of a role for FcγR⁺ immune cells in the TME in the clinical response to mAb-based treatment. However, studies reveal no such associations in patients with breast cancer [39], raising the possibility of additional immune mechanisms that account for the clinical benefit of mAb-based immunotherapy. Notably, the duration and strength of the clinical responses following mAb treatment can be linked to the ability of tumour antigen-specific mAb to elicit adaptive cellular immunity via the activation of antigen presenting cells, as described later in this chapter.

FcγR/FcR interactions are also implicated in the anti-tumour activity of anti-ICP mAbs [40]. One underlying mechanism of the anti-tumour activity of anti-GITR, -OX40, -CTLA-4 and -TIGIT antibodies is through intratumoural depletion of regulatory T cells via FcγR⁺ myeloid effector cells [40–46]. Consistent with these preclinical studies, melanoma patients with higher frequencies of FcγRIIIA⁺ myeloid effector cells in the peripheral blood show higher response to ipilimumab treatment which is attributed to ADCC/ADCP mediated depletion of Treg in the TME [45]. Recently, Waight et al., reported an FcγR-dependent mechanism of action of anti-CTLA-4 mAbs that is independent of Treg depletion [46]. Engagement of activating FcγRIIIA on APCs by anti-CTLA-4, anti-TIGIT and anti-CD45RB antibodies mAbs improves T-cell activity by modulating both TCR and CD28 signalling [46].

9.3 Therapeutic Antibodies Reshape the Tumour Microenvironment

9.3.1 From Tumour Cell Destruction to the Triggering of Long-Term Adaptive Anti-tumour Immunity

In addition to the anti-tumour effects triggered by mAbs treatment on innate immunity, evidence suggests that these agents might also affect the local inflammatory and immune microenvironment [13]. Clinical data and in vivo animal models suggest that antibody treatment leading to tumour cell killing induces long-term anti-tumour responses by triggering target-specific adaptive memory responses, a phenomenon that has been termed the ‘vaccinal’ effect of antibody treatment [47]. Specific T- and B-cell responses are reported in cancer patients following therapy with anti-CA125 [48], anti-MUC1 [49], anti-HER2/neu [50, 51] and anti-EGF-R [52] mAbs. Studies in murine models also report that the therapeutic effect of anti-CD20 [53–56], anti-HER2/neu [57–60], or anti-EGF-R [61] mAbs depends on the induction of an adaptive immune response and on the presence of T cells. The anti-HER2/neu studies reveal an antibody-mediated mechanism in which danger signals activate both innate and T-cell-mediated immune responses [57–60]. A role for dendritic cells (DC) and macrophages at the tumour site in this vaccinal effect is supported by the ability of these cells to internalize – in an FcγR-dependent manner – exogenous IgG-complexed antigens (probably derived from tumour cell debris), and to present MHC II and MHC I-restricted peptides derived from these complexes [62–65]. In a human glioma model, FcγR-dependent engulfment of cetuximab-coated glial tumour cells by DCs leads to an increase in anti-tumour CD8⁺ T cells [65]. Several studies demonstrate that upon mAb therapy, a cross-talk between NK cells and DCs can occur [52, 66, 67]. Cetuximab-activated NK cells result in enhanced cross-presentation of EGF-R-derived peptides to specific CTL [52].

Interestingly, it has been reported that human macrophages and DCs equally present tumour-associated antigens to CD8^{+} T cells after phagocytosis of γ-irradiated melanoma cells [68]. One can thus hypothesize that phagocytosis of mAb-coated immune complexes by FcγR^{+} macrophages also leads to an efficient activation of CD8^{+} T cells. Nevertheless, the extent to which both APCs process and cross-present non-mutated tumour-associated antigens within the tumour microenvironment to prime T cells in situ has yet to be clarified. Non-mutated self-proteins overexpressed by tumour cells are universal target antigens to induce tumour-specific T-lymphocytes without the need to identify the mutanome of tumour cells. Recent results demonstrate that thymic deletion prunes but does not eliminate self-specific CD4^{+} and CD8^{+} T cells, and that some self-peptide-specific T cells can be detected at frequencies similar to T cells specific for non-self-antigens [69–72]. We also found that CD4^{+} T cells against non-mutated human CD20-derived peptides are present in healthy donors and lymphoma patients [73]. While T-cell responses against these self-derived epitopes can be limited by a self-tolerant T-cell repertoire, it has been demonstrated that anti-CA125, anti-HER2/neu, anti-MUC1 and anti-EGFR mAb treatment can circumvent this tolerance as shown by the increase in frequencies of CD4^{+} and/or CD8^{+} T cells recognizing peptides derived from the target molecule in cancer patients [48–52].

9.3.2 Effects of Immunomodulatory mAbs on Lymphoid and Myeloid Compartments Within the Tumour Microenvironment

In the last decade, therapeutic mAbs directed against inhibitory checkpoints have changed the landscape of cancer therapy. Clinical studies have demonstrated that these antibodies can induce durable clinical responses even in patients with advanced cancer [74–76]. Of the many different checkpoint receptors, the cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4), as well as PD-1 and its ligands, PD-L1 and PD-L2, are most intensely studied. CTLA-4, expressed on T cells, is an early contributor to the development of immune tolerance. It negatively controls the priming and early antigen-dependent T-cell activation in lymphoid organs, and is also expressed in regulatory T cells (Treg). CTLA-4 inhibition is used with the aim of stimulating T-cell activation and, subsequently, anti-tumour immune responses. Ipilimumab, a human IgG1 anti-CTLA-4 mAb, which was the first anti-ICP mAb to demonstrate survival benefit for patients with metastatic melanoma, received Federal Drug Administration (FDA) approval for melanoma treatment in 2011 and is currently in clinical trials in various cancers, including lung, colorectal, bladder, renal and prostate cancer (https://www.cancer.gov/about-cancer/treatment/clinical-trials/intervention/ipilimumab?pn=4). PD-1 is a checkpoint inhibitor of T cells within peripheral tissues and the tumour microenvironment. PD-1 is also highly expressed in intratumoural Treg cells and might enhance the immunosuppressive activity of these cells. MAbs that target the PD-1/PD-L1 axis are approved for the treatment of patients with melanoma, cutaneous squamous cell carcinoma, non-small-cell lung cancer, bladder cancer and Merkel cell carcinoma (Table 9.1).

Overall changes in the tumour microenvironment during ICP therapy, both in preclinical models and in treated patients, have been comprehensively analysed through longitudinal gene expression studies as well as high-dimensional profiling approaches, such as mass cytometry and single-cell RNA sequencing [77–82]. Major changes in tumour- and immune-associated genes are reported in melanoma patients who exhibit clinical activity following ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4 mAb) therapy [79]. A lower expression was observed for genes encoding tumour antigens (e.g. members of the MAGEA family, NY-ESO-1, MLANA), for genes involved in dermatological phenotype and functions (e.g. SOX10, MITF, two key transcription regulators in melanocytes, and tyrosinases TYR and TYRP1, involved in melanin synthesis) and for genes implicated in cell growth and differentiation (e.g. MYC, MXI1, IGF1R, CDK2, CCND1,

BIRC7, HRK and TNFRSF10B). By contrast, many IFN-γ-inducible genes and Th1-associated markers (e.g. PRF1, TAP1 and GZMB) increased after ipilimumab treatment, suggesting an accumulation of this type of T cells at the tumour site, which might play an important role in mediating the antitumour activity of ipilimumab [79].

It is generally assumed that ICP blockade (anti-PD-1, anti-CTLA-4 mAbs) can restore antitumour activity in dysfunctional infiltrating immune cells. Checkpoint inhibitors amplify preexisting T-cell responses, broaden the range of antigens being targeted by the T-cell repertoire, and induce T-cell-mediated immune responses against tumour neoantigens [82–85]. A whole-exome and transcriptome analysis in tumours from patients with advanced melanoma treated with nivolumab (anti-PD-1 mAb) shows that mutation and neoantigen load reduce from baseline in responding patients [77]. Interestingly, in responding patients, T-cell clones expand in proportion to the number of neoantigen mutations that disappear on therapy, suggesting an effective immune elimination of tumour cells containing non-synonymous mutations and neoantigens, and a selective pressure against the generation of antigenic mutations.

Analysis of changes in the TME in tumours of mice treated with anti-CTLA-4 and/or anti-PD-1 mAbs by mass cytometry and single-cell RNA sequencing demonstrates that anti-ICP mAbs induce both quantitative and qualitative changes in intratumoural $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells as well as NK cell subsets. The dramatic reduction in Treg frequency and suppressive functions, and the remodelling of the $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T-cell compartments, lead to increased expression of an anti-tumour effector gene signature (e.g. *Ifng, Gzmb*). This study also shows that anti-ICP therapy induces a shift towards a more activated $CD4^+$ T-cell compartment that expresses high levels of IFN-γ. T-cell activation markers are also altered: anti-CTLA-4 decreases the expression of TIM-3, LAG-3 and PD-1 in tumour neoantigen-specific $CD8^+$ T cells, while anti-PD-1 therapy decreases the expression of LAG-3 and PD-1 [80]. Recent work from the Allison group in murine tumour models and human melanomas show that the clinical activity of anti-CTLA-4 or anti-PD-1 mAbs relies on distinct effects on intratumoural T-cell subsets [81]. Both antibodies induce the expansion of specific tumour infiltrating T-cell subsets. Anti-PD-1 mAb predominantly expands exhausted tumour infiltrating $CD8^+$ T cells, while anti-CTLA-4, but not anti-PD-1, modulates the $CD4^+$ T-cell compartment, particularly by expanding an $ICOS^+$ Th1-like $CD4^+$ effector subset. Differences in the impact of the two mAbs on specific subsets of lymphoid cells are also reported in the work of Gubin et al. [80].

Recent studies suggest that durable clinical responses to immunotherapy also depend on bystander effects on T-cell subsets that do not express ICP molecules. Indeed, $PD\text{-}1^+$ $CD8^+$ T cells have limited potential to give rise to a long-lasting effector response due to their acquisition of a stable epigenetic state that cannot be reverted by ICP blockade [86–90]. In a preclinical model of colon cancer, Kurtulus et al. examined changes in the RNA profiles of intratumoural $CD8^+$ T cells after TIM-3/PD-1 blockade [91]. Two TIL populations with either high ($PD\text{-}1^+TIM3^+$) or low ($PD\text{-}1^-TIM3^-$) dysfunctional state acquired an effector profile following TIM3/PD-1 blockade. Interestingly, the $PD\text{-}1^-TIM3^-$ subset showed more profound changes than $PD\text{-}1^+TIM3^+$ subset. TIM3/PD-1 blockade increased the frequency of $PD1^-$ T-cell subsets bearing characteristics of effector and memory precursor-like cells, indicating that the treatment led to indirect changes in pre-existing populations in the TME. This memory-precursor-like subset requires the transcription factor Tcf7 and shares features with $CD8^+$ T cells that respond to checkpoint blockade in patients [91].

Intratumoural monocytes and macrophages also undergo striking remodelling following anti-ICP mAbs. While $CXC3CR1^+$ $CD206^+$ macrophages – CD206 is a marker of anti-inflammatory M2 macrophages – are present in progressively growing tumours in mice infused with control mAb, they dramatically reduce in response to anti-PD-1 and/or anti-CTLA-4 mAb therapy [80]. The therapy also leads to an accumulation of myeloid cells expressing high levels of *Nos2*

(iNOS), a marker of IFN-γ activated, pro-inflammatory macrophages. Indeed, IFN-γ production, as a consequence of T-cell reinvigoration following anti-ICP mAbs therapy, positively drives polarization of newly arrived monocytes towards iNOS-positive macrophages with anti-tumour activity [80]. In line with this observation, in patients with advanced melanoma treated with nivolumab (anti-PD-1 mAb) therapy, changes in macrophage-associated genes in tumours are associated with better clinical responses, suggesting that macrophages may play an important role in response to anti-ICP mAbs [77].

Several studies have shown that the tumour stroma can be a major target of anti-ICP therapy. As an example, clinical activity of agonist mAb anti-CD40 (developed to mimic CD40L engagement on T cells and to increase T-cell priming) can be a result of anti-CD40-dependent alteration of tumour stroma [92]. In a mouse model of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma, anti-CD40 mAb induces tumour regression by the recruitment and activation of circulating macrophages, which then translocate to tumour tissues and degrade the tumour stroma (displaying a decrease in collagen I content, consistent with degradation of the tumour matrix) [92]. Studies also reveal side effects leading to a cytokine storm and lethality, following systemic injection of CD40 agonist antibodies together with IL-2 in aged mice and young obese mice [93, 94]. In these mice, higher percentages of TNF^{+}-activated macrophages are detected in tissues following therapy as compared to young mice. This suggests a link between the hyper-inflammatory cytokine response to systemic immune stimulation and the increase in visceral fat observed in aged or young obese mice [94].

9.3.3 When Therapeutic mAbs are 'Not-So-Good Guys'

The CD40/CD40L story is an interesting case demonstrating that monoclonal antibodies are more than passive immunotherapy agents, and some of them may have multifaceted – beneficial or detrimental – effects on the tumour microenvironment and on anti-tumour immunity.

In a large clinical trial in metastatic colorectal cancer, the addition of cetuximab (anti-EGFR) to bevacizumab (anti-VEGF) plus chemotherapy resulted in decreased progression-free survival [95]. Pander et al. show that M2 macrophages present abundantly in colon carcinoma are activated by cetuximab-opsonized tumour cells, resulting in anti-inflammatory and tumour-promoting factors production, including IL-10 and VEGF. They suggest that this effect might explain the negative clinical effect of cetuximab in colon cancer [96]. In bevacizumab-resistant patient glioblastomas, the therapeutic mAb directly binds to the macrophage migration inhibitory factor (MIF) from the TME and blocks MIF-induced M1 polarization of macrophages, resulting in more M2 pro-tumoral macrophages [97]. Moreover, as VEGF increases glioma MIF production in a VEGFR2-dependent manner, bevacizumab-induced VEFG depletion down-regulates MIF in TME. Nevertheless, it should be noted that other studies in different microenvironments have reported beneficial effects of MIF down-regulation or deletion, including increased intratumoural effector $CD4^{+}$ and $CD8^{+}$ T cells [98, 99], reduced regulatory T cells [98], reduced MDSCs in the tumour [100] and higher numbers of activated DCs [99].

Moreover, mAbs, as therapeutic agents that actively reshape the microenvironment, could in some conditions induce immunosuppressive molecules. It has been reported that the numbers of $CD4^{+}$, $CD8^{+}$ T cells and $CD68^{+}$ macrophages expressing PD-L1 and VISTA inhibitory immune checkpoints increased in the prostate tumour microenvironment after ipilimumab therapy (anti-CTLA-4 mAb) [101]. This suggests that VISTA might represent a compensatory inhibitory pathway in ipilimumab-treated prostate cancer that is poorly responsive to immune checkpoint monotherapy. The authors also show that ipilimumab leads to an increase in PD-$L1^{+}$ and $VISTA^{+}$ macrophages expressing CD163 and ARG1, suggesting a shift towards an M2-like phenotype and function of these cells [101]. Furthermore, whereas antibody-dependent cellu-

lar cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP) are two main mechanisms that critically contribute to the efficacy of anti-tumour therapeutic antibodies, a recent study reports that ADCP results in an immunosuppressive phenotype of tumour-associated macrophages with overexpression of inhibitory molecules PD-L1 and indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO) [102]. Macrophages that undergo ADCP upon rituximab (anti-CD20) or trastuzumab (anti-Her2/Neu) mAbs treatment subsequently inhibit NK-cell-mediated ADCC and T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity in lymphomas and breast cancers. This study reveals a deleterious role of ADCP in macrophages that can be overcome with concomitant immune checkpoint blockade [102].

Interestingly, different studies also report that FcγR engagement by anti-ICP mAbs dampens anti-tumour activity of the mAbs. In a preclinical model, negative effects of FcγR recruitment was observed for two anti-PD-1 mAbs recognizing different epitopes on PD-1. The mechanism by which FcγR engagement reduces anti-tumour activity is different for the two mAbs. For one mAb, engagement of high affinity activating FcγRI results in the elimination of intratumoural $CD8^+$ effector cells. For the other mAb, the reduced activity relies on its binding to inhibitory FcγRIIB [103]. Anti-PD-1 mAbs (nivolumab, pembrolizumab and cemiplimab) are of the IgG4 isotype which has reduced ADCC and 'null' CDC. However, IgG4 binds to FcγRI and FcγRIIB, and these interactions can have clinical consequences. In vivo imaging studies reveal that a rat IgG2a anti-PD-1 mAb (that is used to mimic the biological property of human IgG4) can be captured from $PD\text{-}1^+$ T-cell surfaces by $PD\text{-}1^-$ tumour-associated macrophages. This transfer limits anti-tumour efficacy of the therapeutic mAb [104]. More recently, hyperprogression observed in cancer patients treated with anti-PD-1 mAbs has been linked to the interactions of the mAbs with $Fc\gamma R^+$ M2 macrophages [105]. A possible role of inhibitory FcγRIIB is suggested by the authors of this work.

These different observations outline deleterious effects of mAbs on anti-tumour immunity, and should be carefully considered for the design of therapeutic strategies in cancer patients.

9.4 Concluding Remarks

Besides the direct impact on tumour growth, mAbs therapies can have remarkable effects on the network of cells within the TME, including (i) induction of long-term anti-tumour adaptive immunity by APC-mediated uptake and presentation of tumour antigens released upon cell death, (ii) durable modulation of the range of immune cells reactive against the tumour and (iii) overall reshaping of the myeloid and lymphoid compartments within the TME (Fig. 9.1a). Bystander effects of therapeutic mAbs can also occur, leading to deleterious inflammation and/or decreased anti-tumour immune responses (Fig. 9.1b). In this case, the underlying mechanisms should be carefully considered to overcome these negative effects with concomitant treatment to reduce inflammatory symptoms or by blocking additional inhibitory pathways.

Immunotherapies in patients with solid tumours include mAbs targeting tumour cells, the tumour vasculature and/or immune cells within the TME. Multiple immune evasion mechanisms can be used by tumours; immunosuppression or exhaustion in the TME, biological or physical barriers around the tumour that inhibit or prevent immune cell infiltration and poor antigen presentation due to a lack of antigens or of antigen-presenting cells. Thus, combinations of antibodies against different targets within the TME can circumvent the current limitations of single antibody therapies. Numerous mAb combinations are under investigation in clinical trials (i.e. antibodies against either different epitopes of the same molecule or different targets on the same tumour cell; anti-angiogenic antibodies combined with tumour-targeting or immunomodulatory mAbs; combinations of antibodies targeting different ICP molecules; anti-ICP mAbs combined with mAbs directed against cytokines, etc.) [106]. Bispecific or multispecific antibodies that simultaneously target tumour cells and immune effector cells are also being currently developed

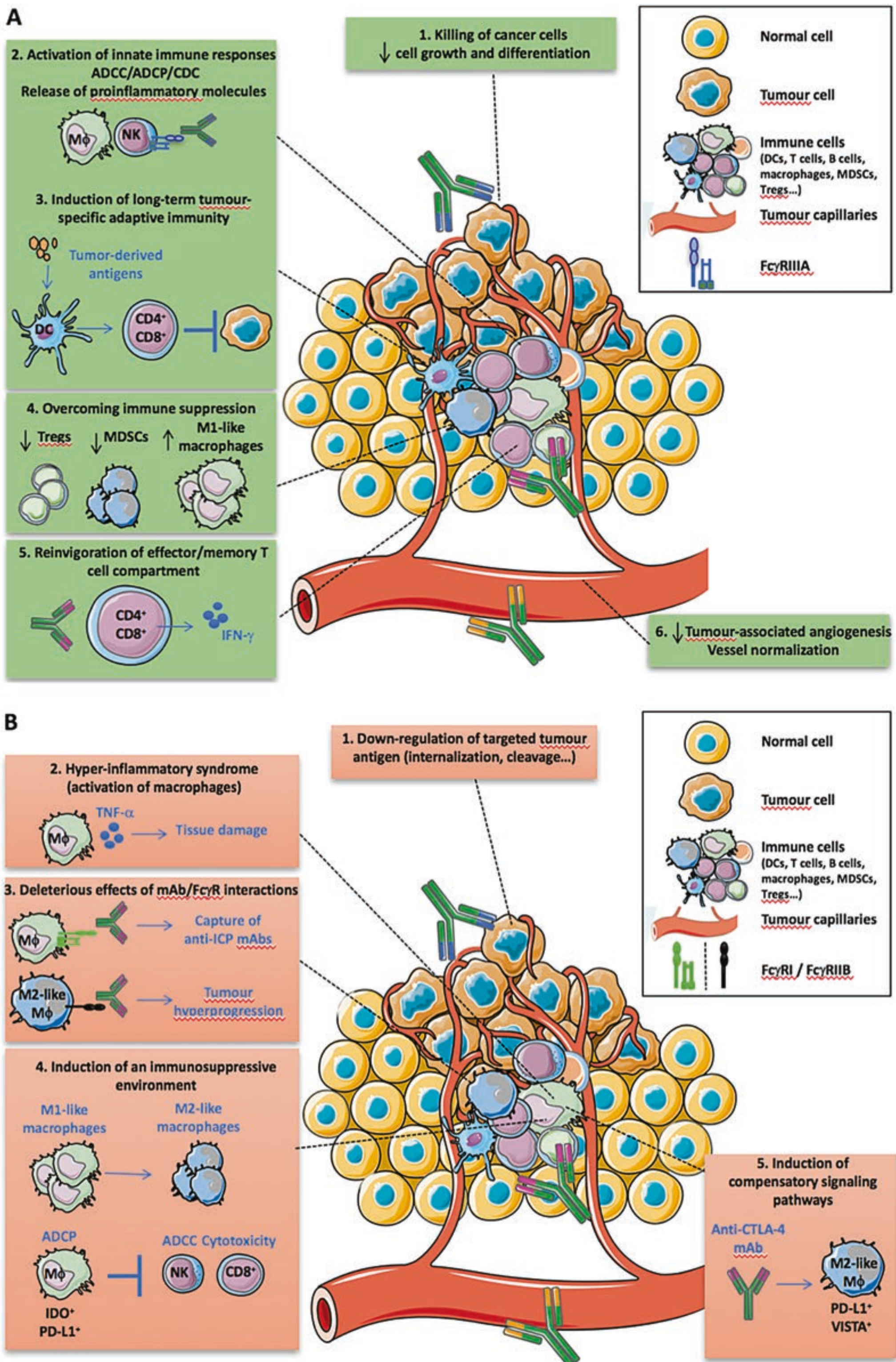


Fig. 9.1 Multifaceted effects of monoclonal antibodies on the tumour microenvironment and on anti-tumour immunity. Different categories of monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) have been developed for cancer therapy. A first category is directed against tumour cells themselves (in blue), a second one comprises antibodies blocking the formation of neo-vasculature that accompanies tumour development (in yellow) and a third category of immunomodulatory antibodies target immune cells in the tumour microenvironment rather than cancer cells (in pink).

for clinical use in patients with solid tumours [106]. These different combinations would exert wider therapeutic effects than a single therapeutic agent. Finally, the categorization of tumours according to the molecular and cellular composition of the TME would help to identify which tumour types are most likely to respond to different types of immunotherapies and to choose the appropriate combination of immunotherapies for each cancer.

References

1. Old LJ, Boyse EA, Stockert E (1964) Typing of mouse leukemias by serological methods. Nature 201:777–7779
2. Boyse EA, Old LJ, Luell S (1964) Genetic determination of the TL (thymus-leukemia) antigen in the mouse. Nature 201:779
3. Schechter AL, Stern DF, Vaidyanathan L et al (1984) The neu oncogene: an erb-B-related gene encoding a 185,000-Mr tumour antigen. Nature 312:513–516
4. Slamon DJ, Clark GM, Wong SG et al (1987) Human breast cancer: correlation of relapse and survival with amplification of the HER-2/neu oncogene. Science 235:177–182
5. Siddiqui J, Abe M, Hayes D et al (1988) Isolation and sequencing of a cDNA coding for the human DF3 breast carcinoma-associated antigen. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 85:2320–2323
6. Thompson J, Zimmermann W (1988) The carcinoembryonic antigen gene family: structure, expression and evolution. Tumour Biol 9:63–83
7. Gendler SJ, Lancaster CA, Taylor-Papadimitriou J et al (1990) Molecular cloning and expression of human tumour-associated polymorphic epithelial mucin. J Biol Chem 265:15286–15293
8. Ide AG, Baker NH, Warren SL (1939) Vascularization of the Brown-Pearce rabbit epithelioma transplant as seen in the transparent ear chamber. Am J Roentgenol 42:891–899
9. Algire GH, Chalkley HW, Earle WE et al (1950) Vascular reactions of normal and malignant tissues in vivo. III. Vascular reactions' of mice to fibroblasts treated in vitro with methylcholanthrene. J Natl Cancer Inst 11:555–580
10. Folkman J (1971) Tumour angiogenesis: therapeutic implications. N Engl J Med 285:1182–1186

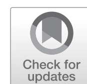
Fig. 9.1 (continued) These antibodies may have beneficial (**a**) or detrimental (**b**) effects on the tumour microenvironment and on anti-tumour immunity. (**a**) 1: Anti-tumour mAbs can block cancer cell activation and/or proliferation or directly induce apoptosis of tumour cells. 2: Besides these direct effects, mAbs recruit C1q molecule (belonging to the complement system) and innate cells expressing receptors for the Fc region of IgG (FcγR), such as NK cells and macrophages (Mϕ), leading to cell lysis and to the formation of tumour cell debris through complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) and antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), respectively. 3: Immature DCs then capture the resulting tumour-derived antigens, leading to the priming of self-reactive tumour-specific $CD4^+$ and $CD8^+$ T cells that can act back against tumour cells and eventually circumvent the pro-tumour immunosuppression. 4: MAbs can also have remarkable effects on the network of cells within the TME, including modulation of the frequencies of immunosuppressive cells – such as regulatory T cells (Tregs) or myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs) – or of anti-tumoural M1-like macrophages. 5: MAbs directed against immune checkpoint (e.g. anti-PD-1, or anti-CTLA-4 mAbs) can restore anti-tumour activity in dysfunctional infiltrating immune cells and induce a shift towards a more activated T-cell compartment that expresses high levels of IFN-γ. 6: Antibodies targeting the VEGF pathway induce a reduction and a normalization of tumour-associated blood vessels (**b**) Different bystander effects of therapeutic mAbs can also occur, leading to deleterious inflammation and/or decreased anti-tumour immune responses. 1: MAbs binding to tumour cells, could be followed by the down-regulation of targeted antigen. Interactions between mAbs and intratumoural macrophages can lead to deleterious effects including 2: hyper-inflammatory syndrome associated with tissue damages (e.g. for anti-CD40 mAbs); 3: decreased therapeutic activity of antibodies directed against immune checkpoint (anti-ICP mAbs) by FcγR-dependent capture of mAbs; or tumour hyperprogression following interactions between pro-tumoral M2-like macrophages expressing FcγR and anti-ICP mAbs. 4: By promoting the differentiation of intratumoural macrophages into pro-tumoural M2-like macrophages or by activating them, anti-EGFR or anti-VEGF mAbs can induce an immunosuppressive microenvironment. Furthermore, macrophages that undergo ADCP upon anti-CD20 and anti-Her2/Neu mAbs treatment can subsequently inhibit NK cell-mediated ADCC and T-cell-mediated cytotoxicity. These macrophages exhibit an immunosuppressive phenotype with overexpression of inhibitory molecules PD-L1 and indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase (IDO). 5: MAbs blocking immunoregulatory molecules can induce inhibitory compensatory signalling pathways, as reported for anti-CTLA-4 mAb inducing an increased frequency of M2-like macrophages expressing PD-L1 and VISTA inhibitory ICP. (This figure was created using Servier Medical Art templates, which are licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported License; https://smart.servier.com)

11. Ferrara N, Hillan KJ, Gerber HP et al (2004) Discovery and development of bevacizumab, an anti-VEGF antibody for treating cancer. Nat Rev Drug Discov 3:391–400
12. de Aguiar RB, de Moraes JZ (2019) Exploring the immunological mechanisms underlying the anti-vascular endothelial growth factor activity in tumours. Front Immunol 10:1023. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.01023
13. Fridman WH, Zitvogel L, Sautès-Fridman C et al (2017) The immune contexture in cancer prognosis and treatment. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 14:717–734. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrclinonc.2017.101
14. Giraldo NA, Sanchez-Salas R, Peske JD et al (2019) The clinical role of the TME in solid cancer. Br J Cancer 120:45–53. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41416-018-0327-z
15. Burnet M (1957) Cancer; a biological approach. I. The processes of control. Br Med J 1:779–786
16. Prehn RT, Main JM (1957) Immunity to methylcholanthrene-induced sarcomas. J Natl Cancer Inst 18:769–778
17. Traversari C, van der Bruggen P, Luescher IF et al (1992) A nonapeptide encoded by human gene MAGE-1 is recognized on HLA-A1 by cytolytic T lymphocytes directed against tumour antigen MZ2-E. J Exp Med 176:1453–1457
18. Dunn GP, Bruce AT, Ikeda H et al (2002) Cancer immunoediting: from immunosurveillance to tumour escape. Nat Immunol 3:991–998
19. Fridman WH, Dieu-Nosjean MC, Pagès F et al (2013) The immune microenvironment of human tumours: general significance and clinical impact. Cancer Microenviron 6:117–122. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12307-012-0124-9
20. Dieu-Nosjean MC, Giraldo NA, Kaplon H et al (2016) Tertiary lymphoid structures, drivers of the anti-tumour responses in human cancers. Immunol Rev 271:260–275. https://doi.org/10.1111/imr.12405
21. Mellman I, Coukos G, Dranoff G (2011) Cancer immunotherapy comes of age. Nature 480:480–489. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10673
22. Kwon ED, Hurwitz AA, Foster BA et al (1997) Manipulation of T cell costimulatory and inhibitory signals for immunotherapy of prostate cancer. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:8099–8103
23. Iwai Y, Ishida M, Tanaka Y et al (2002) Involvement of PD-L1 on tumour cells in the escape from host immune system and tumour immunotherapy by PD-L1 blockade. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:12293–12297
24. Ross JS, Torres-Mora J, Wagle N et al (2010) Biomarker-based prediction of response to therapy for colorectal cancer: current perspective. Am J Clin Pathol 134:478–490. https://doi.org/10.1309/AJCP2Y8KTDPOAORH
25. Yang J, Yan J, Liu B (2018) Targeting VEGF/VEGFR to modulate antitumour immunity. Front Immunol 9:978. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2018.00978
26. Dahal LN, Roghanian A, Beers SA et al (2015) FcγR requirements leading to successful immunotherapy. Immunol Rev 268:104–122. https://doi.org/10.1111/imr.12342
27. Manches O, Lui G, Chaperot L et al (2003) In vitro mechanisms of action of rituximab on primary non-Hodgkin lymphomas. Blood 101:949–954
28. Shi Y, Fan X, Deng H et al (2015) Trastuzumab triggers phagocytic killing of high HER2 cancer cells in vitro and in vivo by interaction with Fcγ receptors on macrophages. J Immunol 194:4379–4386. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1402891
29. Kang TH, Lee CH, Delidakis G et al (2019) An engineered human fc variant with exquisite selectivity for FcγRIIIaV158 reveals that ligation of FcγRIIIa mediates potent antibody dependent cellular phagocytosis with GM-CSF-differentiated macrophages. Front Immunol 10:562. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00562
30. Triulzi T, Regondi V, De Cecco L et al (2018) Early immune modulation by single-agent trastuzumab as a marker of trastuzumab benefit. Br J Cancer 119:1487–1494. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41416-018-0318-0
31. Honkanen TJ, Tikkanen A, Karihtala P et al (2019) Prognostic and predictive role of tumour-associated macrophages in HER2 positive breast cancer. Sci Rep 9:10961. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41598-019-47375-2
32. Uchida J, Hamaguchi Y, Oliver JA et al (2004) The innate mononuclear phagocyte network depletes B lymphocytes through Fc receptor-dependent mechanisms during anti-CD20 antibody immunotherapy. J Exp Med 199:1659–1669
33. Cartron G, Dacheux L, Salles G et al (2002) Therapeutic activity of humanized anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody and polymorphism in IgG Fc receptor FcgammaRIIIa gene. Blood 99:754–758
34. Weng WK, Levy R (2003) Two immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms independently predict response to rituximab in patients with follicular lymphoma. J Clin Oncol 21:3940–3947
35. Musolino A, Naldi N, Bortesi B et al (2008) Immunoglobulin G fragment C receptor polymorphisms and clinical efficacy of trastuzumab-based therapy in patients with HER-2/neu-positive metastatic breast cancer. J Clin Oncol 26:1789–1796. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2007.14.8957
36. Tamura K, Shimizu C, Hojo T et al (2011) FcγR2A and 3A polymorphisms predict clinical outcome of trastuzumab in both neoad-juvant and metastatic settings in patients with HER2-positive breast cancer. Ann Oncol 22:1302–1307. https://doi.org/10.1093/annonc/mdq585
37. Zhang W, Gordon M, Schultheis AM et al (2007) FCGR2A and FCGR3A polymorphisms associated with clinical outcome of epidermal growth factor receptor expressing metastatic colorectal cancer

patients treated with single-agent cetuximab. J Clin Oncol 25:3712–3718
38. Bibeau F, Lopez-Crapez E, Di Fiore F et al (2009) Impact of Fc{gamma}RIIa-Fc{gamma}RIIIa polymorphisms and KRAS mutations on the clinical outcome of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab plus irinotecan. J Clin Oncol 27:1122–1129. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2008.18.0463
39. Hurvitz SA, Betting DJ, Stern HM et al (2012) Analysis of Fcγ receptor IIIa and IIa polymorphisms: lack of correlation with outcome in trastuzumab-treated breast cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 18:3478–3486. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2294
40. Chen X, Song X, Li K et al (2019) FcγR-binding is an important functional attribute for immune checkpoint antibodies in cancer immunotherapy. Front Immunol 10:292. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2019.00292
41. Simpson TR, Li F, Montalvo-Ortiz W et al (2013) Fc-dependent depletion of tumour-infiltrating regulatory T cells co-defines the efficacy of anti-CTLA-4 therapy against melanoma. J Exp Med 210:1695–1710. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20130579
42. Bulliard Y, Jolicoeur R, Windman M et al (2013) Activating Fc γ receptors contribute to the antitumour activities of immunoregulatory receptor-targeting antibodies. J Exp Med 210:1685–1693. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20130573
43. Bulliard Y, Jolicoeur R, Zhang J et al (2014) OX40 engagement depletes intratumoural Tregs via activating FcγRs, leading to antitumour efficacy. Immunol Cell Biol 92:475–480. https://doi.org/10.1038/icb.2014.26
44. Selby MJ, Engelhardt JJ, Quigley M et al (2013) Anti-CTLA-4 antibodies of IgG2a isotype enhance antitumour activity through reduction of intratumoural regulatory T cells. Cancer Immunol Res 1:32–42. https://doi.org/10.1158/2326-6066.CIR-13-0013
45. Romano E, Kusio-Kobialka M, Foukas PG et al (2015) Ipilimumab-dependent cell-mediated cytotoxicity of regulatory T cells ex vivo by nonclassical monocytes in melanoma patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112:6140–6145. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1417320112
46. Waight JD, Chand D, Dietrich S et al (2018) Selective FcγR co-engagement on APCs modulates the activity of therapeutic antibodies targeting T cell antigens. Cancer Cell 33:1033–1047.e5. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccell.2018.05.005
47. Deligne C, Siberil S, Teillaud JL (2014) The vaccinal effect of monoclonal antibodies in cancer therapy. In: Rees RC (ed) Tumour immunology and immunotherapy. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp 357–371
48. Noujaim AA, Schultes BC, Baum RP et al (2001) Induction of CA125-specific B and T cell responses in patients injected with MAb-B43.13 – evidence for antibody-mediated antigen-processing and presentation of CA125 in vivo. Cancer Biother Radiopharm 16:187–203
49. de Bono JS, Rha SY, Stephenson J et al (2004) Phase I trial of a murine antibody to MUC1 in patients with metastatic cancer: evidence for the activation of humoral and cellular antitumour immunity. Ann Oncol 15:1825–1833
50. Taylor C, Hershman D, Shah N et al (2007) Augmented HER-2 specific immunity during treatment with trastuzumab and chemotherapy. Clin Cancer Res 13:5133–5143
51. Knutson KL, Clynes R, Shreeder B et al (2016) Improved survival of HER2+ breast cancer patients treated with trastuzumab and chemotherapy is associated with host antibody immunity against the HER2 intracellular domain. Cancer Res 76:3702–3710. https://doi.org/10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-15-3091
52. Srivastava RM, Lee SC, Andrade Filho PA et al (2013) Cetuximab-activated natural killer and dendritic cells collaborate to trigger tumour antigen-specific T-cell immunity in head and neck cancer patients. Clin Cancer Res 19:1858–1872. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2426
53. Abès R, Gélizé E, Fridman WH et al (2010) Long-lasting antitumour protection by anti-CD20 antibody through cellular immune response. Blood 116:926–934. https://doi.org/10.1182/blood-2009-10-248609
54. Deligne C, Metidji A, Fridman WH et al (2015) Anti-CD20 therapy induces a memory Th1 response through the IFN-γ/IL-12 axis and prevents protumour regulatory T-cell expansion in mice. Leukemia 29:947–957. https://doi.org/10.1038/leu.2014.275
55. DiLillo DJ, Ravetch JV (2015) Differential Fc-receptor engagement drives an anti-tumour vaccinal effect. Cell 161:1035–1045. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2015.04.016
56. Ren Z, Guo J, Liao J et al (2017) CTLA-4 limits anti-CD20-mediated tumour regression. Clin Cancer Res 23:193–203. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-16-0040
57. Park S, Jiang Z, Mortenson ED et al (2010) The therapeutic effect of anti-HER2/neu antibody depends on both innate and adaptive immunity. Cancer Cell 18:160–170. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccr.2010.06.014
58. Mortenson ED, Park S, Jiang Z et al (2013) Effective anti-neu-initiated antitumour responses require the complex role of CD4+ T cells. Clin Cancer Res 19:1476–1486. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2522
59. Stagg J, Sharkey J, Pommey S et al (2008) Antibodies targeted to TRAIL receptor-2 and ErbB-2 synergize in vivo and induce an antitumour immune response. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 105:16254–16259. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0806849105
60. Stagg J, Loi S, Divisekera U et al (2011) Anti-ErbB-2 mAb therapy requires type I and II interferons and synergizes with anti-PD-1 or anti-CD137

mAb therapy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:7142–7147. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1016569108
61. Yang X, Zhang X, Mortenson ED et al (2013) Cetuximab-mediated tumour regression depends on innate and adaptive immune responses. Mol Ther 21:91–100. https://doi.org/10.1038/mt.2012.184
62. Dhodapkar KM, Krasovsky J, Williamson B et al (2002) Antitumour monoclonal antibodies enhance cross-presentation of cellular antigens and the generation of myeloma-specific killer T cells by dendritic cells. J Exp Med 195:125–133
63. Moeller I, Spagnoli GC, Finke J et al (2012) Uptake routes of tumour-antigen MAGE-A3 by dendritic cells determine priming of naïve T-cell subtypes. Cancer Immunol Immunother 61:2079–2090. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-012-1272-y
64. Selenko N, Maidic O, Draxier S et al (2001) CD20 antibody (C2B8)-induced apoptosis of lymphoma cells promotes phagocytosis by dendritic cells and cross-priming of CD8+ cytotoxic T cells. Leukemia 15:1619–1626
65. Banerjee D, Matthews P, Matayeva E et al (2008) Enhanced T-cell responses to glioma cells coated with the anti-EGF receptor antibody and targeted to activating FcgammaRs on human dendritic cells. J Immunother 31:113–120. https://doi.org/10.1097/CJI.0b013e31815a5892
66. Lee SC, Srivastava RM, López-Albaitero A et al (2011) Natural killer (NK): dendritic cell (DC) cross talk induced by therapeutic monoclonal antibody triggers tumour antigen-specific T cell immunity. Immunol Res 50:248–254. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12026-011-8231-0
67. Jaime-Ramirez AC, Mundy-Bosse BL, Kondadasula S et al (2011) IL-12 enhances the antitumour actions of trastuzumab via NK cell IFN-γ production. J Immunol 186:3401–3409. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1000328
68. Barrio MM, Abes R, Colombo M et al (2012) Human macrophages and dendritic cells can equally present MART-1 antigen to CD8(+) T cells after phagocytosis of gamma-irradiated melanoma cells. PLoS One 7:e40311. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0040311
69. Velthuis JH, Unger WW, Abreu JR et al (2010) Simultaneous detection of circulating autoreactive CD8+ T-cells specific for different islet cell-associated epitopes using combinatorial MHC multimers. Diabetes 59:1721–1730
70. Delluc S, Ravot G, Maillere B (2010) Quantification of the preexisting CD4 T-cell repertoire specific for human erythropoietin reveals its immunogenicity potential. Blood 116:4542–4545
71. Yu W, Jiang N, Ebert PJ et al (2015) Clonal deletion prunes but does not eliminate self-specific αβ CD8(+) T lymphocytes. Immunity 42:929–941
72. Chevaleyre C, Benhamouda N, Favry E et al (2015) The tumour antigen cyclin B1 hosts multiple CD4 T cell epitopes differently recognized by pre-existing naive and memory cells in both healthy and cancer donors. J Immunol 195:1891–1901
73. Milcent B, Josseaume N, Riller Q et al (2019) Presence of T cells directed against CD20-derived peptides in healthy individuals and lymphoma patients. Cancer Immunol Immunother 68:1561–1572. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-019-02389-7
74. Korman AJ, Peggs KS, Allison JP (2006) Checkpoint blockade in cancer immunotherapy. Adv Immunol 90:297–339
75. Khalil DN, Smith EL, Brentjens RJ et al (2016) The future of cancer treatment: immunomodulation, CARs and combination immunotherapy. Nat Rev Clin Oncol 13:273–290. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrclinonc.2016.25
76. Seidel JA, Otsuka A, Kabashima K (2018) Anti-PD-1 and anti-CTLA-4 therapies in cancer: mechanisms of action, efficacy, and limitations. Front Oncol 8:86. https://doi.org/10.3389/fonc.2018.00086
77. Riaz N, Havel JJ, Makarov V et al (2017) Tumour and microenvironment evolution during immunotherapy with nivolumab. Cell 171:934–949.e16. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.09.028
78. Chen PL, Roh W, Reuben A et al (2016) Analysis of immune signatures in longitudinal tumour samples yields insight into biomarkers of response and mechanisms of resistance to immune checkpoint blockade. Cancer Discov 6:827–837. https://doi.org/10.1158/2159-8290.CD-15-1545
79. Ji RR, Chasalow SD, Wang L et al (2012) An immune-active tumour microenvironment favors clinical response to ipilimumab. Cancer Immunol Immunother 61:1019–1031. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00262-011-1172-6
80. Gubin MM, Esaulova E, Ward JP et al (2018) High-dimensional analysis delineates myeloid and lymphoid compartment remodeling during successful immune-checkpoint cancer therapy. Cell 175:1014–1030.e19. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2018.09.030
81. Wei SC, Levine JH, Cogdill AP et al (2017) Distinct cellular mechanisms underlie anti-CTLA-4 and anti-PD-1 checkpoint blockade. Cell 170:1120–1133.e17. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.07.024
82. Fehlings M, Simoni Y, Penny HL et al (2017) Checkpoint blockade immunotherapy reshapes the high-dimensional phenotypic heterogeneity of murine intratumoural neoantigen-specific CD8+ T cells. Nat Commun 8:562. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41467-017-00627-z
83. van Rooij N, van Buuren MM, Philips D et al (2013) Tumour exome analysis reveals neoantigen-specific T-cell reactivity in an ipilimumab-responsive melanoma. J Clin Oncol 31:e439–e442. https://doi.org/10.1200/JCO.2012.47.7521
84. Rizvi NA, Hellmann MD, Snyder A et al (2015) Mutational landscape determines sensitivity to PD-1 blockade in non-small cell lung cancer. Science 348:124–128. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.aaa1348

85. Kvistborg P, Philips D, Kelderman S et al (2014) Anti-CTLA-4 therapy broadens the melanoma-reactive CD8+ T cell response. Sci Transl Med 6:254ra128. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.3008918
86. Ghoneim HE, Fan Y, Moustaki A et al (2017) De novo epigenetic programs inhibit PD-1 blockade-mediated T cell rejuvenation. Cell 170:142–157.e19. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2017.06.007
87. Pauken KE, Sammons MA, Odorizzi PM et al (2016) Epigenetic stability of exhausted T cells limits durability of reinvigoration by PD-1 blockade. Science 354:1160–1165
88. Philip M, Fairchild L, Sun L et al (2017) Chromatin states define tumour-specific T cell dysfunction and reprogramming. Nature 545:452–456. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature22367
89. Scott-Browne JP, López-Moyado IF, Trifari S et al (2016) Dynamic changes in chromatin accessibility occur in CD8+ T cells responding to viral infection. Immunity 45:1327–1340. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2016.10.028
90. Sen DR, Kaminski J, Barnitz RA et al (2016) The epigenetic landscape of T cell exhaustion. Science 354:1165–1169
91. Kurtulus S, Madi A, Escobar G et al (2019) Checkpoint blockade immunotherapy induces dynamic changes in PD-1-CD8+ tumour-infiltrating T cells. Immunity 50:181–194.e6. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.immuni.2018.11.014
92. Beatty GL, Chiorean EG, Fishman MP et al (2011) CD40 agonists alter tumour stroma and show efficacy against pancreatic carcinoma in mice and humans. Science 331:1612–1616. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1198443
93. Bouchlaka MN, Sckisel GD, Chen M et al (2013) Aging predisposes to acute inflammatory induced pathology after tumour immunotherapy. J Exp Med 210:2223–2237. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20131219
94. Mirsoian A, Bouchlaka MN, Sckisel GD et al (2014) Adiposity induces lethal cytokine storm after systemic administration of stimulatory immunotherapy regimens in aged mice. J Exp Med 211:2373–2383. https://doi.org/10.1084/jem.20140116
95. Tol J, Koopman M, Cats A et al (2009) Chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer. N Engl J Med 360:563–572. https://doi.org/10.1056/NEJMoa0808268
96. Pander J, Heusinkveld M, van der Straaten T et al (2011) Activation of tumour-promoting type 2 macrophages by EGFR-targeting antibody cetuximab. Clin Cancer Res 17:5668–5673. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-0239
97. Castro BA, Flanigan P, Jahangiri A et al (2017) Macrophage migration inhibitory factor downregulation: a novel mechanism of resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy. Oncogene 36:3749–3759. https://doi.org/10.1038/onc.2017.1
98. Choi S, Kim HR, Leng L et al (2012) Role of macrophage migration inhibitory factor in the regulatory T cell response of tumour-bearing mice. J Immunol 189:3905–3913. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1102152
99. Balogh KN, Templeton DJ, Cross JV (2018) Macrophage Migration Inhibitory Factor protects cancer cells from immunogenic cell death and impairs anti-tumour immune responses. PLoS One 13:e0197702. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0197702
100. Simpson KD, Templeton DJ, Cross JV (2012) Macrophage migration inhibitory factor promotes tumour growth and metastasis by inducing myeloid-derived suppressor cells in the tumour microenvironment. J Immunol 189:5533–5540. https://doi.org/10.4049/jimmunol.1201161
101. Gao J, Ward JF, Pettaway CA et al (2017) VISTA is an inhibitory immune checkpoint that is increased after ipilimumab therapy in patients with prostate cancer. Nat Med 23:551–555. https://doi.org/10.1038/nm.4308
102. Su S, Zhao J, Xing Y et al (2018) Immune checkpoint inhibition overcomes ADCP-induced immunosuppression by macrophages. Cell 175:442–457.e23. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2018.09.007
103. Dahan R, Sega E, Engelhardt J et al (2015) FcγRs modulate the anti-tumour activity of antibodies targeting the PD-1/PD-L1 axis. Cancer Cell 28:285–295. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ccell.2015.08.004
104. Arlauckas SP, Garris CS, Kohler RH et al (2017) In vivo imaging reveals a tumour-associated macrophage-mediated resistance pathway in anti-PD-1 therapy. Sci Transl Med 9(389):pii: eaal3604. https://doi.org/10.1126/scitranslmed.aal3604
105. Lo Russo G, Moro M, Sommariva M et al (2019) Antibody-Fc/FcR interaction on macrophages as a mechanism for hyperprogressive disease in non-small cell lung cancer subsequent to PD-1/PD-L1 blockade. Clin Cancer Res 25:989–999. https://doi.org/10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-18-1390
106. Corraliza-Gorjón I, Somovilla-Crespo B, Santamaria S et al (2017) New strategies using antibody combinations to increase cancer treatment effectiveness. Front Immunol 8:1804. https://doi.org/10.3389/fimmu.2017.01804



10 Tumor Microenvironment and Nitric Oxide: Concepts and Mechanisms

Anastasia Vedenko, Kush Panara, Gabriella Goldstein, Ranjith Ramasamy, and Himanshu Arora

Abstract

The cancer tissue exists not as a single entity, but as a combination of different cellular phenotypes which, taken together, dramatically contribute to the entirety of their ecosystem, collectively termed as the tumor microenvironment (TME). The TME is composed of both immune and nonimmune cell types, stromal components, and vasculature—all of which cooperate to promote cancer progression. Not all immune cells, however, are immune-suppressive; some of them can promote the immune microenvironment to fight the invading and uncontrollably dividing cell populations at the initial stages of tumor growth. Yet, many of these processes and cellular phenotypes fall short, and the immune ecosystem more often than not ends up stabilizing in favor of the "resistant" resident cells that begin clonal expansion and may progress to metastatic forms. Stromal components, making up the extracellular matrix and basement membrane, are also not the most innocuous: CAFs embedded throughout secrete proteases that allow the onset of one of the most invasive processes—angiogenesis—through destruction of the ECM and the basement membrane. Vasculature formation, because of angiogenesis, is the largest invader of the TME and the reason metastasis happens. Vasculature is so sporadic and omnipresent in the TME that most drug therapies are mainly focused on stopping this uncontrollable process. As the tumor continues to grow, different processes are constantly supplying it with the ingredients favorable for tumor progression and eventual metastasis. For example, angiogenesis promotes blood vessel formation that will allow the bona fide escape

A. Vedenko
Department of Urology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: axv492@miami.edu

K. Panara
The Interdisciplinary Stem Cell Institute, University of Miami, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: kpanara@med.miami.edu

G. Goldstein
College of Health Professions and Sciences, University of Central Florida, Orlando, FL, USA

R. Ramasamy
Department of Urology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: Ramasamy@miami.edu

H. Arora (✉)
Department of Urology, Miller School of Medicine, University of Miami, Miami, FL, USA

The Interdisciplinary Stem Cell Institute, University of Miami, Miller School of Medicine, Miami, FL, USA
e-mail: hxa287@miami.edu; hxa287@med.miami.edu

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020
A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277,
https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9_10

of tumor cells to take place. Another process like hypoxia will present itself in several forms throughout the tumor (mild or acute, cycling or permanent), starting mechanisms such as epithelial to mesenchymal transitions (EMT) of resident cells and inadvertently placing the cells in such a stressful condition that production of ROS and DNA damage is unavoidable. DNA damage can induce mutagenicity while allowing resistant cells to survive. This is where drugs and treatments can subsequently suffer in effectiveness. Finally, another molecule has just surfaced as being a very important player in the TME: nitric oxide. Often overlooked and equated with ROS and initially assigned in the category of pathogenic molecules, nitric oxide can definitely do some damage by causing metabolic reprogramming and promotion of immunosuppressive phenotypes at low concentrations. However, its actions seem to be extremely dose-dependent, and this issue has become a hot target of current treatment goals. Shockingly, nitric oxide, although omnipresent in the TME, can have a positive effect on targeting the TME broadly. Thus, while the TME is a myriad of cellular phenotypes and a combination of different tumor-promoting processes, each process is interconnected into one whole: the tumor microenvironment.

Keywords

Tumor microenvironment (TME) · Cancer · Immune surveillance · Angiogenesis · Angiogenic switch · Sprouting angiogenesis · Cancer metabolism · Hypoxia · Nitric oxide · Cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs) · Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) · Innate and adaptive immunity · Stromal cells · Immunosuppression · Immune elimination/equilibrium/escape · Immunotherapy · Treatment resistance

10.1 Tumor Microenvironment

Long gone is the idea that a tumor is simply a combination of cancer cells that are involved in uncontrolled clonal expansion; instead, there has been a shift to a more revolutionary idea that a tumor is a combination of heterogeneous populations of cells: tumor cells, immune cells and nonimmune cells, stromal components, and vasculature. Together, these create an ecosystem—a cancerous organ-like structure that exists and grows on its own [1–3]. For this reason, the development of current drug therapies has evolved from inhibiting one or many of the specific components that reside in the tumor microenvironment (TME) to the more concrete approach of targeting the tumors broadly [4]. Tumorigenesis is initiated when oncogenic activation disrupts normal gene expression patterns, thereby interrupting normal tissue homeostasis and initiating a secretion of cytokines and growth factors that recruit stromal cells and vascular components [5, 6]. These cells include cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), endothelial cells (ECs), adipocytes, pericytes, and immune cells such as macrophages, monocytes, lymphocytes, and dendritic cells (DCs) that become trapped in the extracellular matrix and are affected by its changing biophysical parameters [7–10]. Thus, the TME is not a static process of resident cell populations but a dynamic and ever-evolving ecosystem that is crucial for the initiation, progression, and metastasis of cancer. To reach significant growth and expansion and establish metastatic niches, the tumor microenvironment involves several important processes that contribute to tumor progression: angiogenesis, hypoxia, endothelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT), macrophage infiltration, and regulatory effects of secreted factors such as reactive oxygen species (ROS) or nitric oxide (NO) (Fig. 10.1) [11–13].

10.1.1 Composition of the Tumor Microenvironment

Cells in the TME are heterogeneous in origin and nature and can come from the bone marrow, blood vessels, or the stroma [14]. The cellular plasticity seen in these cells is mediated by EMT, loss of E-cadherin function, and loss of apical-basal polarity [15]. These cells provide the foundation for the TME.

Stromal Components The stroma is a network of the extracellular matrix (ECM) supported by the basement membrane, which is lined with endothelial cells [16]. The ECM scaffolding is composed of collagen, fibronectin, proteoglycans, and laminins, all of which are intricately interwoven and well organized. The interesting thing about the ECM in tumor tissues is that it has an extremely abnormal morphology—it often exhibits aberrant patterns of fibril deposition, which lead to invasion of the surrounding tissue. Furthermore, the stroma plays a critical role in angiogenesis as it is intertwined with a busy network of blood vessels. As far as cell types residing in the stroma are concerned, these include cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs), and tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs). CAFs are known to enhance angiogenesis, tumorigenesis, and metastasis, as well as promote drug resistance. Angiogenesis is usually triggered by CAFs' ability to secrete matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) and other enzymes that destroy the ECM as well as factors that upregulate expression of the vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which stimulates angiogenesis [17]. On the other hand, MSCs residing in the TME attempt to repair the injured cells by transferring mitochondria via nanotubules but can also differentiate into CAFs, which further promote angiogenesis and metastasis [18]. Thus, while MSCs mean well, in the context of the TME, these cells may actually promote cancer survival and progression. Finally, macrophages are recruited to the TME via signaling molecules and cytokines to fight the rapidly growing ecosystem; however, they can become polarized and converted to TAMs, the M2 phenotype, which actually plays a significant role in cancer progression [19]. Thus, the stroma of the TME is a supportive network that plays an important role in establishing tumor integrity, all the while promoting its subsequent growth and expansion.

Immune Surveillance The main role of the mammalian immune system is to find, tag, and eliminate a pathological invader in order to protect the organism against infectious agents and eliminate damaged cells [20]. However, unlike in normal tissue, cancerous tissue is marked by persistent immunological cell populations that not only expand but also diversify due to malignant processes such as fibrosis, angiogenesis, and neoplasia [21, 22]. Three stages of immune involvement in cancer have been proposed: elimination, equilibrium, and escape [23]. In the first stage, the immune system tags uncontrollably growing cell populations and is particularly efficient at destroying and eliminating them. However, in the equilibrium stage the immune system is not as efficient at fighting the ever-growing malignant cells, giving them sufficient time to adapt to the new immune microenvironment and differentiate into other cell types by undergoing EMT. This allows the establishment of a cancer niche that is full of immune-resistant cells, which will inadvertently develop into a solid tumor. Finally, the involvement of the immune system has been well documented at the escape stage, where it reduces anticancer proteins and other surveillance mechanisms, allowing tumor cells to escape their original niche, migrating to distant metastatic sites. In this sense, the immune system evolves from a mechanism that fights cancer invasion to a mechanism that becomes completely entrapped by the tumor ecosystem and thus promotes cancer progression.

The tumor ecosystem contains cells of both adaptive and innate immunity, both of which play a role in tumor establishment and progression, modulation of angiogenesis, and subsequent immune escape. Adaptive immune cells include T lymphocytes and B cells, while innate immune cells include dendritic cells, natural killer cells, monocytes and macrophages, neutrophils, mast

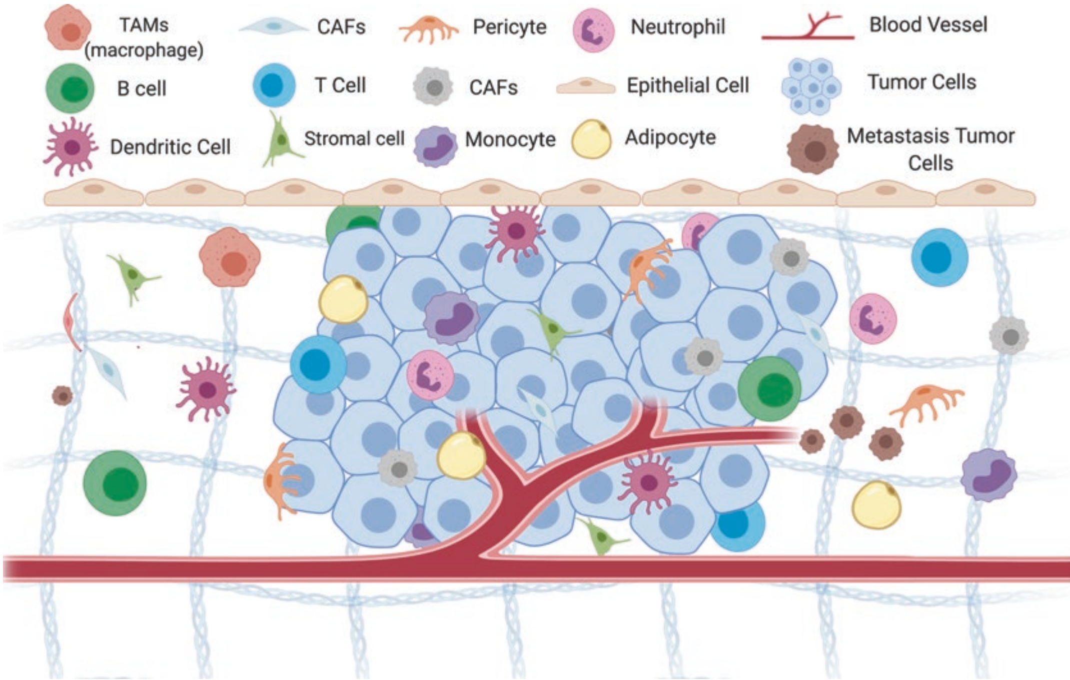


Fig. 10.1 Composition of the tumor microenvironment. TME is a combination of different cellular phenotypes, all of which dramatically contribute to the entirety of their ecosystem. The TME is composed of both immune (T and B cells, dendritic cells, monocytes, TAMs) and nonimmune cells types (CAFs, epithelial cells, etc.), stromal components, and vasculature—all of which exist in unison to allow cancer progression to take place. Not all immune cells, however, are immunosuppressive; some of them can promote the immune microenvironment to fight the invading and uncontrollably dividing cell populations at initial stages of tumor growth. However, many of these processes and cellular phenotypes fall short, and the immune ecosystem more often than not ends up stabilizing in favor of the "resistant" resident cells that begin clonal expansion and may progress to metastatic forms. Stromal components, constituting the extracellular matrix and basement membrane, contain potentially hazardous CAFs, which secrete proteases that initiate angiogenesis through destruction of the extracellular matrix (ECM) and the basement membrane. Vasculature is the biggest invader of the tumor microenvironment, and the reason metastasis occurs. The fusion of the immune and nonimmune cells, stromal components, and vasculature creates a favorable microenvironment for the progression of cancer. TAMs: tumor-associated macrophages; CAFs: cancer-associated fibroblasts

cells, and eosinophils [24]. T cells in the TME can be CD4+ (helper T cells) or CD8+ (cytotoxic T cells), which secrete IFN-gamma, TNF-alpha, and IL-17 that mediate adaptive immune responses and exhibit antitumor effects. T-cell infiltration has been shown to be associated with a positive outcome in cancer patients; however, tumors have evolved to display dominant inhibitory mechanisms that work against proliferation of T effector cells. Currently, a hot target of immunotherapy approaches are immune checkpoint blockade inhibitors, such as cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA4), programmed cell-death-1 (PD1) and its ligand, PDL1. B-cells, which can be divided into immature B cells, plasma cells, or memory cells, express different immunoglobulins on their surface for antigen recognition, and these phenotypes can vary depending on the stage of tumor as well as tumor type, such as IgM, IgD, IgA, or IgG [22]. In addition, dendritic cells (DCs) express inflammatory cytokines IL-12, IL-23, and IL-1 that promote IFN-gamma CD4+ T-cell responses [25]. Natural killer (NK) cells express HLA class-I receptors, which can recognize and eliminate malignant cells [26]. There are also immunosuppressive cell

types in the TME, which includes the T-regulatory cell population (Treg), myeloid-derived suppressor cells, and M2 macrophages [27–29].

Other Cells In addition to stromal and immune components, there are multiple other cell types residing in the TME that contribute to tumor growth. For instance, endothelial cells continue to grow and divide uncontrollably during cancer progression, which express the VEGF receptor on the cell surface, which allows them to continually stimulate angiogenesis. Platelets within the TME can be an additional source of VEGF and both pro- and antiangiogenic proteins that are usually carried in alpha-granules of platelets [30]. Pericytes are another important cell type that maintains the integrity of blood vessels, but which begin to loosen their attachment upon activation of angiogenesis via signaling molecules such as PDGF, TGF-beta, angiopoietin, and Notch [31]. Loss of pericyte attachment leads to higher permeability of blood vessels and increased metastatic spread of tumor cells.

Vasculature Just like normal tissue, malignant tissue develops a network of blood and lymphatic vessels to supply the necessary oxygen, remove waste and carbon dioxide, and provide a route for immune surveillance [32]. However, unlike in normal tissues, these vascular networks often contain leaky capillaries. During angiogenesis, the vasculature becomes even more complicated. An ever-hypoxic state of the TME initiates aberrant blood vessel formation that allows tumor cells to escape the low-oxygen setting and disseminate to distant sites, where nutrient and oxygen levels are not yet depleted. Hypoxia triggers the release of hypoxia-inducible factor 1 (HIF-1), leading to upregulation of genes such as VEGF and PDGF, which stimulate angiogenic factors [33]. Formation of new blood vessels begins with degradation of the basement membrane around the tumor and disruption of the EC monolayer, followed by tube formation and EC invasion into the surrounding tissue [34]. Pericyte recruitment then stabilizes the newly formed blood vessels, providing structural support and allowing for the necessary crosstalk between ECs that further stimulates VEGF production [35].

10.2 Angiogenesis

10.2.1 Angiogenic Switch

In the absence of new vasculature, tumor growth is restricted with a well-maintained balance between proliferation and apoptosis [36]. An angiogenic switch occurs when this homeostasis—the balance between proangiogenic and angiogenic pathways—skews in one direction over the other. This loss of angiogenic homeostasis may occur for several reasons, but evidence from many studies points to genetic and epigenetic remodeling as being the main contributors to such a switch. The angiogenic switch is correlated with both loss of tumor suppressor genes, such as p53, and upregulation of oncogenes, such as Myc, which increases production of VEGF by 10-fold [37–39]. Regardless of the reasons this happens, angiogenic switch starts a cascade of processes that make it much more likely and favorable for cancer to progress.

Hypoxia is a well-known inducer of angiogenic switch, as it forces a very rapid metabolic reprogramming, skewing this well-maintained angiogenic homeostasis [40]. In the absence of oxygen, cells go into a crisis mode, trying to get nutrients and oxygen from nearby tissues. Tumors are no exception to this—they are highly hypoxic structures with abnormal vascular networks that are constantly trying to survive. Hypoxia shifts the cellular metabolism in a way that the extracellular space becomes more acidic and glucose metabolism along with lactic acid production become upregulated, which subsequently lowers the pH in the TME [41]. Such a pH decrease is correlated with rigorous EMT, cell dissemination, and eventual metastasis [42–45]. An acidic environment is an important contributor to an increase in angiogenic factors through upregulated expression of VEGF [46]. Hypoxia triggers additional processes, ranging from mobilization of bone-marrow-derived precursor cells to

immune activation [47]. Hypoxia is also one of the main contributors to induce expression of VEGF, MMPs, and angiopoietin-like 4 (ANGPTL4)—all of which are promoters of angiogenic pathways [48, 49].

10.2.2 Mechanisms That Drive Angiogenesis

Pathological vessel proliferation is one hallmark of cancer progression [50]. In normal tissue, blood vessels appear as ordered tubular networks that facilitate the transport of gases, nutrients, and cells around the body, and are carriers of different trophic signals, all of which are necessary for normal organ homeostasis [51]. They are categorized into veins, arteries, and capillaries, and comprise a thin monolayer of epithelial cells on the luminal side, the basement membrane on the outside covered with pericyte, and vascular smooth muscle cells. Two processes are required for the maintenance of vascular networks, namely, vasculogenesis and sprouting angiogenesis, both of which are essential mechanisms for cancer progression. Vasculogenesis is the de novo formation of new blood vessels, while sprouting angiogenesis is the formation of new vessels from a pre-existing network of capillaries.

Sprouting angiogenesis is the first process in blood vessel formation, which involves an intricate interplay between the ECM, stromal cells, and soluble factors [52]. During sprouting angiogenesis, endothelial cells begin to loosen their contact with pericytes, which are the stabilizing cells surrounding blood vessels, whose function it is to maintain the vessels' integrity and quiescent state. Once endothelial cells have been destabilized, they undergo EMT, where they acquire a highly migratory and invasive personality. This process is accompanied by the basement membrane destabilization and ECM degradation, much needed for angiogenesis to proceed by allowing the formation of an immature blood vessel [53]. Vessel maturation occurs when a process known as mesenchymal to endothelial transition (the reverse of EMT) occurs, which restores endothelial cells to their quiescent state, followed by the synthesis of a new basement membrane [54]. Initiation of an angiogenic sprout is controlled by VEGF and the Notch signaling pathway [55]. The growing end of the sprout is known as the "tip cells," which respond to VEGF signaling by extending filopodia that sense their environment and recruit stromal cells for stabilization and support. Endothelial cells that are located in the stalk portion of the angiogenic sprout are known as the "stalk cells," which undergo the same process but sprout sideways, contributing to extensive branching—most often in response to VEGF-A signaling [56].

Vasculogenesis begins with the mobilization of endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs), which get recruited in response to chemokines, cytokines, and growth factors released by both tumor and stromal cells [57]. In hypoxic conditions, expression of HIF is seen to activate VEGF, PDGF, C-X-C chemokine receptor Type 4 (CXCR4), and stromal-derived factor-1 (SDF-1), which are important for EPC proliferation [57, 58]. In response to VEGF and PDGF particularly, EPC mobilization occurs through the release of matrix metalloprotease 9 (MMP9), which activates the Kit ligand, a stem-cell migratory cytokine that allows EPC mobilization to take place [59]. Besides its role in primary tumor growth, vasculogenesis has also been implicated in the dissemination of cells and eventual metastasis via soluble factors such as SDF-1, which recruit EPCs to distant sites [60]. The interaction of SDF-1 on EPCs and the CXCR4 receptor on tumor cells establishes the development of a pre-metastatic niche.

10.2.3 Metastasis Due to Angiogenesis

Unfortunately, angiogenesis is the main contributor to cancer progression from a primary tumor ecosystem to a metastatic tumor ecosystem, where cells disseminate and invade the surrounding tissue. As already discussed, VEGF is the main inducer of multiple processes that make metastasis much more likely—it upregulates pro-

tease production that degrades the basement membrane and secretes factors that weaken endothelial-tumor cell interactions, a necessary process for metastasis [61]. The pericyte lining the blood vessels also loosens their attachments to endothelial cells on the luminal side of the vessel, leading to a decrease in endothelial cell survival and creation of a leaky environment through the intercellular gaps that allow tumor cells to escape and travel to disseminated sites [62–64].

10.2.4 Blocking Vessels in the TME

Since angiogenesis is such an important part of neoplasms, modern therapies have focused on finding a suitable therapy that targets this process. There has even been marginal success in the treatment of several tumor types with such drugs as Sutent and Avastin against kidney and colorectal cancer [50, 65–67]. However, modern approaches still rely on standard chemotherapy, which seems to fall short due to its low selectivity of cancer cells and its high toxicity to normal cells [68]. While drug delivery to tumors is inefficient because of highly abnormal vasculature, as already discussed, multiple targets are being developed to inhibit or induce regression of neoplastic blood vessels [69].

Direct vessel signaling inhibition. EPC mobilization and seeding are the absolute requirement necessary to start angiogenesis, which occurs via targeting of tyrosine kinase (TK) receptors by angiogenic growth factors such as VEGF [70, 71]. Therefore, approaches that inhibit TK receptors or their ligands are being investigated as an antiangiogenic therapy approach, including antibodies, soluble factors, and small-molecule inhibitors [71–73]. Examples of TK inhibitors (TKIs) include Sorafinib, which downregulates Raf signaling along with VEGFR-2 and PDGFR-beta [71], and Sunitinib, a TKI for both VEGFR-2 and PDGFR-beta and a potent inhibitor of c-kit [72].

Vascular environment inhibition. Another approach is to inhibit the vascular environment of the TME, and since angiogenesis begins with EPC recruitment and establishment of EPC metastatic niches, this process may also target pharmacologically. For instance, as the SDF-1/CXCR4 signaling axis is the main regulator of EPC mobilization and homing, antibodies against CXCR4 might be a plausible target [60].

Vessel normalization. Another promising type of treatment is actually the opposite of the two aforementioned therapeutic approaches—a desire to stabilize vascular networks [74]. As already mentioned, in contrast to normal vasculature in nonmalignant tissue, which is efficient and follows predictable patterns, the vasculature of a tumor is in a state of extreme disarray, characterized by aberrant, disorganized, and dilated morphologies. This decreases pericyte association, elevates chances for hypoxia, increases permeability to escaping tumor cells, and lowers perfusion. One of the main issues of chemotherapeutic drugs and immune therapies is that they cannot reach the target area because of this faulty vasculature [75]. Thus, drugs have developed to stabilize the vascular networks, with the goal of improving pericyte recruitment and tightening cell-to-cell junctions in a process known as vascular normalization [76]. Such drugs include bevacizumab (Avastin) and trebananib, which have shown favorable clinical outcomes when used in combination with chemotherapy in breast and ovarian cancer patients [77–79].

10.3 Hypoxia

10.3.1 Role of Hypoxia in the TME

Hypoxia is at the forefront of cancer growth and progression [80]. Because of oncogene activation, initial cell proliferation is so aggressive that there are not enough available nutrients and oxygen in the environment to supply the cells, and so the environment becomes hypoxic as those resources quickly deplete [81]. This lack of nutrient and oxygen supply triggers a cascade of changes in the TME that increases production of angiogenic factors and revascularization events [82]. However, as already mentioned, vascular structures in the tumor environment are not perfectly ordered; instead, they are chaotic and

sporadic with constant angiogenic mechanisms triggered in response to hypoxic episodes, which lead to vascular leakiness and nonlaminar blood flow [83, 84]. Because tumors are heterogeneous structures with dynamic fluctuations in blood flow, within a single tumor ecosystem there may exist regions of both mild hypoxia and acute hypoxia; those fluctuations in blood flow can lead to cycling hypoxia, which can vary from hours to days. Two frequencies of cycling may be detected: higher-frequency cycling usually results from small alterations in red blood cell perfusion, while lower-frequency cycling results from large-scale remodeling of the vascular network and angiogenesis [85]. Short-term hypoxia activates autophagy as well as apoptotic and metabolic adaptation of cells to survive in adverse conditions [86, 87] and production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), which contributes to tumor survival and growth [88, 89]. Acute hypoxia induces metastasis and is associated with aggressive tumor phenotypes [90]. Long-term hypoxia contributes to long-term cellular and genetic changes, such as DNA breaks, higher DNA replication errors, genetic instability, and mutagenesis [91–93]. Regardless, neither chronic nor acute hypoxia is good news for a growing tumor—these sporadic events at irregular intervals usually present with adverse clinical manifestations.

10.3.2 Hypoxia in Blood Vessel Formation

Hypoxia induces overexpression of transcription factors such as HIF-1-alpha and HIF-2-alpha (Fig. 10.2), which target blood vessel formation and metastasis, and play a role in resistance to treatment [94]. Abnormal angiogenesis ensues in response to the pathological condition in which, because of rapid cell proliferation, nutrients and oxygen are used up by the rapid cell increase [95, 96]. The hypoxic state allows the production of proangiogenic factors, thus skewing the intricate balance that maintains the normal angiogenic equilibrium, resulting in rapid vessel formation. These disordered vessels lack structure, organization, and proper pericyte contacts, which make them leaky and more susceptible to metastatic spread. Thus, angiogenesis results from a cell's attempt to relieve the hypoxic state, thus inducing the formation of more blood vessels to relieve the oxygen demands, but inadvertently restarting the vicious cycle [51]. However, the cycle continues as soon as another need to improve hypoxia arises. There are some antiangiogenic drug therapies being developed that target highly malignant and invasive cancer types, including bevacizumab, an anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody approved for colorectal cancer and other solid tumor types [97].

10.3.3 Hypoxia in Metastasis

A bona fide metastatic process results from hypoxia-induced angiogenesis, where the cells end up escaping the highly hypoxic conditions via the newly formed blood vessels to relieve oxygen demands and survive [51]. However, as the result of sporadic growth, the new vasculature is so fragile, highly permeable, and heterogeneous that it permits the massive relocation and delivery of tumor cells to distant organs via circulation. Levels of tumor oxygenation and overexpression of HIF-alpha has been shown to correlate with highly metastatic and aggressive tumors and the poor overall survival of patients [98]. It may not come as a surprise, therefore, that previous hypoxic cells can also keep their ability to metastasize at a higher rate than cells only cultured in normoxic conditions, as was shown by an orthotopic mouse model, where lymph node metastasis seemed to increase due to acute hypoxia followed by normoxia [99]. Mechanistically, hypoxia seems to trigger an invasive and migratory phenotype of cells by inducing EMT [100, 101]. On the genetic regulatory level, genes responsible for maintaining an epithelial phenotype are reduced (E-cad, beta-catenin) [102], while mesenchymal-like gene expression is stimulated (N-cad, vimentin, SMA, CXCR4) [103, 104]. Though the bona fide master regulator of the physiological EMT is TGF-beta, it is increased in response to hypoxia, activating

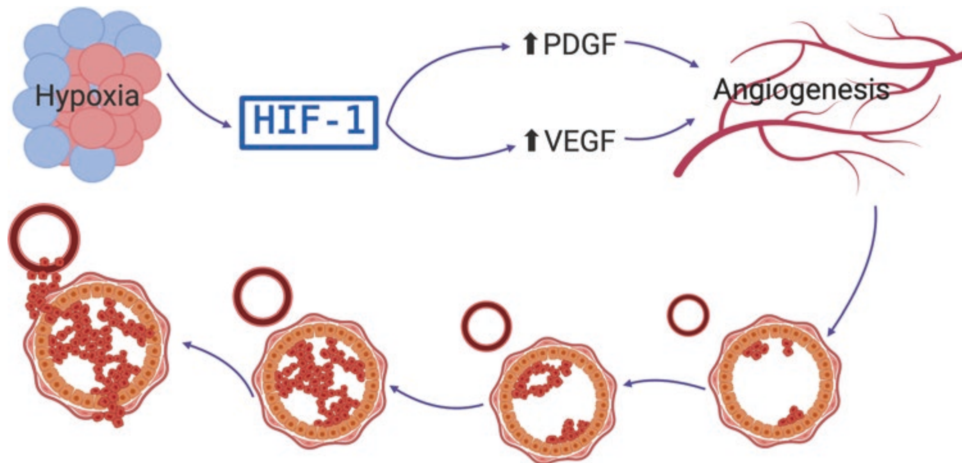


Fig. 10.2 Role of hypoxia in the TME. Hypoxia can present itself in several forms throughout the tumor—mild or acute, cycling or permanent—initiating mechanisms such as epithelial to mesenchymal transitions (EMT) of resident cells as well as inadvertently placing the cells in such a stressful condition that production of ROS and DNA damage is unavoidable. The reason DNA damage to mild forms of hypoxia (or cycling hypoxia) is so dangerous is because it can induce mutagenicity while allowing resistant cells to survive. This is where drugs and treatments can subsequently suffer in effectiveness. Hypoxia causes release of inducible factor 1 (HIF-1) that upregulates vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), and platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF) that stimulates angiogenesis. Angiogenesis degrades the basement membrane, disturbs the endothelial cell (EC) monolayer, and results in an invasion into the surrounding tissue

downstream transcription factors (TFs) such as Snail, Smad, Slug, and Twist with the inhibition of E-cadherin expression [105], thus inducing massive EMT. The development of resistance to radio- and chemotherapy has been linked to faulty EMT processes that are regulated via Snail and Slug [105]. HIF inhibition has been viewed as a major promising therapeutic approach, especially for metastatic and solid tumor types, and there has been marginal success with several drugs that have undergone phase I and II clinical trials [106, 107]. Thus, there are multiple correlations between metastasis, development of drug resistance, and hypoxia-induced EMT changes that take place in terminal cancers.

10.3.4 Hypoxia in Radiation and Drug Resistance

Resistance to treatment-induced apoptosis from radio- or chemotherapy is one of the biggest obstacles in cancer treatment [108]. Often, this occurs because residual cells that are resistant to treatment are left over and multiply, contributing to a clonal expansion of treatment-resistant cells that can quickly lead to tumor recurrence and metastasis [109]. Hypoxia can also cause resistance of cancer cells to treatment, often leading to various physiological states that allow cells to survive via a variety of mechanisms such as cell cycle arrest (quiescence), a state of reduced proliferation that protects cells from external stress, inhibition of apoptosis, senescence, autophagy, and increased mitochondrial activity [110–112]. In normoxic conditions, an abundance of oxygen supply causes oxygen to react with free radicals generated by ionizing radiation during treatment in a process known as “oxygen fixation,” which leads to irreversible DNA damage and profound cell death [113]. However, when oxygen supplies are low, there is a slow generation of free radicals that would otherwise contribute to DNA damage, allowing cells to adapt and survive. These “leftover” cell populations after treatment are dangerous because they can come back at full force. An additional disadvantage is that radio- or chemotherapy often targets the bulk of rapidly proliferating cells. Hypoxic cells are difficult to target because they are usually quiescent, low-

proliferating, have stem-cell-like properties, and live in the most hypoxic (innermost) regions [105, 112]. The least sensitive cell cycle phases to ionizing radiation are G1 and the end of S phase, while the most sensitive are G2 and M, when DNA repair mechanisms are most susceptible [114]. Since these facts about hypoxia-induced treatment resistance have surfaced, researchers have turned to attempting to block HIF-1 with inhibitors to stimulate the cells to respond to treatment in the same way that normoxic cells do. For instance, the HIF-1 inhibitor (YC-1) was tested in tumor-bearing mice and found to cause radiation-induced vessel damage, while HIF1-alpha inhibitor (PX-478) re-sensitized squamous and pancreatic cancer cells, cultured in a hypoxic environment, to radiation therapy [115, 116].

10.4 Nitric Oxide

10.4.1 Nitric Oxide in the Tumor Microenvironment

Nitric oxide (NO) is an intriguing molecule that has resurfaced in the recent decade after much debate as to its pathogenicity. NO, however, is also a known inducer of apoptosis and may play a therapeutic role in cancer rather than just a pathological one [11]. Thus, NO has a dual role as both a physiological and a pathophysiological molecule. NO is a product of a metabolic reaction that converts L-arginine to L-citrulline using nitric oxide synthase (NOS), and can exist in several forms depending on the origin of its production: neuronal NOS (nNOS), inducible NOS (iNOS), and endothelial NOS (eNOS) [12]. NO by itself is reactive and thus has been implicated to play a significant role in activating multiple signaling pathways. It is regulated by intracellular calcium concentrations (nNOS and eNOS), but it can also be brought about with no calcium present (iNOS) by the upregulation of factors such as endotoxins, inflammatory cytokines, hypoxia, and oxidative stress [12, 117]. Overexpression of different NOS isoforms has been linked to many solid tumors [13]. The most striking feature of NO is that it can exhibit a dose-dependency, so that at high concentrations it acts as the source of nitrosative and oxidative stress, causing DNA damage and mitochondrial dysfunction along with upregulating apoptosis, while at low concentrations it decreases apoptosis and promotes angiogenesis, thus displaying tumoricidal roles (Fig. 10.3) [11, 118]. However, because of its obvious antitumor effects, NO has been gaining popularity in anticancer treatments. For instance, as already discussed, resistance to chemo- and radiotherapy is a main issue in metastatic forms of cancer, but NO has been shown to sensitize cells to subsequent treatment, thus providing a combinatorial therapy approach to cancer treatment [119].

Besides promoting many of the TME essential processes (angiogenesis, metabolism, apoptosis), NO might also play an important role in reprogramming the immune component of the TME.

10.4.2 NO in Immunosuppression

NO can play the role of an immunosuppressive messenger in the TME. One of the main immune cell populations that NO targets is T-cell-mediated antihumoral responses by mediating several mechanisms. In one study, it was shown that NO-derived peroxinitrite inhibits T-cell proliferation, a mechanism which consequently induces apoptosis of T cells [120]. NO can also interfere with T-cell humoral recognition by inhibiting migration of T cells into the TME. One explanation for this interesting observation could be that high concentrations of NO in the TME induces S-nitrosylation of CCL2, a chemoattractant chemokine, which abolishes the tumor's ability to attract CD8+ T cells into the tumor core [121]. In addition, there is another population of cells regulated and attracted by CCL2—myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), which produce NO and thus further restrict T-cell migration into the tumor by downregulating E-selectin [122]. INOS was also shown to promote recruitment of T-regulatory cells (Tregs), an immunosuppressive cell type, by modulating IL-12 expression [123]. Additional studies have pointed

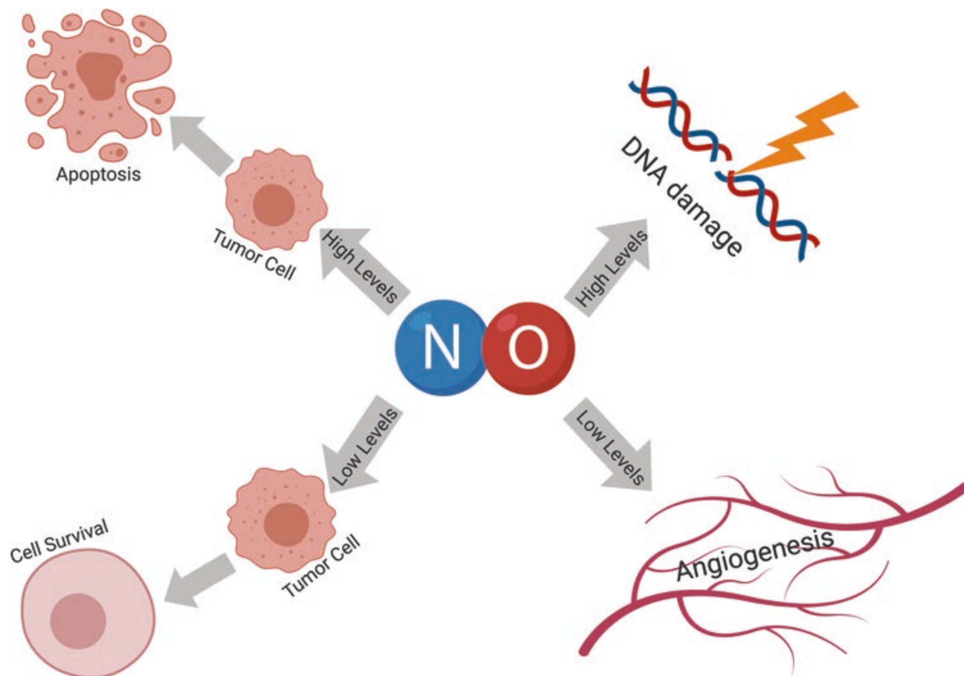


Fig. 10.3 Role of nitric oxide in the TME. Nitric oxide (NO), previously grouped with ROS in the pathogenic molecule category, was recently found to be an important molecule in the TME. Though NO has been found to induce damage by causing metabolic reprogramming and the promotion of immunosuppressive phenotypes, it has also been found to have a positive effect on targeting the TME broadly. Furthermore, it has been found to be exceptionally dose-dependent with regard to both its negative and positive effects on the TME. NO at low doses decreases apoptosis along with promoting angiogenesis, while at high doses it causes DNA damage and increases apoptosis

to other mechanisms of NO-mediated tumor immunosuppression, such as inhibiting antigen presentation from dendritic cells to CD4+ helper T cells [124] and directly impairing natural killer (NK) cell functions [125]. It may also play a role in immune-activation processes, as NO was shown to be released by activated macrophages in the TME, thus inducing their cytotoxic antitumor activity [126].

10.4.3 NO in Evasion of the Immune Response by Cancer Stem Cells

Considering all of this, there is a large body of evidence that points to NO also exerting other immunosuppressive functions on the TME by regulating the "stemness" of cancer cells. Tumors seem to be so good at evading immune system recognition because of a subset of cells in the TME termed "cancer stem cells," and this has led scientists to refer to cancer as a "stem cell disease" [127]. The "cancer stem cell model" states that there is a subpopulation of cancer stem cells (CSCs) at the initiation stages of tumor growth, which display pluripotent and renewing properties. These properties allow the initial tumor seeding events to take place and eventual propagation and metastasis, which are responsible for the bulk of failures of many conventional therapies and poor cancer survival rates [128, 129]. The effect of stem cell signaling on the TME seems to be driven by the active WNT/beta-catenin signaling pathway and a complete absence of T-cell gene expression signature in human melanoma [130]. In addition, CSCs do not exhibit tumor antigen expression and show a

defective MHC-antigen presentation pathway and downregulation of MHC class I molecules [131]. CSCs can also recruit cells that further promote immunosuppressive functions, supporting the CSC phenotype and stabilizing their niche in the TME [132].

NO metabolism contributes to the maintenance of "stemness" that is characteristic of CSCs. As was shown in glioblastoma, eNOS activates the Notch signaling pathway, which promotes the CSC phenotype [133]. CSCs also promote expression of the iNOS isoform, which cranks up the synthesis of NO [134]. The maintenance of the CSC phenotype by NO signaling is demonstrated in several cancer types, including breast [135], colorectal [136], lung [137], and liver [138] cancers. NO produced by immunosuppressor cells in the TME may contribute to the plasticity of cancer cells themselves that allows them to gain and maintain a stem cell phenotype [139].

10.4.4 Metabolic Reprogramming by NO in the TME

Tumors adapt rapidly to stress conditions by rewiring their metabolic pathways. Shockingly, most energy in the TME is generally derived from aerobic glycolysis, which is not as efficient at producing ATP but is a fast process that can generate some energy to be used immediately. Unfortunately, the downside is that aerobic glycolysis quickly builds up lactic acid in the extracellular space, lowering the pH [140]. The acidic microenvironment induces expression of VEGF that, besides increasing angiogenesis, also leads to polarization of the M2 macrophage phenotype [141]. At early stages of tumor growth, TAMs maintain a proinflammatory and antitumorigenic phenotype, the M1 state, while at later stages of metastasis and tumor progression M1 differentiates into the M2 phenotype, which displays a protumoral phenotype and contributes to immunosuppression [142]. In high-grade tumors, TAMs are mostly the M2 phenotype, which also produces NO and has endogenous mechanisms that protect tumor cells from chemotherapy [143]. Since hypoxia induces the upregulation of enzymes involved in glycolysis and the inhibition of mitochondrial function, in this sense, NO-induced hypoxia contributes to the "Warburg effect" (aerobic glycolysis metabolism observed in cancer) [144]. NO has also been shown to prevent differentiation of M1 macrophages into the M2 phenotype by abolishing mitochondrial respiration and reducing their plasticity [145].

Acknowledgments We would like to thank The UM writing center, specifically Valerie A. Gramling, for proofreading the draft. Images were created with BioRender.com.

Conflict of Interest None: See disclosures.

References

1. Zuazo-Gaztelu I, Casanovas O (2018) Unraveling the role of angiogenesis in cancer ecosystems. Front Oncol 8:248
2. Bissell MJ, Radisky D (2001) Putting tumours in context. Nat Rev Cancer 1(1):46–54
3. Radisky D, Hagios C, Bissell MJ (2001) Tumors are unique organs defined by abnormal signaling and context. Semin Cancer Biol 11(2):87–95
4. Arora H et al (2018) Alterations of tumor microenvironment by nitric oxide impedes castration-resistant prostate cancer growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 115(44):11298–11303
5. Liotta LA, Kohn EC (2001) The microenvironment of the tumour-host interface. Nature 411(6835):375–379
6. Shojaei F, Ferrara N (2008) Role of the microenvironment in tumor growth and in refractoriness/resistance to anti-angiogenic therapies. Drug Resist Updat 11(6):219–230
7. Hanahan D, Weinberg RA (2011) Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. Cell 144(5):646–674
8. Polyak K, Haviv I, Campbell IG (2009) Co-evolution of tumor cells and their microenvironment. Trends Genet 25(1):30–38
9. Polyak K, Weinberg RA (2009) Transitions between epithelial and mesenchymal states: acquisition of malignant and stem cell traits. Nat Rev Cancer 9(4):265–273
10. Quail DF, Joyce JA (2013) Microenvironmental regulation of tumor progression and metastasis. Nat Med 19(11):1423–1437

11. Heinrich TA et al (2013) Biological nitric oxide signalling: chemistry and terminology. Br J Pharmacol 169(7):1417–1429
12. Knowles RG, Moncada S (1994) Nitric oxide synthases in mammals. Biochem J 298(Pt 2):249–258
13. Aranda E et al (2012) Nitric oxide and cancer: the emerging role of S-nitrosylation. Curr Mol Med 12(1):50–67
14. Binnewies M et al (2018) Understanding the tumor immune microenvironment (TIME) for effective therapy. Nat Med 24(5):541–550
15. Chen F et al (2015) New horizons in tumor microenvironment biology: challenges and opportunities. BMC Med 13:45
16. Guo S, Deng CX (2018) Effect of stromal cells in tumor microenvironment on metastasis initiation. Int J Biol Sci 14(14):2083–2093
17. Kalluri R (2016) The biology and function of fibroblasts in cancer. Nat Rev Cancer 16(9):582–598
18. Spees JL, Lee RH, Gregory CA (2016) Mechanisms of mesenchymal stem/stromal cell function. Stem Cell Res Ther 7(1):125
19. Liguori M et al (2011) Tumor-associated macrophages as incessant builders and destroyers of the cancer stroma. Cancers (Basel) 3(4):3740–3761
20. Davis CD, Milner JA (2007) Molecular targets for nutritional preemption of cancer. Curr Cancer Drug Targets 7(5):410–415
21. Grivennikov SI, Greten FR, Karin M (2010) Immunity, inflammation, and cancer. Cell 140(6):883–899
22. Hu X et al (2019) Landscape of B cell immunity and related immune evasion in human cancers. Nat Genet 51(3):560–567
23. Dunn GP, Old LJ, Schreiber RD (2004) The three Es of cancer immunoediting. Annu Rev Immunol 22:329–360
24. Angell H, Galon J (2013) From the immune contexture to the Immunoscore: the role of prognostic and predictive immune markers in cancer. Curr Opin Immunol 25(2):261–267
25. Butt AQ, Mills KH (2014) Immunosuppressive networks and checkpoints controlling antitumor immunity and their blockade in the development of cancer immunotherapeutics and vaccines. Oncogene 33(38):4623–4631
26. Manser AR, Uhrberg M (2016) Age-related changes in natural killer cell repertoires: impact on NK cell function and immune surveillance. Cancer Immunol Immunother 65(4):417–426
27. Baruch K et al (2015) Breaking immune tolerance by targeting Foxp3(+) regulatory T cells mitigates Alzheimer's disease pathology. Nat Commun 6:7967
28. Parker KH et al (2014) HMGB1 enhances immune suppression by facilitating the differentiation and suppressive activity of myeloid-derived suppressor cells. Cancer Res 74(20):5723–5733
29. Tiainen S et al (2015) High numbers of macrophages, especially M2-like (CD163-positive), correlate with hyaluronan accumulation and poor outcome in breast cancer. Histopathology 66(6):873–883
30. Sharma D et al (2014) Platelets in tumor progression: a host factor that offers multiple potential targets in the treatment of cancer. J Cell Physiol 229(8):1005–1015
31. Birbrair A et al (2014) Type-2 pericytes participate in normal and tumoral angiogenesis. Am J Physiol Cell Physiol 307(1):C25–C38
32. De Bock K, Cauwenberghs S, Carmeliet P (2011) Vessel abnormalization: another hallmark of cancer? Molecular mechanisms and therapeutic implications. Curr Opin Genet Dev 21(1):73–79
33. De Palma M, Biziato D, Petrova TV (2017) Microenvironmental regulation of tumour angiogenesis. Nat Rev Cancer 17(8):457–474
34. Bonnans C, Chou J, Werb Z (2014) Remodelling the extracellular matrix in development and disease. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 15(12):786–801
35. Armulik A, Genove G, Betsholtz C (2011) Pericytes: developmental, physiological, and pathological perspectives, problems, and promises. Dev Cell 21(2):193–215
36. Hanahan D, Folkman J (1996) Patterns and emerging mechanisms of the angiogenic switch during tumorigenesis. Cell 86(3):353–364
37. Mezquita P et al (2005) Myc regulates VEGF production in B cells by stimulating initiation of VEGF mRNA translation. Oncogene 24(5):889–901
38. Fernando NT et al (2008) Tumor escape from endogenous, extracellular matrix-associated angiogenesis inhibitors by up-regulation of multiple proangiogenic factors. Clin Cancer Res 14(5):1529–1539
39. Volpert OV, Alani RM (2003) Wiring the angiogenic switch: Ras, Myc, and Thrombospondin-1. Cancer Cell 3(3):199–200
40. Vaupel P (2004) The role of hypoxia-induced factors in tumor progression. Oncologist 9(Suppl 5):10–17
41. Warburg O, Wind F, Negelein E (1927) The metabolism of tumors in the body. J Gen Physiol 8(6):519–530
42. Payen VL et al (2016) Metabolic changes associated with tumor metastasis, part 1: tumor pH, glycolysis and the pentose phosphate pathway. Cell Mol Life Sci 73(7):1333–1348
43. Peppicelli S, Bianchini F, Calorini L (2014) Extracellular acidity, a "reappreciated" trait of tumor environment driving malignancy: perspectives in diagnosis and therapy. Cancer Metastasis Rev 33(2–3):823–832
44. Suzuki A et al (2014) Acidic extracellular pH promotes epithelial mesenchymal transition in Lewis lung carcinoma model. Cancer Cell Int 14(1):129
45. Walenta S, Mueller-Klieser WF (2004) Lactate: mirror and motor of tumor malignancy. Semin Radiat Oncol 14(3):267–274

46. Shi Q et al (2001) Regulation of vascular endothelial growth factor expression by acidosis in human cancer cells. Oncogene 20(28):3751–3756
47. Blouw B et al (2003) The hypoxic response of tumors is dependent on their microenvironment. Cancer Cell 4(2):133–146
48. Lu X, Kang Y (2010) Hypoxia and hypoxia-inducible factors: master regulators of metastasis. Clin Cancer Res 16(24):5928–5935
49. Padua D et al (2008) TGFbeta primes breast tumors for lung metastasis seeding through angiopoietin-like 4. Cell 133(1):66–77
50. Folkman J (1971) Tumor angiogenesis: therapeutic implications. N Engl J Med 285(21):1182–1186
51. Carmeliet P, Jain RK (2011) Molecular mechanisms and clinical applications of angiogenesis. Nature 473(7347):298–307
52. Paku S, Paweletz N (1991) First steps of tumor-related angiogenesis. Lab Investig 65(3):334–346
53. Ferrara N, Gerber HP, LeCouter J (2003) The biology of VEGF and its receptors. Nat Med 9(6):669–676
54. Jain RK (2003) Molecular regulation of vessel maturation. Nat Med 9(6):685–693
55. Iruela-Arispe ML, Dvorak HF (1997) Angiogenesis: a dynamic balance of stimulators and inhibitors. Thromb Haemost 78(1):672–677
56. Gerhardt H et al (2003) VEGF guides angiogenic sprouting utilizing endothelial tip cell filopodia. J Cell Biol 161(6):1163–1177
57. Risau W (1997) Mechanisms of angiogenesis. Nature 386(6626):671–674
58. Brown JM (2014) Vasculogenesis: a crucial player in the resistance of solid tumours to radiotherapy. Br J Radiol 87(1035):20130686
59. Heissig B et al (2002) Recruitment of stem and progenitor cells from the bone marrow niche requires MMP-9 mediated release of kit-ligand. Cell 109(5):625–637
60. Jin F et al (2012) New insight into the SDF-1/CXCR4 axis in a breast carcinoma model: hypoxia-induced endothelial SDF-1 and tumor cell CXCR4 are required for tumor cell intravasation. Mol Cancer Res 10(8):1021–1031
61. Carmeliet P (2005) VEGF as a key mediator of angiogenesis in cancer. Oncology 69(Suppl 3):4–10
62. Gerhardt H, Semb H (2008) Pericytes: gatekeepers in tumour cell metastasis? J Mol Med (Berl) 86(2):135–144
63. Jain RK (2005) Normalization of tumor vasculature: an emerging concept in antiangiogenic therapy. Science 307(5706):58–62
64. Xian X et al (2006) Pericytes limit tumor cell metastasis. J Clin Invest 116(3):642–651
65. Yang JC et al (2003) A randomized trial of bevacizumab, an anti-vascular endothelial growth factor antibody, for metastatic renal cancer. N Engl J Med 349(5):427–434
66. Motzer RJ et al (2006) Sunitinib in patients with metastatic renal cell carcinoma. JAMA 295(21):2516–2524
67. Salgaller ML (2003) Technology evaluation: bevacizumab, *Genentech/Roche*. Curr Opin Mol Ther 5(6):657–667
68. Bosslet K et al (1998) Elucidation of the mechanism enabling tumor selective prodrug monotherapy. Cancer Res 58(6):1195–1201
69. Hey T et al (2005) Artificial, non-antibody binding proteins for pharmaceutical and industrial applications. Trends Biotechnol 23(10):514–522
70. Ferrara N (1999) Role of vascular endothelial growth factor in the regulation of angiogenesis. Kidney Int 56(3):794–814
71. Kamba T, McDonald DM (2007) Mechanisms of adverse effects of anti-VEGF therapy for cancer. Br J Cancer 96(12):1788–1795
72. Kelly RJ, Darnell C, Rixe O (2010) Target inhibition in antiangiogenic therapy a wide spectrum of selectivity and specificity. Cancer J 16(6):635–642
73. Gan HK, Seruga B, Knox JJ (2009) Sunitinib in solid tumors. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 18(6):821–834
74. Huang Y et al (2013) Vascular normalization as an emerging strategy to enhance cancer immunotherapy. Cancer Res 73(10):2943–2948
75. Jain RK, Martin JD, Stylianopoulos T (2014) The role of mechanical forces in tumor growth and therapy. Annu Rev Biomed Eng 16:321–346
76. Viallard C, Larrivee B (2017) Tumor angiogenesis and vascular normalization: alternative therapeutic targets. Angiogenesis 20(4):409–426
77. Tolaney SM et al (2015) Role of vascular density and normalization in response to neoadjuvant bevacizumab and chemotherapy in breast cancer patients. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(46):14325–14330
78. Kloepper J et al (2016) Ang-2/VEGF bispecific antibody reprograms macrophages and resident microglia to anti-tumor phenotype and prolongs glioblastoma survival. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(16):4476–4481
79. Monk BJ et al (2016) Final results of a phase 3 study of trebananib plus weekly paclitaxel in recurrent ovarian cancer (TRINOVA-1): long-term survival, impact of ascites, and progression-free survival-2. Gynecol Oncol 143(1):27–34
80. Semenza GL (2012) Hypoxia-inducible factors: mediators of cancer progression and targets for cancer therapy. Trends Pharmacol Sci 33(4):207–214
81. Goldmann E (1908) The growth of malignant disease in man and the lower animals, with special reference to the vascular system. Proc R Soc Med 1(Surg Sect):1–13
82. Carmeliet P, Jain RK (2000) Angiogenesis in cancer and other diseases. Nature 407(6801):249–257
83. Dvorak HF et al (1999) Vascular permeability factor/vascular endothelial growth factor and the significance of microvascular hyperpermeability in angiogenesis. Curr Top Microbiol Immunol 237:97–132
84. Hashizume H et al (2000) Openings between defective endothelial cells explain tumor vessel leakiness. Am J Pathol 156(4):1363–1380

85. Dewhirst MW (2009) Relationships between cycling hypoxia, HIF-1, angiogenesis and oxidative stress. Radiat Res 172(6):653–665
86. Mazure NM, Pouyssegur J (2010) Hypoxia-induced autophagy: cell death or cell survival? Curr Opin Cell Biol 22(2):177–180
87. Rouschop KM et al (2009) Autophagy is required during cycling hypoxia to lower production of reactive oxygen species. Radiother Oncol 92(3):411–416
88. Hsieh CH et al (2010) Cycling hypoxia increases U87 glioma cell radioresistance via ROS induced higher and long-term HIF-1 signal transduction activity. Oncol Rep 24(6):1629–1636
89. Hsieh CH et al (2011) NADPH oxidase subunit 4-mediated reactive oxygen species contribute to cycling hypoxia-promoted tumor progression in glioblastoma multiforme. PLoS One 6(9):e23945
90. Rofstad EK et al (2010) Tumors exposed to acute cyclic hypoxic stress show enhanced angiogenesis, perfusion and metastatic dissemination. Int J Cancer 127(7):1535–1546
91. Chan N et al (2008) Chronic hypoxia decreases synthesis of homologous recombination proteins to offset chemoresistance and radioresistance. Cancer Res 68(2):605–614
92. Luoto KR, Kumareswaran R, Bristow RG (2013) Tumor hypoxia as a driving force in genetic instability. Genome Integr 4(1):5
93. Kondo A et al (2001) Hypoxia-induced enrichment and mutagenesis of cells that have lost DNA mismatch repair. Cancer Res 61(20):7603–7607
94. Minet E et al (2000) ERK activation upon hypoxia: involvement in HIF-1 activation. FEBS Lett 468(1):53–58
95. Conway EM, Collen D, Carmeliet P (2001) Molecular mechanisms of blood vessel growth. Cardiovasc Res 49(3):507–521
96. Carmeliet P (2005) Angiogenesis in life, disease and medicine. Nature 438(7070):932–936
97. Hurwitz H et al (2004) Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer. N Engl J Med 350(23):2335–2342
98. Muz B et al (2014) The role of hypoxia and exploitation of the hypoxic environment in hematologic malignancies. Mol Cancer Res 12(10):1347–1354
99. Cairns RA, Hill RP (2004) Acute hypoxia enhances spontaneous lymph node metastasis in an orthotopic murine model of human cervical carcinoma. Cancer Res 64(6):2054–2061
100. Thiery JP, Sleeman JP (2006) Complex networks orchestrate epithelial-mesenchymal transitions. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 7(2):131–142
101. Mulholland DJ et al (2012) Pten loss and RAS/MAPK activation cooperate to promote EMT and metastasis initiated from prostate cancer stem/progenitor cells. Cancer Res 72(7):1878–1889
102. Kim K, Lu Z, Hay ED (2002) Direct evidence for a role of beta-catenin/LEF-1 signaling pathway in induction of EMT. Cell Biol Int 26(5):463–476
103. Hsu M et al (2000) Cadherin repertoire determines partner-specific gap junctional communication during melanoma progression. J Cell Sci 113(Pt 9):1535–1542
104. Manotham K et al (2004) Transdifferentiation of cultured tubular cells induced by hypoxia. Kidney Int 65(3):871–880
105. Marie-Egyptienne DT, Lohse I, Hill RP (2013) Cancer stem cells, the epithelial to mesenchymal transition (EMT) and radioresistance: potential role of hypoxia. Cancer Lett 341(1):63–72
106. Greenberger LM et al (2008) A RNA antagonist of hypoxia-inducible factor-1alpha, EZN-2968, inhibits tumor cell growth. Mol Cancer Ther 7(11):3598–3608
107. Hu J et al (2010) Targeting the multiple myeloma hypoxic niche with TH-302, a hypoxia-activated prodrug. Blood 116(9):1524–1527
108. Wilson WR, Hay MP (2011) Targeting hypoxia in cancer therapy. Nat Rev Cancer 11(6):393–410
109. Munshi NC, Anderson KC (2013) Minimal residual disease in multiple myeloma. J Clin Oncol 31(20):2523–2526
110. Rohwer N, Cramer T (2011) Hypoxia-mediated drug resistance: novel insights on the functional interaction of HIFs and cell death pathways. Drug Resist Updat 14(3):191–201
111. Vaupel P, Kelleher DK, Hockel M (2001) Oxygen status of malignant tumors: pathogenesis of hypoxia and significance for tumor therapy. Semin Oncol 28(2 Suppl 8):29–35
112. Das B et al (2008) Hypoxia enhances tumor stemness by increasing the invasive and tumorigenic side population fraction. Stem Cells 26(7):1818–1830
113. Gray LH et al (1953) The concentration of oxygen dissolved in tissues at the time of irradiation as a factor in radiotherapy. Br J Radiol 26(312):638–648
114. Pawlik TM, Keyomarsi K (2004) Role of cell cycle in mediating sensitivity to radiotherapy. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 59(4):928–942
115. Moeller BJ et al (2004) The relationship between hypoxia and angiogenesis. Semin Radiat Oncol 14(3):215–221
116. Schwartz DL et al (2009) The selective hypoxia inducible factor-1 inhibitor PX-478 provides in vivo radiosensitization through tumor stromal effects. Mol Cancer Ther 8(4):947–958
117. Ambs S et al (1998) p53 and vascular endothelial growth factor regulate tumor growth of NOS2-expressing human carcinoma cells. Nat Med 4(12):1371–1376
118. Carpenter AW, Schoenfisch MH (2012) Nitric oxide release: part II. Therapeutic applications. Chem Soc Rev 41(10):3742–3752
119. Bonavida B et al (2008) Novel therapeutic applications of nitric oxide donors in cancer: roles in chemo- and immunosensitization to apoptosis and inhibition of metastases. Nitric Oxide 19(2):152–157
120. Brito C et al (1999) Peroxynitrite inhibits T lymphocyte activation and proliferation by promot-

ing impairment of tyrosine phosphorylation and peroxynitrite-driven apoptotic death. J Immunol 162(6):3356–3366
121. Molon B et al (2011) Chemokine nitration prevents intratumoral infiltration of antigen-specific T cells. J Exp Med 208(10):1949–1962
122. Gehad AE et al (2012) Nitric oxide-producing myeloid-derived suppressor cells inhibit vascular E-selectin expression in human squamous cell carcinomas. J Invest Dermatol 132(11):2642–2651
123. Douguet L et al (2016) Nitric oxide synthase 2 is involved in the pro-tumorigenic potential of gammadelta17 T cells in melanoma. Onco Targets Ther 5(8):e1208878
124. Markowitz J et al (2017) Nitric oxide mediated inhibition of antigen presentation from DCs to CD4(+) T cells in cancer and measurement of STAT1 nitration. Sci Rep 7(1):15424
125. Stiff A et al (2018) Nitric oxide production by myeloid-derived suppressor cells plays a role in impairing fc receptor-mediated natural killer cell function. Clin Cancer Res 24(8):1891–1904
126. Bogdan C (2015) Nitric oxide synthase in innate and adaptive immunity: an update. Trends Immunol 36(3):161–178
127. Lytle NK, Barber AG, Reya T (2018) Stem cell fate in cancer growth, progression and therapy resistance. Nat Rev Cancer 18(11):669–680
128. Batlle E, Clevers H (2017) Cancer stem cells revisited. Nat Med 23(10):1124–1134
129. Cojoc M et al (2015) A role for cancer stem cells in therapy resistance: cellular and molecular mechanisms. Semin Cancer Biol 31:16–27
130. Spranger S, Bao R, Gajewski TF (2015) Melanoma-intrinsic beta-catenin signalling prevents anti-tumour immunity. Nature 523(7559):231–235
131. Maccalli C et al (2018) The role of cancer stem cells in the modulation of anti-tumor immune responses. Semin Cancer Biol 53:189–200
132. Melzer C et al (2017) Cancer stem cell niche models and contribution by mesenchymal stroma/stem cells. Mol Cancer 16(1):28
133. Charles N et al (2010) Perivascular nitric oxide activates notch signaling and promotes stem-like character in PDGF-induced glioma cells. Cell Stem Cell 6(2):141–152
134. Eyler CE et al (2011) Glioma stem cell proliferation and tumor growth are promoted by nitric oxide synthase-2. Cell 146(1):53–66
135. Canas A et al (2012) Maintenance of S-nitrosothiol homeostasis plays an important role in growth suppression of estrogen receptor-positive breast tumors. Breast Cancer Res 14(6):R153
136. Puglisi MA et al (2015) High nitric oxide production, secondary to inducible nitric oxide synthase expression, is essential for regulation of the tumour-initiating properties of colon cancer stem cells. J Pathol 236(4):479–490
137. Maiuthed A et al (2018) Nitric oxide promotes cancer cell dedifferentiation by disrupting an Oct4:caveolin-1 complex: a new regulatory mechanism for cancer stem cell formation. J Biol Chem 293(35):13534–13552
138. Wang R et al (2018) iNOS promotes CD24(+) CD133(+) liver cancer stem cell phenotype through a TACE/ADAM17-dependent Notch signaling pathway. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 115(43):E10127–E10136
139. Peng D et al (2016) Myeloid-derived suppressor cells endow stem-like qualities to breast cancer cells through IL6/STAT3 and NO/NOTCH cross-talk signaling. Cancer Res 76(11):3156–3165
140. Cairns RA, Harris IS, Mak TW (2011) Regulation of cancer cell metabolism. Nat Rev Cancer 11(2):85–95
141. Colegio OR et al (2014) Functional polarization of tumour-associated macrophages by tumour-derived lactic acid. Nature 513(7519):559–563
142. Qian BZ, Pollard JW (2010) Macrophage diversity enhances tumor progression and metastasis. Cell 141(1):39–51
143. De Palma M, Lewis CE (2013) Macrophage regulation of tumor responses to anticancer therapies. Cancer Cell 23(3):277–286
144. Hamanaka RB, Chandel NS (2009) Mitochondrial reactive oxygen species regulate hypoxic signaling. Curr Opin Cell Biol 21(6):894–899
145. Van den Bossche J et al (2016) Mitochondrial dysfunction prevents repolarization of inflammatory macrophages. Cell Rep 17(3):684–696

Index

A
AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK), 17
Angiogenesis, 55–57, 88, 90, 93, 94, 106, 108–110
  angiogenic switch, 147
  blocking vessels, TME, 149
  mechanisms, 148
  metastasis, 148
Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), 106–108
Angiotensin II type 1 receptor (AT1R), 109
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE), 106
Angiotensinogen (AGT), 106
Antibody-dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC), 82, 130, 134–135
Antibody-dependent cellular phagocytosis (ADCP), 130, 135
Antitumoral concept, 40
Apoptosis, 87, 89, 90, 92
Arachidonic acid (AA), 89
Aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AHR)-dependent transcriptional program, 16

B
Bispecific or multispecific antibodies, 135
Bone metastases, 57, 58
Bone morphogenetic protein (BMP), 5
Breast cancer cells, 56

C
CAF-related miRNAs, 7
cAMP-responsive element binding protein (CREB), 12
Cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), 7–10, 35, 37, 68, 106, 116, 144, 145
Cancer-induced bone destruction, 54
Cancer microenvironment, 58
Cancer progression, 65, 70, 71
Cancer stem cells (CSCs), 66, 70, 116, 153
Cav-1 expression, 65
  CSCs, 67
  metastasis/invasive, 65, 66
  therapy resistance, 67
  tumor suppressor, 67
Caveolae, 63, 64, 70
Caveolin-1 (Cav-1), 64
Caveolins, 63
$CD4^+$ T-cells, 11, 12, 17, 22
$CD4^+$ T lymphocytes, 35
$CD8^+$ T cells, 11, 13, 21, 22
$CD8^+$ T lymphocytes, 36, 41
Cell growth, 90
Chemoresistant tumors, 22
Chemotherapy, 79–83
Colorectal cancer (CRC), 16, 68
Complement-dependent cytotoxicity (CDC), 130
Computed tomography (CT), 4
Connective tissue growth factor (CTGF), 5
CTLA-4, 54, 58, 59
Cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), 39
Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2), 88
  cytokines
    CXCR4, 90
    IL-1β/TNF-α, 89
    MAPK, 90
    NF-κB, 89
    PKC, 89
  inhibitors, 95
  PG signaling, 89
  structure, 88
  TME
    angiogenesis, 93, 94
    antitumor immunity, 92, 93
    apoptosis, 92
    invasion/metastasis, 91, 92
    regulation, 94
    tumor cell growth, 90, 91
Cytokine-induced killer cells (CIK), 22
Cytotoxic T-lymphocyte antigen-4 (CTLA-4), 36, 38, 40, 132
Cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs), 12, 129

D
Decorin, 14
Dendritic cells (DCs), 93, 131
Denosumab, 57

© The Editor(s) (if applicable) and The Author(s), under exclusive license to Springer Nature Switzerland AG 2020

A. Birbrair (ed.), *Tumor Microenvironment*, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology 1277, https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-50224-9

DiGeorge critical region 8 (DGCR8), 2
Disialoganglioside, 82
DNA methyl transferase (DNMT), 8
Dysregulated miRNAs, 7

E
E2 pathways
  stromal/immune cells, 35
  tumor cells, 34, 35
E26 transformation-specific (ETS), 10
Endothelial cells (ECs), 118, 144
Endothelial NO synthase (eNOS), 69, 152
Endothelial progenitor cells (EPCs), 148
Epidermal growth factor (EGF), 34
Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 7
Epithelial ovarian cancer (EOC) cells, 15
Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT), 56, 65, 91, 118
Esterified estrogen, 39
Estrogen pathway, 42
Estrogen receptor (ER), 35
Estrogen receptor α (ERα), 34
Estrogen receptor β (ERβ), 34
Exosomal miRNAs, 7
Exosome biogenesis, 77
Exosomes, 3, 7, 8, 12, 13, 17, 76–78, 81, 83
Extracellular kinases (ERK), 55
Extracellular matrix (ECM), 3, 87–88, 116, 145
Extracellular vesicles, 76

F
Fcγ receptors (FcγRs), 130
Fibroblast growth factor (FGF), 3, 6, 34
Fibrosis, 107, 109
Focal adhesion kinase (FAK), 66

G
Glucose transporter (Glut), 9
Glycosaminoglycans, 57
Granule-mediated exocytosis, 36

H
Head and neck cancer (HNC), 9
Hepatocyte growth factor (HGF), 3
High-grade serous ovarian cystadenocarcinoma (HGSOC), 38
Human antigen R (HuR), 5
Hypoxia, 109, 147
  blood vessel formation, 150
  definition, 149
  metastasis, 150, 151
  radiation and drug resistance, 151, 152
  TME, role, 149, 150
  treatment resistance, 152
Hypoxia-inducible transcription factors (HIFs), 3–6, 10, 17, 119

I
Immune B cells, 35
Immune checkpoint (ICP), 20–23, 129
Immune-related adverse events (irAEs), 42
Immune response, 54–57, 59
Immune T cells, 35
Immunity, 89, 93
Immunomodulation, 59
Immunoregulatory protein, 22
Immunotherapy, 40, 80, 82, 108–110
Inducible NOS (iNOS), 152
Infiltrating immune cells (IICs), 116
Interleukin 1β (IL-1β), 89
Invasion, 90, 91
Isocitrate dehydrogenase (IDH), 9

M
Macrophages, 106–108
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 4
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC), 3
Mammalian immune system, 145
Matrix metalloprotease 9 (MMP9), 148
Matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs), 66, 91, 116, 145
Mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs), 83, 145
Messenger-RNAs (mRNAs), 78
Metabolic pathways, 70
Metastasis, 2, 3, 5–8, 13, 16, 20, 21, 23, 65–68, 70, 81, 87, 88, 90, 91
Metastasis-associated macrophages (MAMs), 70
Microenvironment, 53, 54, 56, 57
MicroRNAs (miRNAs), 2, 3, 5, 78
miRNA dysregulation, 7
Mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPKs), 8, 90
Monoclonal antibodies, 127
Mucoepidermoid carcinoma, 67
Multidrug resistance (MDR), 117
Multiple X-linked microRNAs (miRNAs), 40
Multivesicular bodies (MVBs), 76, 77
MYCN-amplified neuroblastoma cells, 80
Myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), 3, 16, 35, 38, 39, 108, 130, 152

N
Natural killer (NK) cells, 3, 11, 18–20, 22, 35, 36, 108
Neuroblastoma, 76, 79, 83
  biology, 82
  exosomes, 78
  immunotherapy, 82
  miRNA, 79
  treatment, 80
Neuronal NOS (nNOS), 152
Nitric oxide (NO)
  CSCs, 153, 154
  definition, 152
  immunosuppression, 152
  metabolic reprogramming, 154
  TME, 152
Nitric oxide synthase (NOS), 152

Non-small-cell lung cancer (NSCLC), 5
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 94–95
Nuclear factor (NF)-κB, 89

O
Oncogenic transformation, 71
Oral squamous cell carcinoma (OSCC), 9
Osteoprotegerin, 55
Osteoprotegerin ligand (OPGL), 54

P
Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) cells, 5
Paxilin (PXN), 15
PD-1/PD-L1, 109
Pembrolizumab *vs.* chemotherapy, 41
Pericytes, 9, 10, 79
Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), 8
Polyomavirus middle T (PyMT), 38
Programmed death-1 (PD1), 40
Prostaglandin (PGs), 88, 89
Protein kinase C (PKC), 89
Protein tyrosine phosphatase non-receptor types (PTPN), 4
Proteoglycans, 57

R
RANK ligand (RANKL), 54–56
RANK/RANKL signaling pathway, 54
  cancer, 56
  chemoresistance, 59
  human, 55
  inhibition, 59
  tumor microenvironment, 57
RANKL signaling inhibition, 57, 58
Reactive oxygen species (ROS), 150
Receptor activator of nuclear factor-kappa B (RANK), 54–56
Regulatory T cells (Tregs), 36
Renin–angiotensin system (RAS), 105, 106, 109
  CAFs, 107, 108
  cytotoxic T lymphocytes, 107
  DC, 108
  macrophages, 107
  MDSC, 108
  neutrophils, 108
  NK cells, 108
  Treg cells, 107
Retinoic acid-related orphan receptor α (RORA), 18
Rho-GTPases, 66
RNA-induced silencing complex (RISC), 2

S
Solid tumors, 42
Sprouting angiogenesis, 148
Stem cell-secreted factors
  angiogenesis, 118, 119
  cell phenotype/differentiation induction, 121
  homing, 121
  hypoxia, 119
  inflammation and immunomodulation, 120, 121
  metastasis, 120
  MSCs, 118
Stroma, 145
Stromal cells, 36, 37, 63, 68–70
Suppressor of cytokine signaling (SOCS), 15
Supraphysiologic estrogen, 39
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 34

T
T cell, 106–108
Tetraspanin-enriched microdomains (TEMs), 77
Therapeutic monoclonal antibodies (mAb)
  bystander effects, 135
  cancer therapy, 132
  direct Fab- and Fc-dependent mechanism, 130, 131
  immune checkpoints, 134
  Immunotherapies, 135
  TME, 135
  tumour environment
    anti-tumour immunity, 131, 132
    lymphoid/myeloid, immunomodulatory, 132–135
Toll-like receptors (TLRs), 12
Transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β), 90, 107–109
T-reg cells, 11, 12
Trinucleotide repeat containing adaptor (TNRC), 7
Tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs), 3, 13–16, 35, 37, 38, 92, 116, 145
Tumor-associated monocytes, 79
Tumor environment
  angiogenesis, 109
  clinical trials, 110
  fibrosis, 109
  hypoxia, 109
  tumor cells, 108
Tumor immune response, 107, 109, 110
Tumor-infiltrating dendritic cells (TIDCs), 18–20
Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TIL), 35, 129
Tumor microenvironment (TME), 2, 7, 15, 34–39, 57, 70, 78–80, 87, 88, 90, 94, 116, 129
  anti-E2 therapies, 40
  CAFs, 116
  cell types, 116
  cells, 144, 147
  CSCs, 122
  cytokines, 116
  ECM, 116
  IICs, 116
  immunosuppression, 40
  MSCs, 122
  niche, 116
  SCs, 116
  secretome, 116, 118
  stem cells, 117, 118
  stroma components, 145, 146
  Th2 responses, 41

Tumor microenvironment (TME) (*cont.*)
 tumor hallmarks, 116
 vasculature, 147
Tumor mutational burden (TMB), 42
Tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α), 89
Tumoral microvesicles (TMVs), 70
Tumoral mutations, 40
Tumorigenesis, 7, 39, 87–89, 92, 93, 95
Tumor-stroma communication, 68
 CAFs, 68
 stromal cells, 69, 70
Tyrosine kinase (TK) receptors, 149

U
Untranslated region
 (UTR), 2

V
Vascular endothelial growth factor
 (VEGF), 4, 38, 93, 118, 129, 145

Z
Zoledronic acid *vs.* denosumab, 57